



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

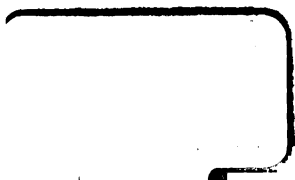
### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

EducT 21718.91.374

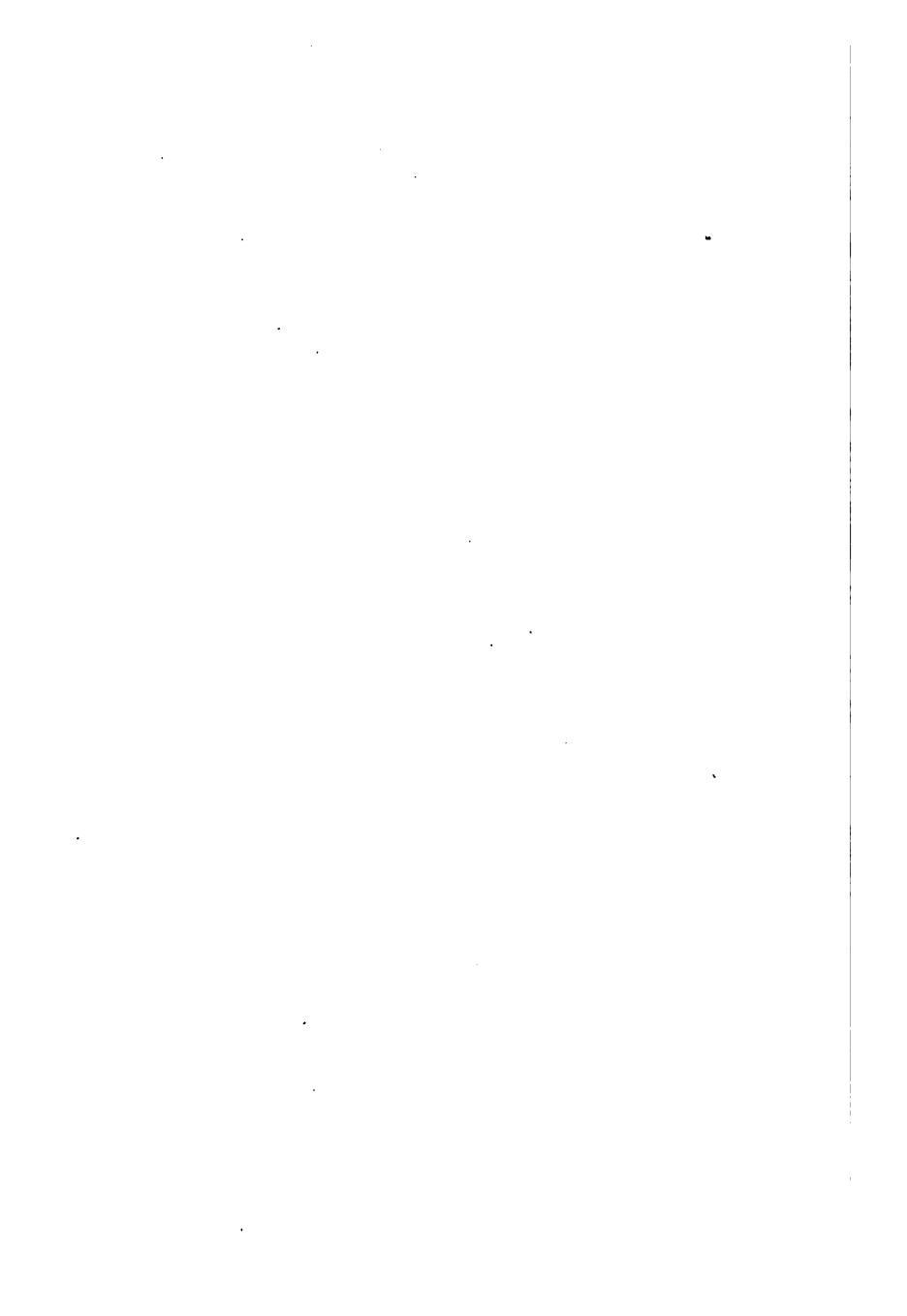


HARVARD  
COLLEGE  
LIBRARY





3 2044 102 877 685





**MACMILLAN'S**  
**PROGRESSIVE GERMAN COURSE**  
**SECOND YEAR.**



°

# MACMILLAN'S PROGRESSIVE GERMAN COURSE

## II.—SECOND YEAR

CONTAINING

CONVERSATIONAL LESSONS ON SYSTEMATIC ACCIDENCE  
AND ELEMENTARY SYNTAX  
WITH PHILOLOGICAL ILLUSTRATIONS AND  
ETYMOLOGICAL VOCABULARY

A NEW EDITION

ENLARGED AND THOROUGHLY RECAST

BY

G. EUGÈNE FASNACHT

LATE ASSISTANT MASTER IN WESTMINSTER SCHOOL  
EDITOR OF MACMILLAN'S SERIES OF FOREIGN CLASSICS, ETC

London

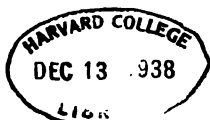
MACMILLAN AND CO.

AND NEW YORK

1891

*The Right of Translation and Reproduction is Reserved.*

Educ T 21718.91.374  
✓



*Trans from German Opt.*

RICHARD CLAY AND SONS. LIMITED,  
LONDON AND BUNGAY.

*First edition printed 1878, reprinted 1880, 1883, 1886.  
New edition 1886, reprinted 1888, 1890, 1891.*

# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

|   | PAGE |
|---|------|
| § 1. ALPHABET.—Comp. Consonants.—Capitals—            | 1    |
| 2. <i>Pronunciation</i> —Vowels . . . . .             | 2    |
| 3.     "         Simple Vowels . . . . .              | 2    |
| 4.     "         Modified (softened) Vowels . . . . . | 3    |
| 5.     "         Diphthongs . . . . .                 | 3    |
| 6.     "         Consonants . . . . .                 | 3    |

## ACCIDENCE.

|  |   |
|--|---|
| 7. Parts of Speech ; Genders, Numbers, Cases . . . . . | 5 |
|--|---|

## I. ARTICLE.

|  |   |
|--|---|
| 8. A. Definite—B. Indefinite . . . . . | 6 |
|--|---|

## II. SUBSTANTIVE.

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| 9. <i>Genders</i> . . . . .  | 6     |
| 10. <i>Declensions</i> . Synoptic table—<br>Strong—Mixed—Weak . . . . .        | 10-11 |
| I. <i>Strong</i> Declension :  |       |
| 11.     First Class—(a) Masculine, (b) Neuter . . . . .                        | 12-13 |
| 12.     Second Class—Neuter and Masc. . . . .                                  | 14    |
| 13.     Third Class—(a) Masc., (b) Neuter . . . . .                            | 15    |
| 14. <i>Mixed</i> : <i>Sing.</i> —strong ; <i>Plur.</i> —weak . . . . .         | 16    |
| II. <i>Weak</i> Declension :   |       |
| 15.     I. First Class—Masc.         } (a) <i>-en</i> ; (b) <i>n</i> . . . . . | 17    |
| II. Second Class—Feminine } . . . . .  | 18    |
| III. <i>Mixed</i> : <i>Sing.</i> —weak ; <i>Plur.</i> —strong . . . . .        | 19    |
| Synoptic Table of Plural-formation . . . . .                                   | 20    |
| 16A. General Remarks on Declensions . . . . .                                  | 21    |
| 16. Declension of <i>Proper Names</i> . . . . .                                | 23    |

## III. THE ADJECTIVE.

|   | PAGE |
|---|------|
| § 17. A. <i>Declension</i> of Adjectives . . . . .    | 24   |
| 18.     Comparat. table of Adj.-Declensions . . . . . | 25   |
| 18A.     "     " (according to Genders) . . . . .     | 26   |
| 19.     Observations on Adj.-Declensions . . . . .    | 27   |
| 20. B. Comparison of Adjectives . . . . .             | 28   |
| 21.     " (irregular) . . . . .                       | 29   |
| 22. C. Numerals . . . . .                             | 30   |
| 23.     Observations on Numerals . . . . .            | 31   |

## IV. PRONOUNS.

|  |    |
|--|----|
| 24. A. <i>Personal</i> Pronouns . . . . .                      | 32 |
| 25.     Observations on Pers. Pronouns . . . . .               | 33 |
| 26. B. <i>Possessive</i> Adjectives . . . . .                  | 34 |
| 27.     "     Pronouns . . . . .                               | 34 |
| 28.     "     " ; Observations . . . . .                       | 35 |
| 29. C. <i>Demonstrative</i> Pronouns . . . . .                 | 36 |
| 1. <i>der, die, das</i> :—                                     |    |
| (a) used <i>adjectivally</i> . . . . .                         | 36 |
| (b) " <i>substantivally</i> . . . . .                          | 37 |
| 2. <i>derjenige</i> ( <i>die —, das —</i> );                   |    |
| 3. <i>dieser, -e, -es</i> ; . . . . .                          | 38 |
| 4. <i>jen-er, -e, -es</i> ; . . . . .                          | 38 |
| 5. <i>derselbe, die—, das—</i> ; . . . . .                     | 39 |
| 6. <i>solch-er, -es, -e</i> . . . . .                          | 39 |
| 30.     Observations . . . . .                                 | 40 |
| 31. D. <i>Interrogative</i> Pronouns—                          |    |
| (a) <i>welch-er, -e, -es</i> ? (b) <i>wer, was</i> ? . . . . . | 41 |
| (c) <i>was für ein</i> ? . . . . .                             | 42 |
| E. <i>Relative</i> Pronouns—                                   |    |
| 32.     (a) <i>der, die, das</i> ; . . . . .                   | 43 |
| (b) <i>welch-er, -e, -es</i> ; . . . . .                       | 43 |
| (c) <i>wer</i> . (d) <i>was</i> . . . . .                      | 44 |
| 33. F. <i>Indefinite</i> Pronouns . . . . .                    | 45 |
| (1) <i>Man</i> ; (2) <i>Jemand</i> ; (3) <i>Niemand</i> .      |    |
| (4) <i>Jedermann</i> ; (5) <i>Keiner</i> ; (6) <i>Nichts</i> . |    |

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

vii

## V. THE VERB.

|  | PAGE  |
|--|-------|
| § 34. Introductory Remarks . . . . .                             | 46    |
| 35. Formation of <i>tenses</i> and <i>moods</i> —                |       |
| A. Simple . . . . .  | 48    |
| B. Compound . . . . .  | 50    |
| 36. Comparative Table of German and Engl. Tenses .               | 51    |
| <i>Auxiliary Verbs:</i>  |       |
| 37. <i>haben</i> ; 38, <i>sein</i> ; 39, <i>werden</i> . . . . . | 52-53 |
| 40. <i>Weak</i> Conjugation (with <i>haben</i> ) . . . . .       | 54-55 |
| 41.     "     "     (with <i>sein</i> ) . . . . .                | 56-57 |
| 42.     "     "     (with full inflections) . . . . .            | 58    |
| <i>Strong</i> Conjugation—                                       |       |
| 43. Table of Classification . . . . .                            | 59    |
| 44. Models of <i>Strong</i> Conjugation . . . . .                | 60    |
| 45. <i>First</i> Class :—i(e)—a—u(o) . . . . .                   | 61    |
| 46. <i>Second</i> Class :—e—a—e . . . . .                        | 63    |
| 47. <i>Third</i> Class :—a—u—a . . . . .                         | 64    |
| 48. <i>Fourth</i> Class :—a—e—a . . . . .                        | 64    |
| 49. <i>Fifth</i> Class :—ei—i(ie)—i(ie) . . . . .                | 65    |
| 50. <i>Sixth</i> Class :—ie—o—o . . . . .                        | 67    |
| 51. <i>Anomalous Verbs</i> . . . . .                             | 69    |
| 52. <i>Auxiliary Verbs of Mood</i> . . . . .                     | 70-71 |
| 53. <i>Passive Voice</i> . . . . .                               | 72    |
| 54. <i>Impersonal Verbs</i> . . . . .                            | 74    |
| 55. <i>Reflexive Verbs</i> . . . . .                             | 75    |
| 56-57. <i>Compound Verbs</i> —(a) Inseparable, (b) Separable .   | 77-78 |
| 58. Compar. Table of Separable and Inseparable Verbs             | 79    |
| Observations . . . . .   | 80    |

## VI. ADVERBS.

|  |    |
|--|----|
| 59. A. <i>Formation</i> of Adverbs . . . . . | 83 |
| 60. B. <i>Classification</i> " . . . . .     | 84 |
| 61-62. C. <i>Comparison</i> " . . . . .      | 85 |

## VII. PREPOSITIONS.

|  | PAGE |
|--|------|
| § 63. A. With <i>Accusative</i> . . . . .                | 86   |
| 64. B. With <i>Dative</i> . . . . .                      | 87   |
| 65. C. With <i>Accusative</i> or <i>Dative</i> . . . . . | 89   |
| 66. D. With <i>Genitive</i> . . . . .                    | 90   |

## VIII. CONJUNCTIONS.

|   |    |
|---|----|
| 67. A. Co-ordinate ; B. Sub-ordinate . . . . .          | 92 |
| 68. (a) Copulative ; (b) Local ; (c) Causal ; . . . . . | 93 |
| (d) Final ; (e) Conditional ; (f) Concessive . . . . .  | 93 |

## APPENDIX.

|  |    |
|--|----|
| 69. Vowel Modification . . . . .                         | 95 |
| 70. (a) Substantives with different Plurals . . . . .    | 96 |
| 70. (b) Substantives with double Gender . . . . .        | 96 |
| 70. (c) Substantives with derived Plural Forms . . . . . | 97 |
| 71. General Remarks on Adjective Declension . . . . .    | 97 |



## TABLE OF EXERCISES.

|  | PAGE |
|--|------|
| ORDER OF WORDS: RECAPITULATION OF PRINCIPAL RULES . . . . .          | 99   |
| <br>A. SIMPLE SENTENCES—   |      |
| (1) <i>Part. Perf.</i> and <i>Infin.</i> placed last . . . . .       | 99   |
| (2) (a) Place of Noun-Object; (b) of Pronoun-Object. . . . .         | 99   |
| (3) Place of Adverbs . . . . .                                       | 100  |
| (4) Place of Verbs attracted by Adverbs: <i>Obs. nicht</i> . . . . . | 100  |
| <br>B. COMPLEX SENTENCES—  |      |
| (1) Dependent Clauses: Place of Verb in—                             |      |
| (a) Adjectival; (2) Substantival; (3) Adverbial Sentences; . . . . . | 101  |
| (2) Dependent Clause attracts the Verb of Principal Clause . . . . . | 102  |
| (3) Conditional rendered by <i>inversion</i> . . . . .               | 102  |

### THE VERB.

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Synoptic Table of the different forms of Simple Tenses . . . | 103 |
|--|-----|

#### I. Weak Conjugation. II. Strong Conjugation.

##### THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

EX.

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| 1. <i>Present.</i> (a) = Engl. Pres. Continuous;<br>(b) for Preterite; (c) for Future . . . . .  | 104        |
| 2. <i>Preterite</i> (Imperfect): (Verbs with double forms).<br>(Table Compound Past Tenses:<br>(a) Simple Verbs, (b) Compound Verbs) . . . | 105<br>107 |

| EX.   | PAGE |
|---|------|
| 3. <i>Present Perfect</i> and <i>Pluperfect</i> . . . . .   | 108  |
| 4. Verbs conjugated with <i>sein</i> in Compound Tenses .   | 109  |
| THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.   |      |
| Synoptic Table of the different forms of the Subjunctive . . . . .  | 110  |
| 5. The <i>Present</i> and <i>Preterite</i> Subj. in <i>Principal</i> Clauses . . . . .                            | 111  |
| (a) as an Imperative, (b) Concessive.   |      |
| The Subjunctive in <i>Dependent</i> Clauses, expressing—  |      |
| 6. <i>Indirect</i> Quotation . . . . .  | 113  |
| 7. Consequence, Comparison, Purpose . . . . .   | 115  |
| 8. Condition (Hypothesis), Concession . . . . .   | 117  |
| 9. THE IMPERATIVE MOOD . . . . .  | 117  |
| 10. THE PURE INFINITIVE (without <i>zu</i> ) . . . . .  | 120  |
| (a) as Subject or Predicate, (b) as Complement.   |      |
| 11. THE INFINITIVE WITH <i>zu</i> (SUPINE) . . . . .  | 121  |
| as Compl. of (a) Nouns or Adjs.; (b) Verbs;<br>(c) <i>haben</i> and <i>sein</i> ; (d) Prepositions.               |      |
| THE PARTICIPLES AND THE GERUND:   |      |
| Introduction—The English Verbal form in <i>-ing</i> .   |      |
| 12. A. THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE, used as—   |      |
| (a) Adjective, (b) Noun, (c) Adverb . . . . .   |      |
| 13-14. Summary of Constructions Participial in English, but not in German . . . . .                               | 123  |
| 15. B. THE PERFECT PARTICIPLE:  |      |
| Synoptic Table of the Different forms of Part. Perf.  |      |
| AUXILIARY VERBS OF MOOD:  |      |
| Peculiarities of Conjugation— . . . . .   |      |
| 16. (a) <i>wollen</i> ; (b) <i>sollen</i> ; (c) <i>müssen</i> ; . . . . .   | 131  |
| 17. (d) <i>können</i> ; (e) <i>mögen</i> ; (f) <i>dürfen</i> ; . . . . .  | 132  |
| 18. (g) <i>lassen</i> —(1) Auxiliary, (2) Causative, (3, 4) Reflexive. .  | 134  |
| 19. THE PASSIVE VOICE: (a) Passive Imperf., (b) Pass. Perf. . . . .   | 136  |
| 20. The <i>Impersonal</i> Passive . . . . .   | 137  |
| 21. Constructions Passive in English, but not in German . . . . .   | 140  |
| 22. IMPERSONAL VERBS: answering in English to— . .  | 141  |
| (a) <i>Impersonal</i> Verbs; (b) a Verb in <i>-ing</i> ; (c) <i>Personal</i> Verbs; (d, e) an <i>Imperative</i> . |      |

## TABLE OF EXERCISES.

xi

| EX. |  | PAGE |
|-----|--|------|
| 23. | REFLEXIVE VERBS . . . . .                          | 145  |
|     | COMPOUND VERBS . . . . .                           | 145  |
| 24. | A. <i>Inseparable</i> Compound Verbs ; . . . . .   | 146  |
| 25. | B. <i>Separable</i> Compound Verbs . . . . .       | 150  |
| 26. | "      "      "      with comp. prefixes . . . . . | 151  |
| 27. | C. Separable and Inseparable Prefixes . . . . .    | 154  |

## THE SUBSTANTIVE.

|     |   |     |
|-----|---|-----|
| 28. | A. <i>Genders</i> of Substantives . . . . .   | 156 |
| 29. | B. Use of <i>Articles</i> — . . . . .   | 157 |
|     | (a) as in English—(1) <i>individually</i> ; (2) <i>comprehensively</i> ;                      |     |
|     | (b) contrary to English, with (1) <i>concrete</i> N. ;  |     |
|     | (2) <i>abstract</i> N. ; (3) <i>Proper Nouns</i> .  |     |
| 30. | Phrases illustrating the different use of the Article. . . . .                                | 160 |
|     | C. DECLENSION OF NOUNS : Synoptic Table . . . . .   | 162 |
| 31. | <i>Strong</i> Declension . . . . .  | 163 |
| 32. | <i>Mixed</i> Declension . . . . .   | 163 |
| 33. | <i>Weak</i> Declension . . . . .  | 164 |
| 34. | Different Forms of the <i>Plural</i> . . . . .  | 164 |
| 35. | Declension of <i>Proper Nouns</i> . . . . .   | 165 |
|     | D. CASES OF NOUNS.  |     |
| 36. | The <i>Nominative</i> . . . . .   | 165 |
|     | The <i>Accusative</i> as (a) <i>Direct Object</i> ; (b) <i>Predic. Complement</i> ; . . . . . | 166 |
|     | (c) <i>Cognate Object</i> ; (d) <i>Logical Subj.</i>  |     |
|     | (e) <i>Adverbial Complement</i> ; (f) <i>Compl. of a Prep.</i> . . . . .                      | 167 |
| 37. | The <i>Genitive</i> depending on a <i>Noun</i> : . . . . .                                    |     |
|     | I. <i>Subjective</i> ; II. <i>Partitive</i> ; III. <i>Objective</i> . . . . .                 | 169 |
| 38. | The <i>Genitive</i> depending on a <i>Verb</i> or <i>Adjective</i> : . . . . .                |     |
|     | A. as Indirect Object ; B. Predicate ; C. Adverbial Compl. . . . .                            | 172 |
|     | Genitive relation expressed by Prepositions . . . . .   | 174 |
| 39. | The <i>Dative</i> (Indirect Object) : . . . . .   |     |
|     | (a) with <i>transitive</i> Verbs in answer to (1) <i>to whom</i> ?                            |     |
|     | (2) <i>from whom</i> ? . . . . .  | 175 |

| EX.    |  | PAGE |
|--------|--|------|
|        | <i>The Dative</i> (Indirect Object):   |      |
|        | (b) with <i>intransitive</i> Verbs in answer to—   | 176  |
|        | (1) <i>for whom?</i> (advantage); (2) <i>whose?</i> (pos-<br>sessive).   |      |
|        | (c) as <i>Logical Subject</i> .  |      |
|        | (d) with <i>Adjectives</i> and <i>Prepositions</i> .   |      |
| 40.    | Construction of <i>Transitive</i> Verbs . . . . .  | 178  |
| 41.    | The <i>Prepositions of; at; from; for; in; on; upon;</i><br><i>to; with</i> (with Verbs and Adjectives) rendered<br>in German by different <i>Prepositions</i> . . . . . | 179  |
| 42.    | ADJECTIVES: Declension . . . . .   | 181  |
| 43.    | Comparison . . . . .   | 182  |
| 44.    | Numerals . . . . .   | 183  |
|        | PRONOUNS:  |      |
| 45.    | Personal . . . . .   | 184  |
| 46.    | Possessive . . . . .   | 186  |
| 47.    | Demonstrative . . . . .  | 187  |
| 48.    | Interrogative and Relative . . . . .   | 187  |
| 49.    | Indefinite . . . . .   | 188  |
| 50.    | ADVERBS: . . . . .   | 189  |
|        | German <i>Adverbs</i> equivalent to English <i>Verbs</i> . . . . .   | 190  |
|        | PREPOSITIONS:  |      |
| 51-52. | A. with <i>Accusative</i> ; B. with <i>Dative</i> ; . . . . .  | 191  |
| 53-54. | C. with <i>Accusative</i> or <i>Dative</i> ; D. with <i>Genitive</i> . . . . .   | 192  |
|        | CONJUNCTIONS:  |      |
| 55.    | Co-ordinate . . . . .  | 193  |
| 56-57. | Sub-ordinate . . . . .   | 194  |
|        | SHORT STORIES FOR COMPOSITION . . . . .  | 195  |
|        | Vocabulary, German-English . . . . .   | 203  |
|        | „ English-German . . . . .   | 233  |
|        | Index . . . . .  | 269  |

# PROGRESSIVE GERMAN COURSE. II.

## THE ALPHABET (Das Alphabet). [§ 1.

§ 1. The German Alphabet consists of the same letters as the English :—

| German letter. | German name. | Roman letter. | German letter. | German name. | Roman letter. |
|----------------|--------------|---------------|----------------|--------------|---------------|
| A a            | ah           | A a           | Ä ä            | enn          | N n           |
| B b            | bay          | B b           | Ö ö            | oh           | O o           |
| C c            | tsay         | C c           | Þ þ            | pay          | P p           |
| D d            | day          | D d           | Q q            | koo          | Q q           |
| E e            | ay           | E e           | R r            | airr         | R r           |
| F f            | eff          | F f           | Š š            | ess          | S s           |
| G g            | gay          | G g           | T t            | tay          | T t           |
| H h            | hah          | H h           | U u            | ooch         | U u           |
| I i            | ee           | I i           | V v            | fow          | V v           |
| J j            | yot          | J j           | W w            | vay          | W w           |
| K k            | kah          | K k           | X x            | ix           | X x           |
| L l            | ell          | L l           | Y y            | ipsilon      | Y y           |
| M m            | emm          | M m           | Z z            | tsett        | Z z           |

### Compound consonants :—

| German letter. | Name.                                |
|----------------|--------------------------------------|
| Ch, ch,        | tsay-hah, = ch in Scotch <i>loch</i> |
| Th, th,        | tay-hah, = t                         |
| Sch, (sh),     | ess-tsay-hah, = Engl. sh             |
| ß, ss,         | ess-tsett, = ss                      |
| ck, ck,        | tsay-kah, = double k                 |
| tz, tz,        | tay-tsett, = double z (ts)           |

} final only.

*Obs.*—Capital initial letters are used in German—

(1) At the beginning of sentences, direct *quotations*, *verses*, as in English ;

(2) For *all Substantives* (both *Common* and *Proper*) and words used substantively ;

(3) For *Pronouns* used in addressing Persons politely (§ 25, 4) :  
Wo kaufen Sie Ihre Bücher ? Where do you buy your books ?

## PRONUNCIATION.

VOWELS (*Vokale*).§ 2. Vowels are either *short* or *long* :—

*Short*—always if unaccented : *Verbot*, defence ; *leben*, life ; accented vowels are short, if followed by two or more consonants belonging to the same syllable<sup>1</sup> : *Mutter*, mother ; *Hand*, hand ; *Stück*, stick.

Diphthongs, double vowels, and vowels followed by *h* in the same syllable are always *long* :—*der Baum*, *der Mal*, *das Ströh*, etc.

§ 3. *Simple Vowels*.

(Always distinctly pronounced, *except e after i, (ie) = i long*) :—

N.B.—All comparisons with English sounds can, of course, convey only an approximate notion of correct German pronunciation, which must be learned orally.

*a* long, like *a* in *far* :—*Samen*, seed ; *ja*, yes ; *naß*, near.

*a* short, has no English equivalent :—*Fall*, fall ; *hat*, has ; *Hand*.  
(Not on any account to be sounded like English *fall*, *hat*, *hand*.)

*e* long, like *ay* in *gay*, *a* in *late* :—*geh*, go ; *Klee*, clover.

*e* short, „ *e* in *then*, *bet* :—*wenn*, when ; *Brett*, board.

*e* half-mute „ *u* in *bun*, *e* in *alter* :—*loben*, to praise ; *Alter*, age ; *habe*, (I) have.

*i* (*y*) long, „ *ee* in *green*, *i* in *machine* :—*ihm*, him ; *Asyl*, shelter.

*Obs.—ie* „ long *i* : *lieb*, dear ; *bie* (= *Dee*), the.

*i* short, „ *i* in *still*, *thin* :—*willig*, willing ; *Winter*, winter.

*o* long, „ *o* in *tone*, *holy* :—*Ton*, tone ; *hohl*, hollow.

*o* short, „ *o* (French) in *porte*, *sotte* :—*Wort*, word ; *Gott*, God.

*u* long, „ *oo* in *root*, *u* in *rule* :—*ruht*, (he) rests ; *gut*, good.

*u* short, „ *oo* in *book*, *u* in *full* :—*budt*, (he) baked ; *Null*, nought.

<sup>1</sup> Exceptions, most of them in words ending in *ch*, *ft*, *ß*, must be learned by practice.

§ 4. *Modified (Softened) Vowels* (Umlaute).

(For the *raison d'être* of Vowel-modification, see Appendix):—

The pure vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, and the diphthong *au*, may be softened (modified) in their *sound*.

This modification of the *sound* is indicated in writing and printing by *e* placed after the letter, if *capital* (Uebel); or by *two dots* (representing *e*) placed over the modified vowel, if *small* (bümm):—

**Äe, ä,** long = *ai* in *air*:—Ähre, ear of corn; ähnlich, similar.

**He, ä,** short = *ay* in *play*:—Hände, hands; hätte, had.

**Öe, ö,** = French *eu* in *peu*:—(1) *long*—Öel, oil;  
(2) *short*—lönnen, can.

**Ue, ü,** = French *u* in *lune*:—(1) *long*—übel, evil;  
(2) *short*—bümm, thin.

**Au, äu,** nearly like *oy*, in *joy*—Bäume.

Compare:—

| <i>Long.</i> |             | <i>Short.</i> |           |
|--------------|-------------|---------------|-----------|
| Staat,       | state.      | Städt,        | town.     |
| kam,         | came.       | Kamm,         | comb.     |
| stehlen,     | to steal.   | stellen,      | to place. |
| Beet,        | flower-bed. | Bett,         | bed.      |
| ihm,         | to him.     | im,           | in the.   |
| Stiel,       | tail.       | still,        | quiet.    |
| Sohn,        | son.        | Sonne,        | sun.      |
| Ofen,        | oven.       | offen,        | open.     |
| Fuder,       | load.       | Futter,       | fodder.   |
| Düne,        | downs.      | dünn,         | thin.     |

§ 5. *Diphthongs* (always long):—

**au,** nearly like *ou* (*ow*) in *house*, *fowl*:—Maus, mouse;  
faul, lazy, rotten.

**ai,** „ *ay* in *aye*:—Maid, maid; Kaiser, emperor.

**ei,** „ *i, y* in *mine*, *dry*:—mein, mine; drei,  
three.

**eu, } „ *oy* in *joy*:—{ Sen, hay; neun, nine.**

**äu, } „ Häuser, houses; Bäume, trees.**

**ui,** „ *we*, *pfui*! *fye*!

§ 6. *Consonants* (Consonanten):—

All consonants in a German word are pronounced (*h*, however, only if initial).

**f, t, l, m, n, p, r,** sound as in English.

Final **b, d, ng, s** are pronounced harder than in English, nearly like *p, t, nk, ss* :—

**und** = oont ; **Rab** = rät ; **jung** = yoonc : **uns** = oonnss.

**C, c** = *k* before **a, o, u, au, l, r** :—**Cabinet**, cabinet ; **Collodium** ; **Cur**, cure.

**C, c** = *ts* before **ä, e, i, y** :—**Cäsar**, Cæsar ; **Garcer** (= Karzer), prison ; **Cyruß**.

**Ch, ch** (is initial in foreign words only) = *k* :—**Chaos**, **Christus**. **ch** (in German words) has a guttural sound (rasping, nearly like the Scotch *ch* in *loch*).

**G, g** (initial) = English hard *g* :—**groß**, **geß**, **ging**.

**g** (not initial) = soft *ch* :—**Berg**, **Tag**.

**J, j** = *y* (consonant) :—**ja**, yes ; **Jahr** (= *Yar* in Yarmouth) year.

**Q, q** (always followed by *u*), **qu** = *qv* :—**Qual**, torment ; **Quelle**, source.

**R, r** = French *r*, viz. with a stronger vibration (thrill) than the English *r* :—**Rab**, **gar**.

**S, s** (initial, or between two vowels) = *z* :—**süß**, sweet ; **Saat**, seed ; **Rose**, rose.

**s, ß** (not initial) = *ss* :—**es**, it ; **Gruß**, greeting ; **fließen**, to flow.

**ff** (only between short vowels) = *ss* :—**wissen**, to know ; **Wasser**, water.

N.B.—The sound *ss* is represented by the letters **ff** after short the vowels only :—**hassen**.

By **ß** after long vowels :—**ließ**, **beiß**.

At the end of a syllable **ff** is *always* written **ß**, or **ßs**, whether the vowel be short or long :—

die **Muß**, pl. die **Müsse** ; **müssen**, ich **muß** ; **vergessen**, **vergeßlich**.

**Sch, sch** = *sh* :—**scheinen**, to shine ; **Fleisch**, flesh.

But **sch** is pronounced separately : **Gläs-chen**, little glass.

**St, st** (final) = English *st* :—**Brust**, breast.

**St, st** (initial) = English *st* :—**Stand**, stand.

**Sp, sp** (initial) = *shp* :—**Spaten**, spade.

**T, t, Th, th** = *t* :—**Thier**, animal ; **Muth**, courage.

(The sound of the English *th* is unknown in German.)

**V, v** = *f* :—**viel**, much ; **brav**, brave.

**W, w** = *v* :—**Welt**, world ; **was**, what.

**Z, z** = *ts* :—**Zug**, draught ; **heizen**, to heat.

(**z** after short vowels only) : **Platz**, place.



## THE ACCIDENCE.

§ 7. There are eight parts of speech, as in English.

The Articles, Substantives, Adjectives, Pronouns, and Verbs are inflected.

There are :—

*Three Genders* :—Masculine (männlich), Feminine (weiblich), Neuter (sächlich).

*Two Numbers* :—Singular (Einzahl) and Plural (Mehrzahl).

*Four Cases* :—

The Nominative (Subject or Direct Predicative Complement) answering the question *who?* or *what?*

The Accusative (Direct Object) answering the question *whom?* or *what?*

The Genitive (Possessive or Attributive) answering the question *whose?* or *of whom?* *of which?* *what...of?*

The Dative (Indirect Object) answering the question *to (for) whom?* or *to (for) what?*

## § 8. I. THE ARTICLE (der Artikel).

## A. THE DEFINITE ARTICLE (der bestimmte Artikel).

|                          | Singular.   |             |             | S. & Pl.      | Plural.     |
|--------------------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|---------------|-------------|
|                          | Masc.       | Fem.        | Neuter.     |               | M. F. & N.  |
| <i>Nom.</i>              | <b>der,</b> | <b>die,</b> | <b>das,</b> | the,          | <b>die.</b> |
| <i>Acc.</i> <sup>1</sup> | <b>den,</b> | <b>die,</b> | <b>das,</b> | the,          | <b>die.</b> |
| <i>Gen.</i>              | <b>des,</b> | <b>der,</b> | <b>des,</b> | of the,       | <b>der.</b> |
| <i>Dat.</i>              | <b>dem,</b> | <b>der,</b> | <b>dem,</b> | to (for) the, | <b>den.</b> |

<sup>1</sup> The Accusative differs from the Nominative in the Masc. Sing. only.

*Obs.*—*der, die, das*, are originally Demonstrative Pronouns, and are still used as such (§ 28, a); compare the English Def. Art. *the* (Morris's *Elem. Gr.*, 135, Mason, *Engl. Gr.* § 125), and the French *le, la, les*, from the Latin *ille, illa, illos* (*illas*).

## B. THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE (der unbestimmte Artikel).

|             | Masc.          | Fem.           | Neuter.        |                     |
|-------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|---------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | <b>ein,</b>    | <b>ein-e,</b>  | <b>ein,</b>    | a, (an).            |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <b>ein-en,</b> | <b>ein-e,</b>  | <b>ein,</b>    | a, (an).            |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <b>ein-es,</b> | <b>ein-er,</b> | <b>ein-es,</b> | of a (an).          |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <b>ein-em,</b> | <b>ein-er,</b> | <b>ein-em,</b> | to, or for, a (an). |

*Obs.* 1.—N. and A. *Einig-e*; Gen. *einig-er, einig-en*, *some, a few*, may be considered as a kind of Plur. of *ein*.

*Obs.* 2.—*Ein* is originally a Numeral (compare Morris, § 118, and Mason, *Engl. Gram.*, § 121).

## II. THE SUBSTANTIVE (das Hauptwort).

## § 9. THE GENDER OF SUBSTANTIVES (Geschlecht der Hauptwörter).

*Rules.***A. Masculine :**

(1) *Names of Male beings*—  
der Mann, man ; der Ochs, ox.  
der Löwe, lion.

(2) *Names of Days, Months, Seasons, Stones, Mountains, Winds*—  
der Sonntag, Sunday.  
der Januar, January.  
der Herbst, Autumn.  
der Marmor, marble.  
der Harz, Harz.  
der Süden, south wind.

(3) *Nouns ending in*  
*-en, -ich, -ig, -ing*—  
der Garten, garden.  
der Teppich, carpet.  
der König, king.  
der Jüngling, the youth.

(4) *Nouns derived from verbal stems*—  
der Klang (from klang, Pret. of klingen), sound  
der Tanz (from tanzen), dance.

**B. Feminine :**

(1) *Names of Female beings*—  
die Frau, woman, lady.  
die Henne, hen.

(2) *Names of Arts and Sciences, and of most European Rivers*—  
die Musik, music.  
die Mathematik, mathematics.  
die Donau, Danube.  
die Elbe, Tiber.

*Principal Exceptions.*

(1) die Schildwache, sentinel.  
die Person, person.  
All Diminutives (see C, 3), even if denoting males, are *Neuter*.  
(2) das Jahr, year and its compounds—  
das Frühjahr, spring.  
das Späthjahr, autumn.  
das Schaltjahr, leap year.

(3) das Almosen, alms.  
das Becken, basin.  
das Eisen (see C), iron.  
das Kissen, cushion.  
das Sehen, sight.  
das Messing (see C, 2), brass.  
das Wappen, escutcheon.  
das Zeichen, token.

Also all *Infinitives* used substantively :—

das Essen und Trinken, eating and drinking.  
(4) *Verbal stems ending in t are feminine*—  
die That, deed.  
die Kunst, art, &c.

(1) das Weib, woman.  
das Frauenzimmer, lady.  
das Fräulein, the young lady.  
das Mädchen, the maiden (see C, 3).

(2) *Most names of Rivers in Spain and out of Europe are Masc.*

Also—  
der Rhein, Rhine.  
der Main, Main.  
der Po, Po.  
der Don, Don.

*Obs.*—Nouns in *-er* are mostly *masc.*, der Hammer, &c.; but about forty are *fem.* (die Feder, &c.), and about twenty-five *neuter* (das Feder, &c.).

*Rules.*(3) *Most Nouns ending in—*

*-ie, -ei, -in, -heit, -teit, -schaft, -ung*, and those in *-e*, which are not *masc.* in meaning :

die Geometrie, geometry.

die Partei, party.

die Wirthin, hostess.

die Freiheit, liberty.

die Dankbarkeit, gratitude.

die Freundschaft, friendship.

die Hoffnung, hope.

die Freude, joy.

*Obs.*—Nouns in *-nis (-niß)* are almost equally divided between *fem.* and *neuter* :—

The following are *feminine* :—

die Bebrängnis, distress.

die Besümmnis } trouble.

die Betrübnis }

die Besorgnis, apprehension.

die Befugnis, authority.

die Bewandnis, state, case.

die Empfängnis, conception.

die Erkenntnis, perception.

die Erlaubnis, permission.

die Ersparnis, savings.

die Fäulnis, putrefaction.

die Finsternis, darkness.

die Kenntnis, knowledge.

die Verdammnis, perdition.

die Verderbnis, corruption.

die Verjämnnis, neglect (*f.* or *n.*)

die Wildnis, wilderness.

*C. Neuter :*(1) *Names of all parts of speech used substantively—*

das Wahre, truth.

das Grün, verdure.

das Mein und Dein, mine and thine.

das Leben, life.

das Wenn und das Aber.

*Principal Exceptions.*(3) *Masculine Nouns ending in -e denoting Males (see A, 1)—*

der Erbe, the heir.

der Bote, messenger, etc.

*Also—*

der Käse, cheese (see also C, 4).

*Neuter—*

das Auge, eye.

das Ende, end.

das Erbe, legacy.

*For nouns in -e with the prefix*

*Ge-*, see C, 4.

*Rules.*(2) *Names of Metals, Towns, Countries and Continents—*

- das Gold, gold.  
 das Blei, lead.  
 das schöne Paris, beautiful Paris.  
 das mächtige England, powerful England.  
 das alte Asien, ancient Asia.

(3) *Substantives ending in—*

-sel, -sal, -tum, -nis :

*and all diminutives in*

-chen, -lein :—

- das Rätsel, riddle.  
 das Schicksal, fate.  
 das Reichertum, empire.  
 das Geheimnis, secret.  
 das Männchen (from der Mann), the male.  
 das Bäumlein (from der Baum), the little tree.  
 das Töchterchen (from die Tochter), the little girl.  
 das Blättchen (from das Blatt), the leaflet.

(4) *Collective Nouns with the prefix Ge-*

- das Gebirge (from der Berg), chain of mountains.  
 das Geschrei (from schreien), screaming.  
 das Gesicht (from sehen), sight.  
 das Gemälde (from malen), the oil-painting.

For Nouns in -nis which are feminine, see B (3) Obs.

*Principal Exceptions.*(2) *Names of Countries ending in -ei or -z are Feminine (see B, 3).*

- die Türkei, Turkey.  
 die Schweiz, Switzerland.

*Also—*

- die Krim, Crimea.  
 die Moldau, Moldavia.

Those in -gau (district) are masc.  
 der Margau, etc.

*Also—*

- der Peloponnes,  
 der Cherfoness,

(3) *der Stöpsel, stopper.  
der Wechsel, change*

- die or das Drangsal, } tribulation.  
 die or das Mühsal, }  
 die or das Trübsal, }

- der Irrtum, error  
 der Reichtum, wealth.

(4) *All those denoting males—  
der Gefelle, fellow, &c.**Also—*

- der Gedanke, thought.  
 der Gefallen, pleasure, kindness.  
 der Genuß, enjoyment.  
 der Geruch, smell.  
 der Gewinn, gain.  
 der Geschmack, taste.  
 der Gebrauch, use.  
 der Gehorsam, obedience.  
 der Gesang, singing.  
 der Gestank, stink.  
 der Gehalt, contents.  
 die Geschichte, history.  
 die Gemeinde, community.  
 die Gebärde, gesture.  
 die Gebühr, duty.  
 die Geburt, birth.  
 die Gefahr, danger.  
 die Gestalt, figure.  
 die Gewalt, power.  
 die Gewähr, guarantee.

## COMPOUND SUBSTANTIVES.

*These, as a rule, take the gender of their last component :—*

der *Faustvater*, the father of the family.

das *Vaterhaus*, the paternal home.

die *Landstraße*, the highway.

The following, though compounded with the masculine *der Muth*, are feminine—

die *Anmuth*, grace.

die *Demuth*, humility.

die *Großmuth*, magnanimity.

die *Langmuth*, long-suffering.

die *Sanftmuth*, meekness.

die *Schweremuth*, melancholy.

die *Wehmuth*, sadness.

*So also—*

der *Abſcheu* (die *Eſcheu*), abhorrence

die *Antwort* (das *Wort*), answer.

## SUBSTANTIVES OF FOREIGN ORIGIN.

*These, as a rule, retain their gender :—*

der *Elephant* (*elephantem*), elephant.

die *Figur* (*figura*), figure.

das *Kloster* (*claustrum*), cloister.

A few, which have been quite assimilated to German, have altered their original gender—

der *Körper* (*corpus*, n.), body.

das *Fenster* (*fenestra*, f.), window.

das *Pulver* (*pulverem*, m.), powder, &c.

§ 10. *DECLENSIONS* (Abwandelung).

German Nouns are divided according to the inflections they take in the *Genitive Singular* into two *declensions*, viz. :—

The *Strong* (*Ancient*) or *S* Declension (*Starke Abwandelung*), *-es*, *-s*, and

The *Weak* (*Modern*) or *N* Declension (*Gewache Abwandelung*), *-en*, or *-n*.

These are again subdivided according to their *Nominative Plural* inflections (*-e*, *-er*, *-en*) into five *classes*—i.e. the *Strong* Declension into *three*, the *Weak* into *two* classes; besides two classes of Nouns declined *Strong* in the *Sing.* and *Weak* in the *Plur.* (§ 14, c) or *vice versa* (§ 15, c).

## SYNOPTIC TABLE OF GERMAN DECLENSIONS.

| I. Strong (-s) Declension (Masc. & Neuter Nouns). |             |                   |                         |            | Mixed (m. & n ).    |                |
|---|-------------|-------------------|-------------------------|------------|---------------------|----------------|
|   |             | 1st Class.        |                         | 2nd Class. | 3rd Class.          | (SING.—strong) |
| SINGULAR  | Nom.        | —, ’              | —, ’                    | —, ’       | —, ’                | —, ’           |
|   | Acc.        | —, ’              | —, ’                    | —, ’       | —, ’                | —, ’           |
|   | Gen.        | es (or s),        | es (or s),              | es (or s), | s,                  | es (or s),     |
|   | Dat.        | e (or -),         | e (or -),               | e (or -),  | —, ’                | e (or -),      |
|   |             | (modif. if masc.) | (masc. & neuter modif.) |            | (most masc. modif.) | (PLUR.—weak)   |
| PLURAL  | Nom. & Acc. | e,                | er,                     | er,        | —, ’                | en,            |
|   | Gen.        | e,                | er,                     | er,        | —, ’                | en,            |
|   | Dat.        | en,               | ett,                    | ett,       | n,                  | en,            |



**I. Strong (Ancient) or S Declension.****§ 11. FIRST CLASS (Masculine and Neuter Nouns).****(a) Masculine.***Singular.*

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <i>Nom.</i> der Strom, the stream.       | der König, the king.                      |
| <i>Acc.</i> den Strom, the stream.       | den König, the king.                      |
| <i>Gen.</i> des Strom-es, of the stream. | des König-(e)s, of the king (the king's). |
| <i>Dat.</i> dem Strom-e, to the stream.  | dem König-(e), to the king.               |

*Plural.**(Root-Vowels a, o, u, au, modified.)*

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <i>N.A.</i> die Ström-e, the streams.     | die König-e, the kings.                 |
| <i>Gen.</i> der Ström-e, of the streams.  | der König-e, of the kings (the kings'). |
| <i>Dat.</i> den Ström-en, to the streams. | den König-en, to the kings.             |

To this *First Class* (Gen. Sing. -es or s, Plur. "e) belong—

(a) **GENERAL RULE.**—All **Masculine** Nouns which do not come under the following exceptional classes, *i.e.*—

- (1) Eight monosyllables, and two in -tum:—*Plur.* ("er; (2nd Class, p. 14).
- (2) Those ending in -el, -en, -er:—*Gen. Sing.* -s; *Plur.* —; (3rd Class, p. 15).
- (3) About twenty (mostly monosyllables):—*Plur.* -en; (Mixed Decl., p. 16).
- (4) Original foreign names of living beings ending in a long syllable—*Sing. and Plur.* -en (II. 1, (a), p. 17).
- (5) Names of living beings in -e:—all cases *Sing. and Plur.* -n (II. 1, (b), p. 17).

(b) **SPECIAL RULES.**—(1) Most *Masculine Monosyllables* (or *Compound Nouns*, the last component of which is a monosyllable)—

*With Modification in the Plural if*

the root-vowel is a, o, u, or au—

|                        |                   |
|------------------------|-------------------|
| der Zahn, tooth,       | die Zähne, teeth. |
| der Saal, hall,        | die Säle.         |
| der Kopf, head,        | die Köpfe.        |
| der Fluß, river,       | die Flüsse.       |
| der Baum, tree,        | die Bäume.        |
| der Wanderstab, staff, | die Wanderstäbe.  |

*Without Modification in the Plural*

if the root-vowel is e, i, ie, eu, ai—

|                     |                |
|---------------------|----------------|
| der Berg, mountain, | die Berge.     |
| der Ring, ring,     | die Ringe.     |
| der Dieb, thief,    | die Diebe.     |
| der Freund, friend, | die Freunde.   |
| der Laib, loaf,     | die Laibe, &c. |

A few are exceptionally not modified in the Plural—der Tag, day, die Tage; der Hund, dog, die Hunde. For a complete list, see Appendix.

(2) Derived Masculine Nouns ending in -ich, -ig, -ling—

der Teppich, carpet, die Teppiche. der Käfig, cage, die Käfige.  
der Jüngling, the youth, die Jünglinge.

(3) Masculine Nouns with the prefix *Ge-*, and ending in a radical syllable:—der Gesang, song, die Gesänge.

(4) Masculine Nouns of foreign origin ending in -al, -ar, -an, -at (except *Goldat*), -ier, -on:—

die Cardinäle, die Ältäre, die Ältäre, die Consulate, die Offiziere, die Postkassiere, &c.



## (b) Neuter.

*Singular.*

|                    |                              |                                  |
|--------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>N. &amp; A.</i> | das Jahr, the year.          | das Geheimniß, the secret.       |
| <i>Gen.</i>        | des Jahr-es, of the<br>year. | des Geheimniß-es, of the secret. |
| <i>Dat.</i>        | dem Jahr-e, to the year      | dem Geheimniß-e, to the secret.  |

*Plural.**(Root-Vowel not modified.)*

|                    |                               |                                   |
|--------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>N. &amp; A.</i> | die Jahr-e, the years.        | die Geheimniß-e, the secrets.     |
| <i>Gen.</i>        | der Jahr-e, of the years.     | der Geheimniß-e, of the secrets.  |
| <i>Dat.</i>        | den Jahr-en, to the<br>years. | den Geheimniß-en, to the secrets. |

To this First Class belong the following *Neuter Nouns* :—

## (1) About thirty and odd monosyllables—

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Boote, Brote, Beile, Beine,<br>Dinge, Erze, Feste, Seile, Schweine ; | Boats, loaves, axes, legs,<br>things, ores, feasts, ropes, swine ; |
| Haare, Hefte, Jochs, Heere,<br>Jahre, Knie, Kofse, Meere ;           | hairs, handles, yokes, armies,<br>years, knees, lots, seas ;       |
| Paare, Pferde, Pfunde, Rohre,<br>Rechte, Reiche, Rofse, Thore ;      | pairs, horses, pounds, reeds,<br>rights, empires, steeds, gates ;  |
| Salze, Schafe, Schiffe, Spiele,<br>Lame, Thiere, Werke, Ziele.       | salts, sheep, ships, games,<br>cables, animals, works, aims.       |

(2) All *Neuter Nouns* ending in -nis, -fal, and -ier :—

das Verhältnis proportion, die Verhältnisse ; das Schicksal, fate, die Schicksale.

das Papier, paper, plur. die Papiere, etc.

(3) Most *Neuter Nouns* with the prefix *Ge-*, and not ending in -e :—

das Gebet, prayer, pl. die Gebete. Six of these take -er ; see 2nd Class, p. 14.

## § 12. SECOND CLASS (Neuter and Masculine).

*Singular.*

|                              |                                  |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| N. das Land, the land.       | das Herzogtum, } the dukedom     |
| A. das Land, the land.       | das Herzogtum, } (duchy).        |
| G. des Land-es, of the land. | des Herzogtum-(e)s, of the duke- |
|                              | dom.                             |
| D. dem Land-e, to the land.  | dem Herzogtum(e), to the duke-   |
|                              | dom.                             |

*Plural.*

(Vowel modified.)

|                                |                                 |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| N.A. die Länd-er, the lands.   | die Herzogtüm-er, the dukedom.  |
| G. der Länd-er, of the lands.  | der Herzogtüm-er, of the duke-  |
|                                | doms.                           |
| D. den Länd-ern, to the lands. | den Herzogtüm-ern, to the duke- |
|                                | doms.                           |

To the *Second Class* of the Strong Declension (pl. "er) belong—(a) GENERAL RULE.—*Most Neuter Nouns*; except—

- (1) Those mentioned in the *First Class*, which take *-e* in the *Plur.*
- (2) Those in *-el, -en, -er, -en, -lein*, and those beginning with *Ge-* and ending in *-e*, } which take *-er* in the *Pl.* (see § 13, 3rd Class).
- (3) The few mentioned in § 14, which take *-en*.

## (b) SPECIAL RULES—

(1) *Most Neuter monosyllables*; as,

|                                |                              |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| das Band,* ribbon, die Bänder. | das Buch, book, die Bücher.  |
| das Thal, valley, die Thäler.  | das Haus, house, die Häuser. |
| das Volk, people, die Völker,  | das Kind, child, die Kinder. |

For those which take *-e* (and then without modification), see § 11, b.(2) Only the following *Masc.* monosyllables take *-er*. [Exception to § 11 (a)]:—

|   |                                    |
|---|------------------------------------|
| der Dorn, thorn, die Dörner.            | der Ort, (Orte) place, die Oerter. |
| der Geist, ghost, die Geister.          | der Rand, border, die Ränder.      |
| der Gott, God, die Götter.              | der Wald, forest, die Wälder.      |
| der Leib, body, die Leiber.             | der Wurm, worm, die Würmer.        |
| der Mann, <sup>1</sup> man, die Männer. |                                    |

Also—die Bösewichter, the villains (nicht cognate with *wight*). die Barmh., the guardians.<sup>1</sup> In compounds of *-mann* denoting professions, this *-mann* is replaced by *leute*:—der Zimmermann, Zimmerleute, carpenters.(2) All Nouns ending in *-tum*, in which, exceptionally, the vowel of the suffix is modified in the plural.Only two of these are *masc.*—der Irrtum, die Irrtümer, errors.

der Reichtum, die Reichtümer, riches.

(3) A few *Neuter Nouns* with the prefix *Ge-* and not ending in *-e*:—

das Gemäch, apartment, die Gemächer. das Gewand, garment, die Gewänder.

Obs. For those marked \* see Appendix, § 70.

## § 13. THIRD CLASS (Masculine and Neuter.)

(a) Masculine.

(b) Neuter.

*Singular.*

|   |                          |
|---|--------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> der Vater, the father.                          | das Ufer, the shore.     |
| <i>Acc.</i> den Vater, the father.                          | das Ufer, the shore.     |
| <i>Gen.</i> des Vaters, of the father,<br>or, the father's. | des Ufers, of the shore. |
| <i>Dat.</i> dem Vater, to the father.                       | dem Ufer, to the shore.  |

*Plural.*

|   |                                 |
|---|---------------------------------|
| ( <i>Vowel sometimes modified.</i> )                        | ( <i>Vowel not modified.</i> )* |
| <i>N. A.</i> die Väter, the fathers.                        | die Ufer, the shores.           |
| <i>Gen.</i> der Väter, of the fathers,<br>or, the fathers'. | der Ufer, of the shores.        |
| <i>Dat.</i> den Vätern, to the<br>fathers.                  | den Ufern, to the shores.       |

Notice carefully that in this 3rd Class, as, for instance—  
der Apfel, the apple,

- (1) The *Gen. Sing.* takes -s only (*never* -es):— des Apfels.
- (2) The *Dat. Sing.* never takes -e:— dem Apfel.
- (3) The *Plur. (Nom. Acc. Gen.)* takes no inflection:— die Äpfel.
- (4) The *Dat. Plur.* takes -n (*never* -en)  
(but no -n, if the stem itself ends in -n):— den Äpfeln,  
den Gärten).

The Third Class comprises—

(a) *Masc. and Neuter Nouns ending in -el, -en, -er—*

|                                   |   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| (1) <i>Masc.</i> (some modified). | (2) <i>Neuter</i> (not modified*).      |
| der Apfel, apple, pl. die Äpfel.  | das Mittel, means, die Mittel.          |
| der Garten, garden, die Gärten.   | das Zeichen, token, die Zeichen.        |
| der Vogel, bird, die Vögel.       | das Fenster, window, die Fenster.       |
| der Bruder, brother, die Brüder.  | das Feuer, fire, die Feuer.             |
| der Engländer, Englishman, &c.    | * <i>Ex.</i> —das Kloster, die Klöster. |

Also—der Käse, cheese.

(b) All Diminutives (all *Neuter*) ending in -chen and -lein  
(§ 9, c, 3)—

das Mädchen, girl, die Mädchen. | das Vöglein, little bird, die Vögel.

(c) *Neuter Nouns with the prefix Ge-, and ending in -e; as,*

das Gestade, shore, die Gestade. | das Gebirge, mountain, die Gebirge.  
Two Fem. Nouns in -er follow this class in the *Plur.* only—

die Mutter, pl. die Mütter.  
die Tochter, pl. die Töchter.

## § 14. MIXED DECLENSION.

(a) *Genitive Sing.* -**ns**.  
*All other cases* -**n**.

(b) *Sing. Strong* : -**es** or -**s**.  
*Plur. Weak* : -**en** (not modified)

*Singular.*

der Name(n), the name.  
 den Name-**n**, the name.  
 des Name-**ns**, of the name.  
 dem Name-**n**, to the name.

der Staat, } the state.  
 den Staat, }  
 des Staat(e)**s**, of the state.  
 dem Staat(e), to the state.

*Plural.*

(Vowel not modified.)  
 die Name-**n**, the names.  
 der Name-**n**, of the names.  
 den Name-**n**, to the names.

(Vowel not modified.)  
 die Staat-**en**, the states.  
 der Staat-**en**, of the states.  
 den Staat-**en**, to the states.

To this class belong—

der Buchstabe, letter.  
 „ Friede, peace.  
 „ Funke, spark.  
 „ Gedanke, thought.  
 „ Name, name.  
 „ Glaube, faith.  
 „ Haufe, heap.  
 „ Schade,\* damage.  
 „ Wille, will.  
 „ Same, seed.

All these (except Buchstabe or Buchstab, -en, -en) frequently occur with the ending -en, (instead of e) in the Nom. Sing., and are always treated as if n formed an organic part of the stem (*i.e.* like a Noun of the 3rd Class); comp. the Lat. *leo(n)*, Gen. *leon-is*.

der Frieden, or Friede, gen. Friedens;  
 der Felsen, or Fels, gen. Felsens.

\* Plur. Schäden.

To this class belong—

der Bauer (-s; pl. -n), peasant.  
 „ Dorn \* (-es, -en), thornbush.  
 „ Forst (-es, -en), forest.  
 „ Gau (-es, -en), district.  
 „ Lorbeer (-s, (e)n), laurel.  
 „ Mast (-es, -en), mast.  
 „ Nachbar (-s, -n), neighbour.  
 „ Pantoffel (-s, -n), slipper.  
 „ Schmerz (-ens, or -es), pain.  
 „ See (-es Pl. Seen), lake.  
 „ Sporn (Pl. Sporen), spur.  
 „ Staat, (-es, -en), state.  
 „ Stachel (-s, -n), sting.  
 „ Strahl, (-es, -en), ray.  
 „ Unterthan, (-s, -en), subject.  
 „ Vetter (-s, -n), cousin.  
 „ Zins (-es, -en), interest.  
 das Auge (-s, -en), eye.  
 „ Ohr (-es, -en), ear.  
 „ Bett (-es, -en), bed.  
 „ Hemd (-es, -en), shirt.  
 „ Ende (-s, -en), end.  
 „ Insect (-s, -en), insect.  
 „ Statut (-s, -en), statute.  
 „ Herz (-es or -ens; -en).

To the *Mixed Declension* (b) also belong—

Nouns in -ium, -eum, -ius, derived from Latin or Greek—

das Studium(s), die Studien,

das Museum(s), die Museen,

and a few others—

das Particip(s), die Participien,

das Kapital(s), die Kapitalien,

das Kleinod(s), die Kleinodien, &c.

Also *Masc. names* (of professions) ending in -or (unaccented), &c.,

der Professor, der Doctor,  
 des Professor-s, des Doctor-s,  
 die Professor-en, die Doctor-en.

and a few others—

die Aelken, die Tribunen,  
 die Konsuln, die Triumviren,  
 die Praefecten, etc.

\* Cf. § 12, b (2).

## II. Weak (-n) Declension (Masculine and Feminine Nouns).

### § 15. I. FIRST CLASS.—*Masculine Nouns.*

(a) =en.

(b) =n.

#### *Singular.*

|                             |                 |              |             |
|-----------------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> der Student,    | } the stu-      | der Knabe,   | } the boy,  |
| <i>Acc.</i> den Student-en, |                 | den Knabe-n, |             |
| <i>Gen.</i> des Student-en, | of the student, | des Knabe-n, | of the boy, |
| <i>Dat.</i> dem Student-en, | to the student. | dem Knabe-n, | to the boy. |

#### *Plural.*

(Vowel never modified.)

|                              |                  |              |              |
|------------------------------|------------------|--------------|--------------|
| <i>N. A.</i> die Student-en, | the students,    | die Knabe-n, | the boys,    |
| <i>Gen.</i> der Student-en,  | of the students, | der Knabe-n, | of the boys, |
| <i>Dat.</i> den Student-en,  | to the students. | den Knabe-n, | to the boys. |

Like Student (by adding =en, in all cases) decline—

(1) *Masc. names of living beings* derived from foreign languages, and ending in an accented (long) syllable; as,

der Aströnm, astronomer.  
der Elephänt, elephant.  
der Husär, hussar.  
der Tyränn, tyrant, &c.

Except those mentioned in § 11, b, 4.

(2) The following *masc. monosyllables*—

|                     |                    |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| Ähn(en), ancestor.  | Seib, hero.        |
| Bär, bear.          | Stirt(e), herdsman |
| Christ, Christian.  | Lump, vagabond.    |
| Fürst, prince.      | Menſch, man.       |
| Ed, dotard.         | Moor, moor.        |
| Graf, count.        | Narr, fool.        |
| Gent, gentleman,    | Nerv, nerve.       |
| master.             | Ochs, ox.          |
| Gen. Sing. des      | Prinz, prince.     |
| Herren, Pl. Herren. | Thor, fool.        |

Also—

der Bachelör, the bachelor.  
der Vorfahr, the ancestor.  
der Oberst (Obriſt), colonel.

Like Knabe (by adding =n) decline—

(1) All *Masc. names of living beings* ending in =e; as,

der Bote, messenger; des Boten, &c.  
der Affe, monkey.  
der Deutsche, German.  
der Gefährte, companion, &c.

Also—

der Baier, Bavarian.  
der Ungar, Hungarian.  
der Better, cousin.

N.B.—Many nouns belonging to this class (a and b) are used with or without =e in the *Nom. Sing.*—

der Fink(e), the finch.  
der Burſch(e), the fellow, lad.  
der Geſell(e), the mate, journeyman, &c.

This use or omission of =e does not affect the other cases—

*Nom. Sing.* der Ochſ or Ochſe.  
den (des, dem) Ochſen.

*Plur.* die (der, den) Ochſen.

## Weak Declension.

§ 15. II. SECOND CLASS.—*Feminine Nouns.*(a) *Plural in -en.*(b) *Plural in -n.**Singular.*

*Nom.* die Landschaft, } the land-  
*Acc.* die Landschaft, } scape,  
*Gen.* der Landschaft, of the land-  
                                 scape,  
*Dat.* der Landschaft, to the land-  
                                 scape.

die Blume, } the flower,  
 die Blume, }  
 der Blume, of the flower,  
 der Blume, to the flower.

*Plural.*

(Vowel never modified.)

*N. A.* die Landschaft-en, the  
                                 landscapes,  
*Gen.* der Landschaft-en, of the  
                                 landscapes,  
*Dat.* den Landschaft-en, to the  
                                 landscapes.

die Blume-n, the flowers,  
 der Blume-n, of the flowers,  
 den Blume-n, to the flowers.

To the 2nd Class (Pl. -en)  
 belong—

## GENERAL RULE :

*All Feminine Nouns, except—*

(1) those in -e, -el, -er (see 2nd column), which take -e.

(2) those in -nis, -sal, and a few monosyllables (see c, p. 19) which take "e."

## SPECIAL RULES :—

(1) All Feminine Nouns of more than one syllable ending in -ei, -end, -in,\* -heit, -keit, -schaft, -ung—

die Partei, party, die Parteien.  
 die Tugend, virtue, die Tugenden.  
 die Freiheit, liberty, die Freiheiten.  
 die Artigkeit, civility, die Artigkeiten.  
 die Freundschaft, friendship, die Freundschaften.  
 die Hoffnung, hope, die Hoffnungen.

\* The final n is doubled in the plur. :—

die Freumbin; pl. Freumbinnen.

Like Blume (by adding -n in the *Plur.*) decline—

All Feminine Nouns ending in

-e, -el, -er : as,

die Biene, bee, die Bienen.  
 die Straße, street, die Straßen.  
 die Nadel, needle, die Nadeln.  
 die Schwester, sister, die Schwestern.

Except the following two, which are declined after § 2 (c) in the plural—

die Mutter, mother, pl. Mütter.  
 die Tochter, daughter, pl. Töchter.

## § 15. III. MIXED.

{ *Sing.* : *Weak*, no inflection ;  
 { *Plur.* : *Strong*, *-e* or *-e*.

*Singular.*

|                                   |           |                                 |                 |
|-----------------------------------|-----------|---------------------------------|-----------------|
| <i>N.</i> die Stadt, }            | the town, | die Wildniß, }                  | the wilderness, |
| <i>A.</i> die Stadt, }            |           |                                 |                 |
| <i>G.</i> der Stadt, of the town, |           |                                 |                 |
| <i>D.</i> der Stadt, to the town. |           |                                 |                 |
|                                   |           | der Wildniß, of the wilderness, |                 |
|                                   |           | der Wildniß, to the wilderness. |                 |

*Plural.*

| ( <i>Vowel modified.</i> )                          | ( <i>Vowel not modified.</i> )               |
|---|--|
| <i>N. &amp; A.</i> die Städt- <i>e</i> , the towns, | die Wildniß- <i>e</i> , the wildernesses,    |
| <i>G.</i> der Städt- <i>e</i> , of the towns,       | der Wildniß- <i>e</i> , of the wildernesses, |
| <i>D.</i> den Städt-en, to the towns.               | den Wildniß-en, to the wildernesses.         |

To this *Mixed Class* belong—

(1) The following *feminine monosyllables*—

|            |          |                    |             |
|------------|----------|--------------------|-------------|
| Ärte,      | Bänke,   | Bräute,            | Brüste.     |
| axes,      | benches, | brides,            | breasts.    |
| Fäuste,    | Gänse,   | Häute,             | Füße.       |
| fists,     | geese,   | skins,             | lusts.      |
| Früchte,   | Hände,   | Grüste,            | Klüfte.     |
| fruits,    | hands,   | sepulchres,        | clefts.     |
| Kräfte,    | Kühe,    | Künste,            | Lüste.      |
| forces,    | cows,    | arts,              | breezes.    |
| Läuse,     | Mäuse,   | Mägde,             | Mächte.     |
| lice,      | mice,    | maid-servants,     | powers.     |
| Nöthe,     | Nüsse,   | Nähte,             | Nächte.     |
| needs,     | nuts,    | seams,             | nights.     |
| Säue,      | Städte,  | Schnüre,           | Einflüsse.* |
| sows,      | towns,   | cords (-comings).* |             |
| Schwülste, | Wände,   | Würste,            | Zünfte.     |
| swellings, | walls,   | sausages,          | guilds.     |

N.B.—The plur. of those in *-brunst*, *-sunst*, *-funst*, in compounds only—

Feuersbrünste, fires, conflagrations.  
 Ausflüchte, excuses, subterfuges.

\* Einflüsse incomes.

(2) All Nouns ending in *-niß*, and *-sal* (see p. 7): as,

die Kenntniß, pl. Kenntniße.  
 die Trübsal, pl. Trübsale.

All other *Feminine Monosyllabic Nouns* take *-en* in the plur. :—

|             |            |             |            |
|-------------|------------|-------------|------------|
| Arten,      | Auen,      | Fahrten,    | Frauen.    |
| kinds,      | meadows,   | journeys,   | women.     |
| Bahnen,     | Banken,    | Burgen,     | Furen.     |
| paths,      | banks,     | castles,    | fields.    |
| Buchten,    | Bluthen,   | Formen,     | Kuren.     |
| bays,       | floods,    | forms,      | cures.     |
| Lasten,     | Posten,    | Qualen,     | Pflichten. |
| burdens,    | posts,     | torments,   | duties.    |
| Schaaren,   | Schulden,  | Schluchten, | Schichten. |
| bands,      | debts,     | gorges,     | layers.    |
| Schlachten, | Schriften, | Saaten,     | Espuren.   |
| battles,    | writings,  | seeds,      | tracks.    |
| Trachten,   | Triften,   | Thaten,     | Uthren.    |
| costumes,   | pastures,  | deeds,      | watche.    |
| Wahlen,     | Wahlen,    | Zeiten,     | Rathen.    |
| worlds,     | elections, | times,      | numbers.   |

SYNOPTIC TABLE, *Showing the different Plural formations.***A. STRONG (-es, -s) DECLENSION.****SINGULAR.****PLURAL.***Masculine.**Neuter.**Masculine.**Neuter.***I. First Class.**

|                          |             |              |         |
|--------------------------|-------------|--------------|---------|
| <i>Nom.</i> der Stall,   | das Jahr,   | die Ställe,  | Jahre,  |
| <i>Acc.</i> den Stall,   | das Jahr,   | die Ställe,  | Jahre,  |
| <i>Gen.</i> des Stalles, | des Jahres, | der Ställe,  | Jahre,  |
| <i>Dat.</i> dem Stalle.  | dem Jahre.  | den Ställen. | Jahren. |

**II. Second Class.**

|                         |             |              |          |
|-------------------------|-------------|--------------|----------|
| <i>Nom.</i> der Mann,   | das Lamm,   | die Männer,  | Kämmer,  |
| <i>Acc.</i> den Mann,   | das Lamm,   | die Männer,  | Kämmer,  |
| <i>Gen.</i> des Mannes, | des Lammes, | der Männer,  | Kämmer,  |
| <i>Dat.</i> dem Mann.   | dem Lamm.   | den Männern. | Kämmern. |

**III. Third Class.**

|                         |               |             |           |
|-------------------------|---------------|-------------|-----------|
| <i>Nom.</i> der Vogel,  | das Theater,  | die Vögel,  | Theater,  |
| <i>Acc.</i> den Vogel,  | das Theater,  | die Vögel,  | Theater,  |
| <i>Gen.</i> des Vogels, | des Theaters, | der Vögel,  | Theater,  |
| <i>Dat.</i> dem Vogel.  | dem Theater.  | den Vögeln. | Theatern. |

**MIXED DECLENSION.**

|                           |            |               |        |
|---------------------------|------------|---------------|--------|
| <i>Nom.</i> der Strahl,   | das Ohr,   | die Strahlen, | Ohren, |
| <i>Acc.</i> den Strahl,   | das Ohr,   | die Strahlen, | Ohren, |
| <i>Gen.</i> des Strahles, | des Ohres, | der Strahlen, | Ohren, |
| <i>Dat.</i> dem Strahle.  | dem Ohre.  | den Strahlen. | Ohren. |

**B. WEAK (-en, -n) DECLENSION.****I. Masculine.**

|                         |        |             |        |
|-------------------------|--------|-------------|--------|
| <i>Nom.</i> der Graf,   | Bote,  | die Grafen, | Boten, |
| <i>Acc.</i> den Grafen, | Boten, | die Grafen, | Boten, |
| <i>Gen.</i> des Grafen, | Boten, | der Grafen, | Boten, |
| <i>Dat.</i> dem Grafen, | Boten. | den Grafen. | Boten. |

**II. Feminine.**

|                       |        |             |         |
|-----------------------|--------|-------------|---------|
| <i>Nom.</i> die Frau, | Biene, | die Frauen, | Bienen, |
| <i>Acc.</i> die Frau, | Biene, | die Frauen, | Bienen, |
| <i>Gen.</i> der Frau, | Biene, | der Frauen, | Bienen, |
| <i>Dat.</i> der Frau. | Biene. | den Frauen. | Bienen. |

**III. Feminine (Mixed).**

|                        |           |              |             |
|------------------------|-----------|--------------|-------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> die Stadt, | Drangfal, | die Städte,  | Drangfale,  |
| <i>Acc.</i> die Stadt, | Drangfal, | die Städte,  | Drangfale,  |
| <i>Gen.</i> der Stadt, | Drangfal, | der Städte,  | Drangfale,  |
| <i>Dat.</i> der Stadt. | Drangfal, | den Städten. | Drangfaleu. |



## § 16. A. GENERAL REMARKS ON DECLENSIONS.

(1) The CLASSIFICATION INTO WEAK and STRONG, depends on *Gender* and *Derivation*; thus—

**Feminine Nouns are Weak.** Only those in *-niß* and *-ſai*, and about thirty-five Monosyllables, are *Strong* (i.e. take *-e* with vowel-modification) in the *Plural*; see p. 19.

**Neuter Nouns are Strong.** (Only about six are *Weak* (i.e. take *-en* or *-n*) in the *Plural*, see p. 16.)

**Masculine Nouns are Strong or Weak:—**

*Weak* are the names of *living beings* ending (or originally ending) in *-e*;

Also names derived from an Adjective or from a foreign language, and ending in a long syllable.

About twenty others are *Weak* in the *Plural*, see p. 16. *All other Masc. Nouns are Strong.*

(2) the SUBDIVISION OF DECLENSIONS—according as they take *-n* or *-en*; *-ß* or *-es*—depends on *Euphony*; thus—

(a) in the WEAK DECLENSION add:—

*-n* to those ending in *ß* (*m.* and *f.*) *el*, *er* (*f.*):—

die *Vote-n*; *Blume-n*;

die *Gabel-n*; *Schwefel-n*.

*-en* to those ending in any other syllable than *el*, *er*:—

*m.* die *Graf-en*, *Jesuit-en*, *Deutſch-en*, etc.

*f.* die *Freiheit-en*, *Uhr-en*, *Landſchaft-en*, etc.

(b) in the STRONG DECLENSION, *Genitive Sing.*, add:—

*-ß* to *Masc.* and *Neuter* Nouns in *el*, *en*, *er*; *then*, *lein*:—

des *Eſel-ß*, *Garten-ß*, *Feuer-ß*, *Mädchen-ß*, *Bäumlein-ß*, etc.

*-es* to *Masc.* and *Neuter* Nouns in *ß*, *ß*, *ſch*, *ß*, *t*:—

des *Hauſ-es*, *Schoß-es*, *Buſch-es*, *Holz-es*, *Trog-es*, etc.

either *-ß* or *-es* (according as euphony, metre, or individual taste may require) to all *Masc.* and *Neuter* Nouns ending in any other letter. With Monosyllables, and Nouns ending in *b*, *t* (*Dentals*), *-es* is decidedly to be preferred.

N.B.—The *Dat. Sing.* may, but need not, take *-e* if the *Genitive* is in *-es*;

but it *never* takes *-e*, if the *Gen. Sing.* is exclusively in *-ß*;

nor may it take *-e* if the Noun is not qualified by an *Article* or *Pronoun*.

(3) the **STRONG PLURAL INFLECTION** depends on *Stem-endings*, the *Number of Syllables*, and, in some cases, on *Euphony*; thus

in the *Nom.*, *Acc.*, and *Gen. Plur.*, add—

- |    |   |  |
|----|---|--|
| =e | { | to all <i>Strong Masc. Nouns</i> NOT ending in <i>ē, el, en, er, tum</i> ;                           |
|    |   | to all <i>Feminine</i> and <i>Neuter Nouns</i> ending in <i>nis</i> and <i>jal</i> ;                 |
|    |   | to most <i>Masc.</i> and <i>Neuter Nouns</i> beginning with <i>Ge</i> and ending in a long Syllable; |
|    |   | to about <i>thirty Feminine</i> , and <i>forty Neuter Monosyllables</i> .                            |
- 
- |     |   |   |
|-----|---|---|
| =er | { | to all <i>Neuter</i> and <i>Masc. Nouns</i> in <i>tum</i> ;                 |
|     |   | to most <i>Neuter</i> , and about <i>ten Masc.</i> , <i>Monosyllables</i> . |

N.B.—No *Feminine Noun* takes *-er* in the *Plural*.

no inflection { to *Masc.* and *Neuter Nouns* which take *=s* in the *Gen. Sing.* and no *=e* in the *Dat. Sing.*; *i.e.* *Masc.* and *Neuter Nouns* in *el, en, er; den* and *lein*.

N.B.—The *Dative Plural* *must* end in *=n*; therefore an additional *=n* must be added whenever the *Nom. Plur.* inflection does not already end in *=n*.

(4) the **MODIFICATION OF THE ROOT-VOWELS** *a, o, u*, and of the Diphthong *au* in the *Plural*, depends on the *Plural Tense inflection*—whether *Strong* or *Weak*—and partly on *Gender*; thus the *Root-Vowel* is

(a) *modified*—

- (1) in *Masc.* and *Neuter Nouns* which take *-er* in the *Plural* (2nd Class);
- (2) in most *Masc.* and *Fem.* (but not *Neuter*) *Monosyllables* which take *=e* (1st Class);
- (3) in most *Masc.* (but not *Neuter*) *Nouns* which take *no inflection* in the *Plural* (3rd Class).

(b) *not modified*—

- (1) in *Nouns* which take *=n* or *=en* in the *Plural*; \*
- (2) in *Neuter Nouns* which take *=e* (1st Class), or *no inflection* (3rd Class), in the *Plural*.

**\* Vowel Modification and Weak Inflections exclude each other.**

## § 16. Declension of Proper Names.

## (a) Masculine Names of Persons.

| WITHOUT ARTICLE.            |             |                                  | WITH ARTICLE—uninflected. |            |
|-----------------------------|-------------|----------------------------------|---------------------------|------------|
| (Not ending in a sibilant.) |             | (Ending in—<br>s, ß, ſch, z, x.) |                           |            |
| N. Karl, Charles.           | Goethe,     | Franz, Francis,                  | der Karl,                 | der Franz. |
| A. Karl (n),                | Goethe (n), | Franz (en),                      | den Karl,                 | den Franz. |
| G. Karls (not es),          | Goethe's,   | Franz en's,                      | des Karl,                 | des Franz. |
| D. Karl,                    | Goethe (n), | Franz (en).                      | dem Karl,                 | dem Franz. |

The inflections in parenthesis are obsolete.

## (b) Feminine Names of Persons.

| (Not ending in e.)       |  | (Ending in e.) |               |            |
|--------------------------|--|----------------|---------------|------------|
| N. Adelheid, Adelaide.   |  | Fuife, Louise. | die Adelheid, | die Fuife. |
| A. Adelheid,             |  | Fuife (n).     | die Adelheid, | die Fuife. |
| G. Adelheids (never es), |  | Fuifens.       | der Adelheid, | der Fuife. |
| D. Adelheid,             |  | Fuifen.        | der Adelheid, | der Fuife. |

*Obs. 1.*—Foreign names ending in a sibilant take no inflection; the case is indicated by the article; as, der Themistocles, des Themistocles, etc.; thus also—die Werke des Euripides. Generally the use of the Preposition von is preferred to the Genitive.

*Obs. 2.*—If Christian names and surnames are combined, the latter only take the inflection; as, Johann Gottfried Herber's Werke; or, die Werke von Johann Gottfried Herber.

## (c) Proper Names with an Apposition.

|                                      |                        |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------|
| N. Herzog Alexander, duke Alexander, | der Herzog Alexander,  |
| A. Herzog Alexander (n),             | den Herzog Alexander,  |
| G. Herzog Alexanders,                | des Herzogs Alexander, |
| D. Herzog Alexandern.                | dem Herzog Alexander.  |

|  |
|--|
| N. Friedrich der Große, Frederick the Great. |
| A. Friedrich den Großen,                     |
| G. Friedrichs des Großen,                    |
| D. Friedrich dem Großen.                     |

## (d) Names of Countries and Towns.

*Without Article*—those which, according to general rule, are *Neuter*—

|                          |
|--------------------------|
| N. Deutschland, Germany. |
| A. Deutschland,          |
| G. Deutschlands,         |
| D. Deutschland.          |

*With Article*—(1) those which, exceptionally, are *Feminine*; (2) those which, ending in a sibilant, must be used with an Apposition (or von instead of the Gen. inflection, see Lesson 21)—

|   |
|---|
| (1) N. & A. die Schweiz, Switzerland.     |
| G. & D. der Schweiz, of (to) Switzerland. |

|                    |
|--------------------|
| N. London, London. |
| A. London,         |
| G. Londons,        |
| D. London.         |

|  |
|--|
| (2) N. & A. die Stadt Paris, the city of Paris.  |
| G. & D. der Stadt Paris (von Paris).             |
| N. & A. das schöne Frankreich, beautiful France. |
| G. des schönen Frankreichs.                      |
| D. dem schönen Frankreich.                       |

III. THE ADJECTIVE (*das Beiwort*).§ 17. A. *Declension of Adjectives.*

An Adjective may be used either—

|   |     |  |
|---|-----|--|
| (1) as a <i>Predicate</i> ,<br>(and then remaining<br>undeclined):—<br>Der Baum ist grün.<br>The tree is green. | or— | (2) as an <i>Attribute</i> ,<br>(agreeing in gender, number,<br>and case with its Noun):—<br>Der grüne (or—ein grüner) Baum.<br>The green (or—a green) tree. |
|---|-----|--|

An Adjective used *attributively* (before the Noun) may be declined in three different ways:—

| (a) STRONG—<br>if preceded by <i>no</i><br><i>Article</i> or <i>Pro-</i><br><i>noun</i> :—                                  | (b) WEAK—<br>if preceded by the<br><i>Def. Art.</i> or a<br><i>Demonstr. Pro-</i><br><i>noun</i> :—                                | (c) PARTLY WEAK<br>AND STRONG—<br>if preceded by the<br><i>Indef. Art.</i> or a<br><i>Possess. Adj.</i> :—  |
|---|--|---|
| N. Lieber Freund!<br>D. Liebem Freunde.   | Der liebe Freund.<br>Dem lieben Freunde.   | Dein lieber Freund.<br>Deinem lieben Freunde,<br>etc.   |
| The inflections added<br>to an adj. without<br>Art. or Pron. are<br>the same as those<br>of Demonstr. Pro-<br>nouns, § 28:— | The inflections added<br>to an Adj. thus<br>preceded are the<br>same as those of the<br><i>Weak Declension</i><br>of Nouns, § 15:— | The inflections added<br>to an Adj. thus<br>preceded are <i>Strong</i><br>(see a) in the Nom.<br>and Acc., and <i>Weak</i><br>(see b) in the other<br>cases:— |

*Singular.*

| m.          | f.   | n.  | m.  | f.  | n. | m.  | f.  | n. |
|-------------|------|-----|-----|-----|----|-----|-----|----|
| N. dieſ-er, | =e,  | =eſ | e,  | e,  | e  | er, | e,  | eſ |
| A. dieſ-en, | =e,  | =eſ | en, | e,  | e  | en, | e,  | eſ |
| G. dieſ-eſ  | =er, | =eſ | en, | en, | en | en, | en, | en |
| D. dieſ-em, | =er, | =em | en, | en, | en | en, | en, | en |

*Plural (never modified).*

| m. f. & n. | m. f. n. | m. f. & n. |
|------------|----------|------------|
| N. dieſ-e  | en       | en         |
| A. dieſ-e  | en       | en         |
| G. dieſ-er | en       | en         |
| D. dieſ-en | en       | en         |

§ 18. *Comparative Table of Adjective Declensions.*

| (a) <b>Strong.</b><br>Preceded by <i>no</i> or an<br><i>indeclinable determinative</i><br>word. | (b) <b>Weak.</b><br>Preceded by a <i>Definite</i><br>Article or a <i>Demonstrative</i><br>Pronoun. | (c) <b>Mixed.</b><br>Preceded by an<br><i>Indefinite</i> Article or<br><i>Possessive</i> Pronoun<br>(also after <i>sein</i> ). |
|---|--|--|
|---|--|--|

*Masculine SINGULAR.*

|  |  |   |
|--|--|---|
| Good friend.<br><i>N. guter Freund</i> | The good friend.<br><i>der gute Freund</i> | A good friend.<br><i>ein guter Freund</i> |
| <i>A. guten Freund</i>                 | <i>den (einen) guten Freund</i>            |   |
| <i>G. gutes(en) Freunde</i>            | <i>des (eines) guten Freundes</i>          |   |
| <i>D. gutem Freunde</i>                | <i>dem (einem) guten Freunde</i>           |   |

*Feminine Singular.*

|                          |                                      |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Good friend, <i>f.</i>   | The, or a, good friend.              |
| <i>N. gute Freundin</i>  | <i>die (or eine) gute Freundin</i>   |
| <i>A. gute Freundin</i>  | <i>die (or eine) gute Freundin</i>   |
| <i>G. guter Freundin</i> | <i>der (or einer) guten Freundin</i> |
| <i>D. guter Freundin</i> | <i>der (or einer) guten Freundin</i> |

*Neuter Singular.*

|                                     |   |  |
|-------------------------------------|---|--|
| Good child.<br><i>N. gutes Kind</i> | The good child.<br><i>das gute Kind</i> | A good child.<br><i>ein gutes Kind</i> |
| <i>A. gutes Kind</i>                | <i>das gute Kind</i>                    | <i>ein gutes Kind</i>                  |
| <i>G. gutes(en)* Kinde</i>          | <i>des (or eines) guten Kindes</i>      |  |
| <i>D. gutem Kinde</i>               | <i>dem (or einem) guten Kinde</i>       |  |

*Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter PLURAL.*STRONG:—Good friends (*m. & f.*), children.

|  |
|--|
| <i>N. &amp; A. gute Freunde, Freundinnen, Kinder</i> |
| <i>G. guter Freunde, Freundinnen, Kinder</i>         |
| <i>D. guten Freunden, Freundinnen, Kindern</i>       |

WEAK & MIXED:—The (no) good friends (*m. & f.*), children.

|   |
|---|
| <i>N. &amp; A. die (feine) guten Freunde, Freundinnen, Kinder</i> |
| <i>G. der (feiner) guten Freunde, Freundinnen, Kinder</i>         |
| <i>D. den (feinen) guten Freunden, Freundinnen, Kindern</i>       |

Obs.—*Adjectives and Participles used substantively are subject to the same rules:—*

|       | <i>Weak:—</i>   | <i>Mixed:—</i>   |
|-------|---|--|
| Masc. | <i>N. der Deutsch e, the German, m.</i><br><i>G. des Deutsch en, n.</i>       | <i>sein Deutsch er, a German.</i><br><i>eines Deutsch en, n.</i>               |
| Fem.  | <i>N. A. die Deutsch e, the German, f.</i><br><i>G. D. der Deutsch en, n.</i> | <i>eine Deutsch e,</i><br><i>einer Deutsch en,</i><br><i>etwas Deutsch es.</i> |
| Neut. | <i>N. A. das Deutsch e, the German, n.</i><br><i>D. dem Deutsch en, n.</i>    | <i>von etwas Deutsch em.</i>   |

See § 19, 6.

§ 18 A. *Table of Adjective Declensions classified according to Genders.*

(a) **Strong** : preceded by no determinative word, or by an uninflected Numeral or Pronoun :—

| <i>Singular.</i>                           |                   |                        |
|--|-------------------|------------------------|
| <i>Masculine.</i>                          | <i>Feminine.</i>  | <i>Neuter.</i>         |
| Good ring.                                 | Good watch.       | Good vessel.           |
| N. <b>gut-er</b> Ring                      | <b>gut-e</b> Uhr  | <b>gut-es</b> Gefäß    |
| A. <b>gut-en</b> Ring                      | <b>gut-e</b> Uhr  | <b>gut-es</b> Gefäß    |
| G. <b>gut-en</b> (-es) Ringes              | <b>gut-er</b> Uhr | <b>gut-es'</b> Gefäßes |
| D. <b>gut-em</b> Ring(e)                   | <b>gut-er</b> Uhr | <b>gut-em</b> Gefäß(e) |
| <i>Plural ; m., f., &amp; n.</i>           |                   |                        |
| N. & A. <b>gut-e</b> Ringe, Uhren, Gefäße. |                   |                        |
| G. <b>gut-e-r</b> Ringe, Uhren, Gefäße.    |                   |                        |
| D. <b>gut-en</b> Ringen, Uhren, Gefäßen.   |                   |                        |

(b) **Weak** : preceded by—  
 { der, die, das ; dieser, e, es ; jener, e, es ; welcher,  
 e, es ; einiger, e, es ; derselbe, dieselbe, dasselbe.

|                                 |                          |                               |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------------|
| N. dieser <b>gut-e</b> Ring     | diese <b>gut-e</b> Uhr   | dieses <b>gut-e</b> Gefäß     |
| A. diesen <b>gut-en</b> Ring    | diese <b>gut-e</b> Uhr   | dieses <b>gut-e</b> Gefäß     |
| G. dieses <b>gut-en</b> Ringes  | dieser <b>gut-en</b> Uhr | dieses <b>gut-en</b> Gefäßes  |
| D. diesem <b>gut-en</b> Ring(e) | dieser <b>gut-en</b> Uhr | diesem <b>gut-en</b> Gefäß(e) |

(c) **Mixed** : preceded by—ein, eine, ein ; kein, keine, kein ; and all Possessive Adjectives —

|                                 |                          |                               |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------------|
| N. mein <b>gut-er</b> * Ring    | meine <b>gut-e</b> Uhr   | mein <b>gut-es</b> * Gefäß    |
| A. meinen <b>gut-en</b> Ring    | meine <b>gut-e</b> Uhr   | mein <b>gut-es</b> * Gefäß    |
| G. meines <b>gut-en</b> Ringes  | meiner <b>gut-en</b> Uhr | meines <b>gut-en</b> Gefäßes  |
| D. meinem <b>gut-en</b> Ring(e) | meiner <b>gut-en</b> Uhr | meinem <b>gut-en</b> Gefäß(e) |

*Plural of (b) WEAK and (c) MIXED. m., f., & n.*

|  |
|--|
| N. & A. diese (or meine) <b>gut-en</b> Ringe, Uhren, Gefäße. |
| G. dieser (or meiner) <b>gut-en</b> Ringe, Uhren, Gefäße.    |
| D. diesen (or meinen) <b>gut-en</b> Ringen, Uhren, Gefäßen.  |

§ 18 B. *Peculiarities of Adjective Declension.*

(1) Two or more Adjectives qualifying the same Noun take the same inflections :—

Dieser gute alte weiße Mann. Ein guter alter weißer Mann.  
 Ein neues gebundenes Buch. [Ein neu (adv.) gebundenes Buch.]

(2) If preceded by two different Determinative Pronouns, an Adjective is declined according to the rule applying to the latter of the two :—

Nom. Dieser mein guter Freund. Gen. Dieses meines guten Freundes, &c.

N.B.—Instead of mentioning all the seemingly exceptional cases, we refer the Student to § 71, explaining the *theory* of Adjective Declension, a clear intelligence of which will help him better over all the difficulties than the host of conflicting Rules and Exceptions.

\* The endings marked \* are the only ones which differ from the corresponding cases of the Weak Declension.

§ 19. *Observations on the Declension of Adjectives.*

(1) In Adjectives ending in *-e*, as *böse*, wicked, *träge*, lazy, &c., this *e* is dropped :—*böß* er, *böß* e, *böß* es, &c.

(2) Adjectives ending in *en*, *el*, *er*, generally drop the *e* of the suffix (in the Masc. Acc., however, those in *el*, *er*, drop the *e* of the case-inflection :—

*edel*, noble ; Nom. *ed(e)ler Mann*, *ed(e)le Frau*, *ed(e)les Blut*, &c.  
Acc. *edel(e)n Mann* (*edeln* better than *eblen*), &c.

Compare—

*heiter*, serene ; Nom. *heit(e)rer* ; but Acc. *heiter-(e)n*.  
*vollkommen*, perfect ; Nom. *vollkomm(e)n-er* ; Acc. *vollkomm(e)n-en*.

(3) *Comparatives and Superlatives* (§ 20) take the case inflections after the Comparative and Superlative endings :—

*früh*, early ; *früh-er*, *früh-e*, *früh-es* ; or, *der früh-e*  
*früh-er* earlier ; *früher-er*, *früher-e*, *früher-es* ; *der früher-e*.  
*früh-est*, earliest ; *frühest-er*, *frühest-e*, *frühest-es* ; *der frühest-e*, &c.

(4) *hoch*, high, drops its *c* whenever it is declined :—

*Der Baum* (die *Wolke*) *ist hoch* ; but *der hohe Baum*, die *hohe Wolke*, &c.

(5) With *Neuter Nouns* the Nom. and Acc. case-inflection *es* is frequently dropped, especially in colloquial and poetical language :—

*Kalt Wasser*, cold water ; *baar Geld*, ready money ; *schön Wetter*, fine weather, &c.

(6) In accordance with the general principle (*i.e.* avoiding the repetition of the same endings), the *Gen. Sing.* of the *Masc.* and *Neuter* has now generally *-en* instead of *-es* :—

*Die Stimme gut-en* (instead of *gut-es*) *Rathes*, the voice of sound advice.

(7) Adjectives used *adverbially* are not declined :—

*Ein ganzer Tag*, a whole day ; but—*Ein ganz schöner Tag*, quite a fine day.

*Examples for Declension.*

|         | <i>Strong.</i>   | <i>Weak.</i> | <i>Mixed.</i> |  |
|---------|--|--------------|---------------|--|
| Masc.   | <i>weiß—Wein</i> , <i>der weiß—Wein</i> , <i>ein weiß—Wein</i> , <i>white wine</i> .       |              |               |  |
| Fem.    | <i>weiß—Farbe</i> , <i>die weiß—Farbe</i> , <i>eine weiß—Farbe</i> , <i>white colour</i> . |              |               |  |
| Neuter. | <i>weiß—Pferd</i> , <i>das weiß—Pferd</i> , <i>ein weiß—Pferd</i> , <i>white horse</i> .   |              |               |  |

|         | <i>Masc.</i>  | <i>Fem.</i>                 | <i>Neuter.</i>            |
|---------|---|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| Strong. | <i>übel—Geruch*</i> ;                                     | <i>stärker—Macht†</i> ;     | <i>hoch—Gebirge.‡</i>     |
| Weak.   | <i>der übel—Geruch</i> , the ; <i>die stärker—Macht</i> ; | <i>das hoch—Gebirge</i> .   |                           |
| Mixed.  | <i>ein übel—Geruch</i> , a ;                              | <i>eine stärker—Macht</i> ; | <i>ein hoch—Gebirge</i> . |

\* Bad smell.

† Stronger power.

‡ High mountain range.

## § 20. Comparison of Adjectives.

As in English, the degrees of comparison are formed by adding to the *Positive*— $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{-er for the Comparative;} \\ \text{-est (or -ft) for the Superlative:—} \end{array} \right.$

| <i>Positive.</i>   | <i>Comparative.</i>                | <i>Superlative.</i>                    |
|--------------------|------------------------------------|--|
| leicht, easy,      | leichter, easier                   | leichtest, <sup>1</sup> easiest.       |
| reizend, charming, | reizender, more charming,          | reizendst, <sup>2</sup> most charming. |
| stark, strong,     | stärker, stronger,                 | stärkst, <sup>3</sup> strongest.       |
| bitter, bitter,    | bitt(er)er, <sup>4</sup> bitterer, | bitterst, bitterest.                   |
| träge, lazy,       | träger, lazier,                    | trägst, laziest.                       |

*Obs. 1.*—Only Adjectives which end in a *dental* or *sibilant* (b, t, f, g, k) take *est*.

*Obs. 2.*—Participles in *et* or *end* take *ft*.

*Obs. 3.*—Monosyllabic Adjectives (except those in *-au*, and a few others enumerated in *Obs. 8*, p. 29) modify their radical vowel:—

*Positive* jung, alt; *Comp.* jünger, älter; *Superl.* jüngst, ältest.

*Obs. 4.*—Adjectives in *e*, *el*, *en*, *er*, drop the *e* of the suffix in the Comparative. [*Comp.* § 19 (2)].

*Obs. 5.*—The Superlative has two different forms:—

| (a) <i>Attributive</i> :<br>(declined after § 18, b)— | (b) <i>Predicative or Adverbial</i> :<br>(undeclined)— |
|---|--|
| der (die, das) leichtest <sup>e</sup> , the easiest;  | am leicht <sup>est</sup> en,* (the) easiest.           |
| „ „ stärkst <sup>e</sup> , the strongest;             | am stärk <sup>est</sup> en, (the) strongest, &c.       |

The following examples will illustrate the different uses of these forms:—

Der 22ste Juni ist der längste Tag.  
The 22nd of June is the longest day.  
Von allen Ausichten ist dies die schönste.  
Of all prospects this is the finest.

Im Juni sind die Tage am längsten.†  
In June the days are longest.  
Abends ist diese Aussicht am schönsten.  
In the evening this prospect is most beautiful.

Diese Ausgabe ist die beste.  
This edition is the best.

Die erste Ausgabe ist am besten gedruckt.  
The first edition is the best printed.

N.B.—For the Declension of Comparatives and Superlatives, see § 19, 3.

\* *Am* is a contraction of *an dem*; the ending *en* is the inflection of the Dative Singular (§ 18, b) governed by *an*; lit. *at the easiest, strongest, etc.*

† Compare a similar distinction in French:—

La terre la mieux cultivée produit  
quelquefois des ronces.      Quels sont les pays où la terre est  
le mieux cultivée?



§ 21. *Irregular and Defective Comparison.*

| <i>Positive.</i> | <i>Comparative.</i>      | <i>Attribut. Superlative.</i>     |
|------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| gut, good,       | besser, better,          | der (die, das) beste, best.       |
| viel, much,      | mehr, <sup>1</sup> more, | „ meiste, most.                   |
| wanting          | minder, less,            | „ mindeste, least.                |
| (ehe, ere,       | eher, sooner),           | „ erste, <sup>2</sup> first.      |
| wanting          | wanting                  | „ letzte, <sup>3</sup> last.      |
| hoch, high,      | höher, higher,           | „ höchsten, <sup>3</sup> highest. |
| na(h)e, near,    | näher, nearer,           | „ nächsten, nearest.              |
| groß, great,     | größer, greater,         | „ größten, greatest.              |

*Predicat. and Adverb. Superlative.*

|  |                       |
|--|-----------------------|
| am besten, best, in the best manner, &c. | am letzten, last.     |
| am meisten, most.                        | am höchsten, highest. |
| am mindesten, least.                     | am nächsten, nearest. |
| am ersten, first.                        | am größten, greatest. |

*Obs. 1, 2.*—From the Comparative *mehr* and the Superlative *erst* and *lest* are formed new Comparatives:—

*mehrere*, several; *der erstere*, the former; *der letztere*, the latter.

*Obs. 3.*—*Wichtig* and *äußerst* are used to form the Superlative *Absolute*:—

*höchst wichtig*, most (highly) important.

*äußerst langweilig*, extremely tedious.

*Obs. 4.*—From the following Adverbs are formed Comparatives and Superlatives used adjectively:—

|                 |                        |                                     |
|-----------------|------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| außen, without, | der äußere, the outer, | der äußerste, the outmost, extreme. |
| hinten, behind, | hintere, hinder,       | hinterste, hindmost.                |
| innen, within,  | innere, inner,         | innerste, innermost.                |
| oben, above,    | obere, upper,          | oberste, uppermost.                 |
| unten, below,   | untere, lower,         | unterste, lowest.                   |
| vorn, before,   | vordere, fore,         | vorderste, foremost.                |

*Obs. 5.*—The Comparison of *Equality* is expressed by—*so, ebenso*; *Inferiority* „ *nicht so*:—

{ *Er ist ebenso reich als ich.* He is as rich as I.  
 { *Er ist ein ebenso reicher Mann.* He is just as rich a man. [sister.  
*Sie ist nicht so hübsch als (wie) ihre Schwester.* She is not so pretty as her

*Obs. 6.*—When two qualities of the *same object* are compared, *mehr* (*eher*) and *weniger* must be used:—

*Er ist mehr reich als mächtig.* He is more rich than powerful. [amiable.

*Sie ist weniger hübsch als liebenswürdig.* She is not so much pretty as

*Obs. 7.*—The relation between two Comparatives, in English *the...the*, is expressed in German by *je...je*, or *je...desto*:—

*Je länger die Nächte, desto kürzer die Tage.* The longer the nights, the shorter the days.

*Obs. 8.*—ADJECTIVES which do *not modify* their radical Vowel in the *Comparative and Superlative*—

|                   |                   |                  |                         |
|-------------------|-------------------|------------------|-------------------------|
| fade, insipid.    | laß, lazy.        | starr, stiff.    | schroff, rugged, steep. |
| faß, fallow.      | matt, mate, weak. | straff, tight.   | stolz, proud.           |
| falsch, false.    | nackt, naked.     | zähm, tame.      | tol, mad.               |
| flach, flat.      | platt, flat.      | platt, glad.     | voll, full.             |
| gerade, straight. | sacht, gentle.    | hohl, hollow.    | bunt, motley.           |
| glatt, smooth.    | sanft, soft.      | höl, lovely.     | plump, heavy, clumsy.   |
| laß, bare.        | satt, satiated.   | loß, loose.      | rund, round.            |
| larg, scanty,     | schlaß, flabby.   | morisch, rotten. | stumpf, blunted         |
| stingy.           |                   | roh, raw.        | stumm dumb              |
| lahm, lame.       | schlanf, slender. |                  |                         |

## § 22. NUMERALS (Zahlwörter).

## (a) Cardinal.

|                              |                              |                      |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------|
| 1 Ein, eine, ein *           | 11 elf (elf, <i>obsol.</i> ) | 21 einundzwanzig, 2c |
| 2 zwei (zwo, <i>obsol.</i> ) | 12 zwölf                     | 30 dreißig           |
| 3 drei                       | 13 dreizehn                  | 40 vierzig           |
| 4 vier                       | 14 vierzehn                  | 50 fünfzig           |
| 5 fünf                       | 15 fünfzehn                  | 60 sechs(ß)zig       |
| 6 sechs                      | 16 sechzehn                  | 70 sieb(en)zig       |
| 7 sieben                     | 17 sieb(en)zehn              | 80 achtzig           |
| 8 acht                       | 18 achtzehn                  | 90 neunzig           |
| 9 neun                       | 19 neunzehn                  | 100 hundert          |
| 10 zehn                      | 20 zwanzig                   | 1000 tausend         |

10,000 zehn tausend ; 100,000 hundert tausend ; 1,000,000 eine Million.

1877 ein tausend acht hundert (or achtzehn hundert) sieben und siebenzig.

\* Or eins if standing alone.

## (b) Ordinal.

(declined like Adjectives).

the, der, die, das

1st, erste,

2nd, zweite,\*

3rd, dritte,

4th, vierte,

5th, fünfte, 2c.

8th, achte, 2c.

19th, neunzehnte,

20th, zwanzigste,\*

21st, einundzwanzigste, 2c.

30th, dreißigste, 2c.

100th, hundertste,

101st, hundert(und)

erste,

1000th, tausendste, 2c.

## (c) Enumerative.

firstly, erstens

secondly, zweitens

thirdly, drittens

fourthly, viertens

fifthly, fünftens, 2c.

lastly, letztens

two and two, je zwei.

three and three, je drei, 2c.

\* From the 2nd to 19th add -te ;  
From 20th add -ste.

## (d) Fractional.

1 ganz, das Ganze, the whole.

$\frac{1}{2}$  halb, die Hälfte

$\frac{1}{3}$  ein drittel †

$\frac{1}{5}$  ein fünftel, 2c.

$\frac{2}{3}$  zwei drittel, 2c.

$\frac{1}{4}$  ein viertel

$1\frac{1}{2}$  anderthalb

$2\frac{1}{2}$  drittehalb, 2c.

† tel, from Theil, part.

## (e) Multiplicative.

einfach, † single.

zweifach, § double.

dreifach, treble.

vierfach, fourfold, &c.

† Or einfältig.  
§ Or doppelt.

## (f) Numeral adverbs.

einmal, once.

zweimal, twice.

dreimal, three times.

viermal, four times, &c.

manchmal, many times.

## (g) Variative.

einerlei, of one kind (sort).

zweierlei, of two kinds.

dreierlei, of three kinds.

viererlei, of four kinds.

mancherlei, of many kinds  
allerlei, all sorts of.

§ 23. *Observations on the Numerals.*

(a) *Cardinal.* Only *ein* is fully declined:—

(1) Like the Indefinite Article (§ 8, B), if used before a Substantive;

(2) With the *Strong* endings throughout, if standing alone (substantively); as,

Nom. *Ein* *Ein* *Ein* (*eins*), one, some one.

Gen. *Ein* *Ein* *Ein*, &c. (see § 18, a).

(3) With the *Weak* endings, if preceded by a determinative word (see § 18, b):—

Nom. *der* (*diefer*) *ein* *Tag*, the (this) one day.

Gen. *des* (*diefes*) *eines* *Tages*, of the (this) one day.

*Ein* is also used in the Plural:—*die Einen...die Andern*, some...the others. (Comp. the French—*les uns...les autres*.)

In compound numbers *ein* remains uninflected:—*von ein und dreißig Tagen*.

Notice—*noch ein*, *one more, another*:—

*Noch ein Glas Wein*, another glass of wine. Cf. French: *Encore un verre*.

*Zwei* and *drei*, if not preceded by a determinative word, may be declined:—

Gen. *In Gegenwart zweier Zeugen*. In presence of two witnesses.

Dat. *Ich habe es dreien gesagt*. I said it to three persons.

[This is to indicate the case, which otherwise would be doubtful.]

Also the Dative of the other numerals, used substantively, occurs:—

*Auf allen Vieren*, on all fours.

(b) *Ordinal Numbers* are declined like Adjectives (§ 18); they are used, as in English, with names of sovereigns, &c., and in dates:—

*Friedrich der vierzehnte*, Gen. *Friedrichs des vierzehnten*, &c.

Nom. *der erste Februar*, the first of February.

Acc. *den ersten Februar*, the first of February.

Dat. *am ersten Februar*, on the first of February.

Notice—*Der wievielte ist heute?* what day of the month is it?

(c) *Fractional.* The peculiar form *drittheil*, &c., implies that the second is complete, but the *third* only half =  $2\frac{1}{2}$ . (Comp. Lat. *sestertius*, from *semis tertius*.)

On this principle may be explained the German way of reckoning the hours of the day:—

|                     |                              |   |
|---------------------|------------------------------|---|
| two o'clock,        | <i>zwei Uhr</i>              | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{This implies that as soon as the} \\ \text{second hour has struck, the third} \\ \text{hour begins, and therefore—} \\ \frac{1}{2} \text{ past two} = \frac{1}{2} \text{ towards three o'clock.} \\ \frac{1}{2} \text{ past two} = \frac{1}{2} \quad \text{,,} \quad \text{,,} \quad \text{etc.} \end{array} \right.$ |
| a quarter-past two, | <i>ein Viertel auf drei</i>  |   |
| half-past two,      | <i>halb drei</i> ,           |   |
| a quarter to three, | <i>drei Viertel auf drei</i> |   |



§ 25. *Observations on the Personal Pronouns.*

1. The Gen. **mein, dein, sein** (still used in poetry and idioms) is the primitive form of *meiner, deiner, seiner* :—

*Bergiß mein nicht.* Forget me not.

2. Notice the following compounds of the Genitive with the Prepos. *wegen, halben, willen, for the sake of* :—

*meinet-wegen, deinet-wegen, seinet-wegen* (=halben, =willen).

*For my sake, thy sake, his sake*; or, *on my behalf, &c.*

*unseret-wegen, eueret-wegen, ihret-wegen* (=halben, =willen).

*For our sake, your sake, their sake*; or, *on our behalf, &c.*

3. **Du** is not only used in poetry and divine worship, as in English, but also between intimate friends, near relations, and children, and by grown-up persons to children.

4. **Sie, Ihrer, Ihnen**, 3rd p. plur., must be used instead of *ih, euch, euer*,—which are not considered polite in social intercourse—between equals, and even towards persons of inferior rank, unless the speaker purposely wishes to disregard the conventional forms of politeness.

5. It must be well understood that the neuter *it* not only corresponds to *es*, but also to *er* or *sie*, whenever—as often is the case—the noun it refers to, though *neuter* in English, happens to be *masc.* or *fem.* in German :—

*Wo ist mein Stof?*—*Er ist hier.*

Where is my stick?—*It* is here.

*Wo ist Ihre Feder?*—*Sie ist verloren.*

Where is your pen?—*It* is lost.

Notice also the *neutral sing.* use of *es* :—

*Was für Blumen (f.) sind das* (§ 29)?—What sort of flowers are these?

*Es sind Lilien.* (*Ce sont des lis.*)

*They are lilies.*

6. If referring to such words as *das Weib*, the woman, *das Fräulein*, the young lady, *das Mädchen*, the girl, &c., which, though denoting females, happen to be *Neuter* in *Grammar*, the Pronoun is generally made to agree with the natural gender :—*Kennen Sie Fräulein N.?*—*Ja, sie* ist sehr bescheiden.

7. (a) In using the *Neuter Pron.* in the Genitive or Dative Case, we must distinguish whether it refers to *Persons* or *Things*, as, in the latter case, the corresponding cases of the *Demonstrative Pron.*—*dessen, dem* (§ 28)—must be used :—

(Persons) *Wir erinnern uns seiner.* We remember *him*.

(Things) *Wir erinnern uns dessen.* We remember *it*.

(b) If governed by a preposition, a *Neuter Pronoun* referring to a *thing* must be replaced by *dar*—*da* before consonants—(cognate to the English *there*) prefixed to the governing preposition :—

*Dat. davon, of it* (lit. *thereof*), instead of *von ihm*, which can only mean—*of him*.

*Acc. dafür, for it* (lit. *therefore*), instead of *für ihn*, which can only mean—*for him*.

*Ich weiß nichts davon* (French *en*).

I know nothing *of it*.

*Bist du damit zufrieden?*

Are you satisfied *with it*?

*Haben Sie nichts dagegen?*

Have you no objection *to (against) it*?

(8) Notice the following peculiar uses of *es* :—

*Ich bin es* (bin's), *Du bist es*, &c.

*It is I, it is thou, &c.*

*Ist er es?* *Sind Sie es*, &c.

*Is it he? is it you? &c.*

*Ich hoffe es* (French—*Je l'espère*).

*I hope so.*

*Er ist glücklich, und verdient es zu sein.*

*He is happy, and deserves to be so.*

## B. § 26. POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

These are derived (as in Greek, Latin, English, &c.) from the Genitive of the Personal Pronouns:—

|           | <i>Singular.</i> |             |                  |              |  | <i>Plural.</i> |                |               |
|-----------|------------------|-------------|------------------|--------------|--|----------------|----------------|---------------|
|           | <i>my,</i>       | <i>thy,</i> | <i>his, its,</i> | <i>her ;</i> |  | <i>our,</i>    | <i>your,</i>   | <i>their.</i> |
| <i>m.</i> | mein,            | dein,       | sein,            | ihr          |  | unser,         | euer, Ihr,     | ihr.          |
| <i>f.</i> | meine,           | deine,      | seine,           | ihre ;       |  | unfere,        | eu(e)re, Ihre, | ihre.         |
| <i>n.</i> | mein,            | dein,       | sein,            | ihr ;        |  | unser,         | euer, Ihr,     | ihr.          |

They are declined throughout like the Indef. Article (§ 8, b):—

|           | <i>Singular.</i> |           |           | <i>Plural.</i>        |         |
|-----------|------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------------------|---------|
|           | <i>m.</i>        | <i>f.</i> | <i>n.</i> | <i>m. f. &amp; n.</i> |         |
| <i>N.</i> | mein,            | meine,    | mein,     | my ...                | meine.  |
| <i>A.</i> | meinen,          | meine,    | mein,     | my ...                | meine.  |
| <i>G.</i> | meines,          | meiner,   | meines,   | of my ...             | meiner. |
| <i>D.</i> | meinem,          | meiner,   | meinem,   | to my ...             | meinen. |

*Obs.*—Unser and euer may be contracted like other Adjectives in -er (§ 19):—Gen. unf(e)res or unfers; eu(e)res, &c.

## § 27. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

These are formed from the Possessive Adjectives (§ 26 A.), and declined like other Adjectives—(a) *with* the Definite Article (Weak), or (b) *without* the Article (Strong).

(a) WITH THE ARTICLE (declined according to § 18, b):—

|                | <i>Singular.</i> |                    |                  |  |     | <i>Plural.</i>  |                    |
|----------------|------------------|--------------------|------------------|--|-----|-----------------|--------------------|
|                | <i>meine,</i>    | <i>or meinige,</i> | <i>mine,</i>     |  |     | <i>meinen</i>   | <i>or meinigen</i> |
|                | <i>deine,</i>    | <i>„ deinige,</i>  | <i>thine,</i>    |  |     | <i>beinen</i>   | <i>„ beinigen</i>  |
|                | <i>seine,</i>    | <i>„ seinige,</i>  | <i>his, its,</i> |  |     | <i>seinen</i>   | <i>„ seinigen</i>  |
| der (die, das) | <i>ihre,</i>     | <i>„ ihrige,</i>   | <i>hers,</i>     |  | die | <i>ihren</i>    | <i>„ ihrigen</i>   |
|                | <i>unf(e)re,</i> | <i>„ unfrige,</i>  | <i>ours,</i>     |  |     | <i>unseren</i>  | <i>„ unserigen</i> |
|                | <i>eu(e)re,</i>  | <i>„ eurige,</i>   | <i>yours,</i>    |  |     | <i>eu(e)ren</i> | <i>„ eurigen</i>   |
|                | <i>Ihre,</i>     | <i>„ Ihrige,</i>   | <i>yours,</i>    |  |     | <i>Ihren</i>    | <i>„ Ihrigen</i>   |
|                | <i>ihre,</i>     | <i>„ ihrige,</i>   | <i>theirs,</i>   |  |     | <i>ihren</i>    | <i>„ ihrigen</i>   |

(b) WITHOUT THE ARTICLE (declined according to § 18, a):—

|           | <i>Singular.</i> |           |           | <i>Plural.</i>        |         |
|-----------|------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------------------|---------|
|           | <i>m.</i>        | <i>f.</i> | <i>n.</i> | <i>m. f. &amp; n.</i> |         |
| <i>N.</i> | meiner,          | meine,    | meines,   | mine ;                | meine.  |
| <i>A.</i> | meinen,          | meine,    | meines,   | mine ;                | meine.  |
| <i>G.</i> | meines,          | meiner,   | meines,   | of mine ;             | meiner. |
| <i>D.</i> | meinem,          | meiner,   | meinem,   | to mine ;             | meinen. |

In addressing a person either *familiarly* or *politely*, bear in mind that the Possess. Adj. or Pron. must correspond with the Personal Pron. (§ 24)—

|  |                       |
|--|-----------------------|
| Hast du deinen Hut?<br>Habt ihr euren Hut?<br>Haben Sie Ihren Hut? | } Have you your hat ? |
|--|-----------------------|

§ 28. *Observations on Possessive Adjectives and Pronouns.*

1. The Singular and the Plural of a Possessive Pron. (*masc.* or *fem.*, if referring to a person; *neuter*, if referring to a thing), may be used as Nouns:—

das Meinige, das Meine, my own (property);  
die Meinigen, die Meinen, my own (family relations, &c.).

2. As in French, the Reflective *Personal* Pronoun (in the Dative) with the Definite Article, or the Definite Article alone, often stands where in English the *Possessive* Adjective is strictly required:—

Er hat sich den Arm gebrochen. He has broken *his* arm.

(Il s'est cassé *le* bras.)

Gib mir die Hand (Donne-moi *la* main). Give me *your* hand.

Notice also—

Wo ist der Vater? (instead of *dein* Vater) if no ambiguity can arise.

3. According to § 17, an Adjective is indeclinable, when used as a *predicate*; this holds good with *Possessive* Pronouns:—

Diese Blumen sind mein. These flowers are mine.  
Ces fleurs sont à moi.

4. Distinguish carefully *Possessive Adjectives* from *Possessive Pronouns*:—

*Singular.**Adjective.**Pronoun.*

*m.* Mein Stoch und der deinige (der deine). My stick and *thine*.

*Mon* bâton et *le* tien.

*f.* Meine Hand und die deinige (die deine). My hand and *thine*.

*Ma* main et *la* tienne.

*n.* Mein Pferd und das deinige (das deine). My horse and *thine*.

*m.* Mon cheval et *le* tien.

*Plural.*

*m.f.n.* Meine Stöcke (Hände, Pferde) und die deinigen (die deinen).

*m.* Mes bâtons (chevaux) et *les* tiens. *f.* Mes mains et *les* tiennes.

5. Notice also that a Poss. *Adj.* or *Pron.* of the 3rd pers. agrees—

(a) in *English*, in Gender and Number with the *Possessor* only;

(b) in *French*, with the *thing possessed* only;

(c) in *German*, with both the *Possessor* and the *thing possessed*. Compare—

John (*m.*) and his sister (*f.*).

Jane (*f.*) and her brother (*m.*).

Jean et sa sœur.

Jeanne et son frère.

Johann und seine Schwester.

Joanna und ihr Bruder.

*i.e.* *sein* (*m.*), to agree with the *Possessor* (Bruder, *m.*)

and the *fem.* inflection *et*, to agree with the *Possessed* (Schwester, *f.*).

## C. § 29. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

These may all be used *adjectivally* or *substantivally* :—

- (1) *der, die, das, this, that, the one, he (she, it).*
- (2) *derjenige, diejenige, dasjenige, that, the one.*
- (3) *dieser, diese, dieses, this, this one.*
- (4) *jener, jenes, jenes, that, that one.*
- (5) *derselbe, dieselbe, dasselbe (or derselbige, &c. } the same.*  
*or, der (die, das) nämliche,*  
*(eben derselbe, etc., the very same.)*
- (6) *solcher, solche, solches, such.*

1. (a) *Der (die, das), USED ADJECTIVALLY,*  
 is declined like the *Def. Art.* (which is derived from it, see § 8),  
 and differs from the latter only in having the accent :—

*Der' Mann, this (that) man.*—*Der Mann', the man.*

## SINGULAR.

| <i>Masc.</i>           | <i>Fem.</i>        | <i>Neuter.</i>      |
|------------------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| <i>this man.</i>       | <i>this woman.</i> | <i>this child.</i>  |
| N. <i>Der' Mann,</i> } | <i>die' Frau,</i>  | <i>das' Kind.</i>   |
| A. <i>Den' Mann,</i> } |                    |                     |
| G. <i>Des' Mannes,</i> | <i>der' Frau,</i>  | <i>des' Kindes.</i> |
| D. <i>Dem' Manne,</i>  | <i>der' Frau,</i>  | <i>dem' Kinde.</i>  |

PLURAL, *m., f., n.*

- N.A. *Die' Männer, Frauen, Kinder, these men, &c.*  
 G. *Der' Männer, Frauen, Kinder, of these men, &c.*  
 D. *Den' Männern, Frauen, Kindern, to these men, &c.*

*Obs.* The distinction between the nearer and remoter object pointed at may be expressed by *hier, da, and dort* (as in French by *ci* and *là*) :—

*Der Mann hier* (cet homme-ci). *This man.*  
*Der Mann da* (cet homme-là). *That man.*



1. (b) **Der, die, das**, USED SUBSTANTIVALLY :—

| <i>Singular.</i>                     |                      |               |                       | <i>Plural.</i>        |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------|---------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| this, that ; the one ; he, she, it ; |                      |               |                       | these, those, they.   |
|                                      | <i>m.</i>            | <i>f.</i>     | <i>n.</i>             | <i>m. f. &amp; n.</i> |
| <i>N.</i>                            | <b>der,</b>          | <b>die,</b>   | <b>das ;</b>          | <b>die.</b>           |
| <i>A.</i>                            | <b>den,</b>          | <b>die,</b>   | <b>das ;</b>          | <b>die.</b>           |
| <i>G.</i>                            | <b>dessen (deß),</b> | <b>deren,</b> | <b>dessen (deß) ;</b> | <b>derer (deren).</b> |
| <i>D.</i>                            | <b>dem,</b>          | <b>der,</b>   | <b>dem ;</b>          | <b>denen.</b>         |

It will be seen that **der** used *substantivally* differs from the **der** used *adjectivally* in the *Gen. sing.* and *plur.*, and in the *Dat. plur.*

## APPLICATION.

*Singular.*

- N.* **Der** ist reich, welcher genug hat. *He* is rich, who has enough.  
*A.* **Den** lobe ich, welcher, &c. *Him* I praise, who, &c.  
*G.* **Dessen** gedanke ich, welcher, &c. *Of him* I think, who, &c.  
*D.* **Dem** vertraue ich es, der, &c. *To him* I entrust it, who, &c.

*Plural.*

- N.* **Die** sind reich, welche, &c. *They* are rich, who, &c.  
*A.* **Die** lobe ich, welche, &c. *Them* I praise, who, &c.  
*G.* **Derer** gedanke ich, die, &c. *I think of those*, &c.  
*D.* **Denen** vertrau' ich es, &c. *To them* I entrust it, &c.

**Das** Glück hilft **denen** (or **denjenigen**), die sich selbst helfen.  
 Fortune favours *those* (lit. helps *to those*) who help themselves.

**Ich** habe **deren** sieben. *I have seven of them* (Fr. *en*).  
 but **Sie** sind **ihrer** sieben. *They are seven.*

(2) **Derjenige** is a strengthened form of **der**, and may be used *adjectivally* or *substantivally* :—

| <i>Singular.</i>              |                    |                    | <i>Plural.</i>      |
|-------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| that, the one ; he, she, it ; |                    |                    | those, they         |
|                               | <i>m.</i>          | <i>f.</i>          | <i>n.</i>           |
| <i>N.</i>                     | <b>derjenige,</b>  | <b>diejenige,</b>  | <b>dasjenige ;</b>  |
| <i>A.</i>                     | <b>denjenigen,</b> | <b>diejenigen,</b> | <b>diejenigen ;</b> |
| <i>G.</i>                     | <b>desjenigen,</b> | <b>derjenigen,</b> | <b>desjenigen ;</b> |
| <i>D.</i>                     | <b>demjenigen,</b> | <b>derjenigen,</b> | <b>demjenigen ;</b> |

Notice the peculiarity that both parts of this Compound Pron. (**der** and **jenige**) are declined, the latter like an Adj. preceded by the Def. Art., see § 18.

For the *Application* see p. 40.

(3) **Dieser, diese, dieses, this (adj.) ; this, this one, he (she, it).**

*Singular.*

| <i>m. this cock,</i>     | <i>f. this hen,</i>  | <i>n. this chicken.</i>        |
|--------------------------|----------------------|--------------------------------|
| N. <b>dieser</b> Hahn,   | <b>diese</b> Henne,  | <b>dieses</b> (dies) Hühnchen. |
| A. <b>diesen</b> Hahn,   | <b>diese</b> Henne,  | <b>dieses</b> Hühnchen.        |
| G. <b>dieses</b> Hahnes, | <b>dieser</b> Henne, | <b>dieses</b> Hühnchens.       |
| D. <b>diesem</b> Hahne,  | <b>dieser</b> Henne, | <b>diesem</b> Hühnchen.        |

*Plural ; masc., fem., & neut.*

| <i>these cocks,</i>         | <i>hens,</i>   | <i>chickens.</i> |
|-----------------------------|----------------|------------------|
| N. & A. <b>diese</b> Hähne, | <b>Hennen,</b> | <b>Hühnchen.</b> |
| Gen. <b>dieser</b> Hähne,   | <b>Hennen,</b> | <b>Hühnchen.</b> |
| Dat. <b>diesen</b> Hähnen,  | <b>Hennen,</b> | <b>Hühnchen.</b> |

**Obs. Dieses (dies), das,** used as Subject to the verb *sein*, do not take the *number* (as *this* and *that* do in English) and *gender* of their predicate :—

Dieses (dies, das) sind meine Schwestern. *These are my sisters.*

Ist dies (das) Ihr Freund or Ihre Freundin? *Is this your friend?*

Cf. the French—*Ce sont mes sœurs.*—*Est-ce là votre ami?*

(4) **Jener, jene, jenes** (cognate with Engl. *yon, yonder*), *that, that one*, is declined throughout like **dieser**, and, like the latter, may be used *adjectivally* or *substantivally* :—

**APPLICATION of dieser and jener :—**

(a) *Singular.*

|    | <i>Adject.</i>                        | <i>Pron.</i>                                      |                           |
|----|---------------------------------------|---|---------------------------|
| m. | <b>Dieser</b> Mann und <b>jener</b> . | <i>This</i> { man and<br>woman and<br>child and } | <i>that, or that one.</i> |
| f. | <b>Diese</b> Frau und <b>jene</b> .   |   |                           |
| n. | <b>Dieses</b> Kind und <b>jenes</b> . |   |                           |

*Plural.*

*m. f. n.* **Diese** Männer, Frauen, Kinder, und **jene**. *These men, &c., and those.*

(b) *Singular.*

| m. | <b>Jener</b> Mann und <b>dieser</b> . | <i>That</i> { man and<br>woman and<br>child and } | <i>this, or this one.</i> |
|----|---------------------------------------|---|---------------------------|
| f. | <b>Jene</b> Frau und <b>diese</b> .   |   |                           |
| n. | <b>Jenes</b> Kind und <b>dieses</b> . |   |                           |

*Plural.*

*m. f. n.* **Jene** Männer, Frauen, Kinder, und **diese**. *Those men, women, and these.*

(5) *Derſelbe, dieſelbe, daſſelbe* (or *derſelbige, &c.*, *obsol.*), *the same*, is conjugated throughout like *derjenige* (see p. 37), and may be used either (a) *adjectivally*, or (b) *substantivally* :—

(a) *Derſel'be Fall, the same case.*

*Deſſel'ben Falles, of the same case, &c.*

(b) *Was für ein schöner Hund! What a fine dog!*

*Wo haſt du denſelben gekauft? Where have you bought him?*

*Obs.* *Derſelbe, deſſelben; deſſen, deren*, often stand for the *Possessive* Adjectives, to avoid ambiguity :—

Roland ritt hinter'm Vater her,  
Mit deſſen Speer und Schilde (*Lat.*  
*ejus*).

Der Vater ſchrieb ſeinem Sohn derſelbe  
müſſe nach Paris reiſen.

Roland rode behind his father,  
With *his* (i.e. the father's) spear  
and shield.

The father wrote to his son that *he*  
(the son) was to start for Paris.

Or, also for the sake of euphony :—

Als die Mutter die Tochter ſah, fragte ſie  
dieſelbe (instead of fragte ſie ſie)...

When the mother saw her daughter,  
*she* asked *her*...

N.B.—On the use of *deſſen* instead of the Neuter Personal Pron. referring to *things*, see § 25.

(6) *Solch, such*, is used in three different ways ; it is

(a) declined *strong* (like *dieſ-er, -e, -eſ*), if used *without Art.* ;

(b) declined *mixed* (see § 18), if *preceded* by the Indef. Art. ;

(c) *indeclinable*, if *followed* by the Indef. Art. :—

Compare—

N. *Solch-er* or *ein ſolch-er Gaſt* ; (*m.*) *ſolch ein\* Gaſt*, *such a*  
G. *Solch-eſ(en)* or *eineſ ſolch-en Gaſteſ* ; *ſolch eineſ Gaſteſ*. [guest.

N. *Solch-e* or *eine ſolch-e That* ; (*f.*) *ſolch eine\* That*, *such a*  
G. *Solch-er* or *einer ſolch-en That* ; *ſolch einer That*. [deed.

N. *Solch-eſ* or *ein ſolch-eſ Lieb* ; (*n.*) *ſolch ein\* Lieb*, *such a*  
G. *Solch-eſ(en)* or *eineſ ſolch-en Liebeſ* ; *ſolch eineſ Liebeſ*. [song.

\* Or, *ſo ein Gaſt, ſo eine That, ſo ein Lieb*, *such a guest, &c.*

In the *Plural*, of course, only :—*Solche Gäſte, Thaten, Lieber*.

*Substantivally* :—

*Solch* (or *ſo*) *einer* ; *Solch* (or *ſo*) *eine* ; *Solch* (or *ſo einſ*), *such a one*.

§ 30. *Observations on Demonstrative Pronouns.*

## 1. Distinguish carefully between—

(a) **That, that one**, demonstrative adj. or pron., **jener, jene, jenes**, &c., and—

(b) **That, the one**, determinative adj. or pron. **derjenige**, &c., used with reference to a Noun qualified by a *Noun in the Possess. case*, or by a *Relative clause* :—

(a) **Dieses** Buch und **jenes**.  
Ce livre-ci et celui-là.

*This book and that (that one).*

(b) **Dies** Buch und **dasjenige** Karls.  
Ce livre-ci et celui de Charles.

*This book and that (the one) of Charles (or, Charles').*

**Dies** Buch und **dasjenige** das er liest.

*This book and that (the one) which he is reading.*

Ce livre et celui qu'il lit.

**Dasjenige** Buch gefällt mir, das sich wieder lesen läßt.

*That book pleases me that bears reading again.*

Ce livre-là me plaît qui se laisse relire.

(a) **Jener** Mann ist sehr glücklich.

*That man is very happy.*

(b) **Derjenige** Mann ist am glücklichsten, der am zufriedensten ist.

*That man is the happiest, who is the most contented.*

Notice also—

Demosthenes und Cicero waren große Redner; **dieser** (celui-ci) war ein Römer, **jener** (celui-là) ein Grieche.

Demosthenes and Cicero were great orators; *the latter* was a Roman, *the former* a Greek.

2. When the Demonstr. Pronouns **dies**, **das** (also the Interrog. and Relat. **was** used absolutely) are governed by a Preposition, they assume the forms of **hie(r)**, **da**, **wo** (before a vowel—**dar**, **wor**, which are the original stems, = Engl. *there, where*), prefixed to that Preposition so as to form one word with it :—

**Hiermit**, with *this, herewith*;

**Damit**, with *that, with it, therewith*;

**Womit** ? with *what, wherewith* ; instead of mit *diesem* or mit *dem*.

Denkst du an dein Versprechen ?

*Do you think of your promise ?*

Nein, ich denke nicht daran.

*No, I don't think of it.*

Woran denkst du denn ?

*Of what do you think then ?*

Ich denke an etwas woran du nicht denkst.

*I am thinking of something of which you do not think.*

Thus may be contracted most Prepositions which govern the *Accusative* or *Dative* case, or both :—

**hierzu**, hereto, to this ; **dazu**, thereto, to that ; **wozu**, whereto, to what.

**hiervon**, hereof, of this ; **davon**, thereof, of that ; **wovon**, whereof, of what.

**hierbei**, hereby, by this ; **dabei**, thereby, by that ; **wobei**, whereby, by what.

**hierin**, herein, in this ; **darin**, therein, in that ; **worin**, wherein, in what,

&c.

## D. § 31. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

(a) **Welcher, welche, welches?** plur. **welche?** *which? what?* declined like **dieser**, and used both—

(1) *adjectivally* and (2) *substantivally* : as,

(1) *Adjectival* :—

*Singular.*

| <i>masc.</i>              | <i>fem.</i>          | <i>neuter.</i>         |                             |
|---------------------------|----------------------|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| N. <b>Welcher</b> Mann?   |                      |                        | } man,<br>woman,<br>child.? |
| A. <b>Welchen</b> Mann?   | <b>Welche</b> Frau?  | <b>Welches</b> Kind?   |                             |
| G. <b>Welches</b> Mannes? | <b>Welcher</b> Frau? | <b>Welches</b> Kindes? |                             |
| D. <b>Welchem</b> Manne?  | <b>Welcher</b> Frau? | <b>Welchem</b> Kinde?  |                             |

*Plural.*

| <i>m., f., n.</i>                             |                 |                               |
|---|-----------------|-------------------------------|
| N. & A. <b>Welche</b> Männer, Frauen, Kinder? | <i>which</i>    | } men,<br>women,<br>children? |
| G. <b>Welcher</b> Männer, Frauen, Kinder?     | <i>of which</i> |                               |
| D. <b>Welchen</b> Männern, Frauen, Kindern?   | <i>to which</i> |                               |

(2) *Substantial* :—declined exactly as above (1) :—

*Singular.*

|                             |   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| m. <b>Welcher</b> (N.)      | } von diesen Knaben? <i>Which</i> of these boys?    |
| <b>Welchen</b> (A.)         |   |
| f. <b>Welche</b> (N. & A.)  | von seinen Töchtern? <i>Which</i> of his daughters? |
| n. <b>Welches</b> (N. & A.) | von beiden? <i>Which</i> of the two?                |

*Plural.*

|   |   |
|---|---|
| m.f.n. <b>Welche</b> von diesen Schüler haben sich ausgezeichnet? |   |
|   | <i>Which</i> of these pupils have distinguished themselves? |

*Obs.* 1. If immediately followed by the Verb, it generally remains *neutral* :—

|                    |   |
|--------------------|---|
| <b>Welches</b> ist | { der höchste Berg? <i>Which</i> is the highest mountain? |
|                    | { die beste Wahl? <i>Which</i> is the best choice?        |
|                    | { das schönste Land? <i>Which</i> is the fairest land?    |

(b) **Wer? was?** used substantivally only :—

- (1) N. **Wer** ist da? *Who* is there?  
 A. **Wen** liebst du? *Whom* do you love?  
 G. **Wessen** (wes) ist dies? *Whose* is this?  
 D. **Wem** gehört es? *To whom* does it belong?

(2) *Nom.* Was ist gut? *What* is good?

*Acc.* Was willst du? *What* do you want?

(*Gen.* Wessen? and *Dat.* wem? referring to *things* are unusual.)

For the use of *what*, governed by a Preposition, see § 30.

*Obs.* 2. Before *ein* or an *Adjective*, the simple stem *welch* is used, especially as an interjection:—

**Welch** (ein) prächtiger Regenbogen! *What* a beautiful rainbow!

(c) *Singular* (used with *Indef. Art.*).

|                              |  |                                 |
|------------------------------|--|---------------------------------|
| <i>m.</i> Was für ein Baum   | } ist dies? <i>What sort (kind) of a* tree</i> | <i>(flower, house) is this?</i> |
| <i>f.</i> Was für eine Blume |  |                                 |
| <i>n.</i> Was für ein Haus   |  |                                 |

\* Or simply—*What tree (flower, house) is this?*

*Plural* (used *without Article*).

|                           |                               |                     |   |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------|---|
| <i>m., f., n.</i> Was für | { Bäume<br>Blumen<br>Häuser } | find dies<br>(das)? | <i>What kind of trees,<br/>flowers, houses are<br/>these?</i> |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------|---|

*Obs.* Without the *Indef. Art.*, before a *Collective* or *Plural Noun*:—

Was für Obst? *What kind of fruit? or, What fruit?*

Was für Leute? *What sort of people? or, What people?*

Notice also the occasional insertion of the Verb between *was* and *für*:—

Was ist er für ein Kerl? *What sort of a fellow is he?*

*Substantivally*:—

Was für Einer (Eine, Eins)? *What sort of a man, woman, &c.*

#### MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES:—

Wer hat das gethan?—

Mein Mitschüler.—Welcher?

Wer ist jener Herr?—

Ein Fremder.

Was für ein Fremder?—

Ein Engländer.

Welcher Engländer?

*Who* has done that?—

My school-fellow.—*Which?*

*Who* is that gentleman?—

A stranger.

*What* stranger?—

An Englishman.

*Which* Englishman?

## E. § 32. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

| (a) | <i>Singular.</i> |           |           | <i>Plural.</i>  |                     |
|-----|------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------------|---------------------|
|     | <i>m.</i>        | <i>f.</i> | <i>n.</i> | <i>m. f. n.</i> |                     |
| N.  | der,             | die,      | das ;     | die ;           | } who, which, that. |
| A.  | den,             | die,      | das ;     | die ;           |                     |
| G.  | dessen,          | deren,    | dessen ;  | deren ;         | of whom, whose.     |
| D.  | dem,             | der,      | dem ;     | denen ;         | to whom, to which.  |

|    |    |          |          |           |           |                     |
|----|----|----------|----------|-----------|-----------|---------------------|
| b) | N. | welcher, | welche,  | welches ; | welche ;  | } who, which, that. |
|    | A. | welchen, | welche,  | welches ; | welche ;  |                     |
|    | G. | dessen,  | deren,   | dessen,   | deren ;   | of whom, whose.     |
|    | D. | welchem, | welcher, | welchem ; | welchen ; | to whom, to which.  |

## APPLICATION :—

*Singular.**m.,* Ein Mann,

A man,

|   |                                   |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| N. ... <i>der</i> (or <i>welcher</i> ) säet.      | ... <i>who</i> sows.              |
| A. ... <i>den</i> (or <i>welchen</i> ) ich achte. | ... <i>whom</i> I esteem.         |
| G. ... { <i>dessen</i> ich gedenke.               | ... <i>of whom</i> I think.       |
| { <i>dessen</i> Glaube stark ist.                 | ... <i>whose</i> faith is strong. |
| D. ... <i>dem</i> (or <i>welchem</i> ) ich traue. | ... <i>to whom</i> I trust.       |

*f.,* Eine Frau,

A woman,

|   |                               |
|---|-------------------------------|
| N. ... <i>die</i> (or <i>welche</i> ) näht.       | ... <i>who</i> is sewing.     |
| A. ... <i>die</i> (or <i>welche</i> ) ich achte.  | ... <i>whom</i> I esteem.     |
| G. ... { <i>deren</i> ich gedenke.                | ... { <i>of whom</i> I think. |
| { <i>deren</i> Glaube stark ist.                  | ... { <i>whose</i> faith, &c. |
| D. ... <i>der</i> (or <i>welcher</i> ) ich traue. | ... <i>to whom</i> I trust.   |

*n.,* Ein Kind,

A child,

|   |                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| N. ... <i>das</i> (or <i>welches</i> ) spielt.      | ... <i>who</i> ( <i>that</i> ) plays. |
| A. ... <i>das</i> (or <i>welches</i> ) ich liebe.   | <i>whom</i> ( <i>that</i> ) I love.   |
| G. ... { <i>dessen</i> ich gedenke.                 | ... <i>of whom</i> I think.           |
| { <i>dessen</i> Glaube stark ist.                   | ... <i>whose</i> faith is strong.     |
| D. ... <i>dem</i> (or <i>welchem</i> ) ich es gebe. | ... <i>to whom</i> I give it.         |

*Plural.**m.f.n.,* Männer, Frauen, Kinder,

Men, women, children,

|  |                                      |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| N. ... <i>die</i> (or <i>welche</i> ) arbeiten.        | ... <i>who</i> ( <i>that</i> ) work. |
| A. ... <i>die</i> (or <i>welche</i> ) ich sehe.        | ... <i>whom</i> I see.               |
| G. ... { <i>deren</i> ich gedenke.                     | ... <i>of whom</i> I think.          |
| { <i>deren</i> Glaube stark ist.                       | ... <i>whose</i> faith, &c.          |
| D. ... <i>denen</i> (or <i>welchen</i> ) ich das gebe. | ... <i>to whom</i> I give that.      |

Obs. With reference to *Pers.* Pronouns of the 1st and 2nd pers., only *der* may be used :—

*Ich, der* ich es so gut mit Ihnen meine. I, *who* wish you so well.

(c) **Wer**, *who*, is used *absolutely* in the sense of **derjenige welcher**, *he who, whoever* :—i.e. as antecedent and relative combined :—

- N. Ich weiß **wer** es gesagt hat. I know *who* said it.  
**Wer** nicht hören will (der) *He who* (whoever) will not  
 muß fühlen. hear must feel.  
 A. **Wem** das Schicksal brüdt, den *He whom* fate oppresses, him  
 liebt es. it loves.  
 G. **Wessen** (wes) Brodt du issest, des *Whose* bread you eat, his  
 (or dessen) Lieb du singst. praise you sing.  
 D. **Wem** wir vertrauen, der wird *He (to) whom* we trust, (he)  
 auch uns vertrauen. will also trust us.

Notice the strengthened form (French 'quiconque')—

**Wer auch immer** } das sagt, *Whoever (whosoever)* says that,  
 or **Wer auch nur** } &c. &c.

(d) **Was**, *what* (Fr. 'ce qui, ce que'), is used—

(1) *absolutely* in the sense of **dasjenige welches**, *that which, whatever*, i.e. (like **wer**) as the antecedent and relative combined :—

- Was** wir sehen (das) glauben wir. *What (that which)* we see (that)  
 we believe.  
 Sie mögen sagen **was** Sie wollen. You may say *what* you like.  
**Was** du heute thun kannst, **das** *What* you can do to-day, do  
 verschiebe nicht auf morgen. not put off till to-morrow.

Notice the strengthened form (French 'quoi que ce soit') :—

**Was auch immer** } geschehen mag. *Whatever (whatsoever)* may  
**Was auch nur** } happen.

(2) referring to an *Indefinite Pronoun* or a *Neuter Adj.* :—

- Acc. Glaube nicht **Alles was** Do not believe *all that* you  
 du hörst. hear.  
**Das** ist es, **was** ich dir zu That is *what* I had to tell you.  
 sagen hatte.  
**Das Beste was** wir besitzen. The best *that* we possess.

Obs. In the sense of **etwas** :—Ich will dir **was** sagen. I'll tell you *something*.

(3) governed by a preposition (see § 30, 2) :—

- Das ist etwas, wovon** ich nichts That is something I know  
 weiß. nothing of.  
**Wovon** das Herz voll ist, geht der lit. *That of which* the heart is  
 Mund über. full, the mouth overflows.  
 (Prov. What the heart thinketh, the mouth speaketh.)



## F. § 33. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

(1) **Man** (used—like *on* in French—in *Nominat.* only), one ; some one ; somebody ; we ; you ; they (indef.) ; people ; mankind :—

**Man** sagt (Fr. 'on dit'). People say ; they say ; it is said (reported).  
**Man** hat mir gesagt. I am told ; I have been told ; I gather.  
**Man** ließ ihn holen. They sent for him ; he was sent for.  
**Man** sagt er sei krank. They say he is ill ; he is said to be ill.

(2) **Jemand** (Compound of *Je* and *Mann*), some one ; somebody ; a man ; a person :—

**Jemand** anders, some one (body) else.  
**Jrgend Jemand**, any one, anybody.

(3) **Niemand** (*i.e.* *nicht Jemand*), no one ; nobody :—

**Niemand** anders, no one else.

(4) **Jedermann**, every one ; everybody.

*Declension of the above :—*

| <i>N.</i> | <b>Man.</b>     | <b>Jemand.</b>     | <b>Niemand.</b>     | <b>Jedermann.</b>  |
|-----------|-----------------|--------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| <i>A.</i> | <b>Einen.</b>   | <b>Jemand(en).</b> | <b>Niemand(en).</b> | <b>Jedermann.</b>  |
| <i>G.</i> | <b>Ein(e)s.</b> | <b>Jemand(e)s.</b> | <b>Niemand(e)s.</b> | <b>Jedermanns.</b> |
| <i>D.</i> | <b>Einem.</b>   | <b>Jemand(en).</b> | <b>Niemand(en).</b> | <b>Jedermann.</b>  |

(5) **Keiner, Keine, Keines (Keins)**, no one ; none (declined like *Ein*, § 8).

**Etwas**, *n.* something ; anything :—

**Etwas Neues** ('quelque chose *de nouveau*'), something new.

**Etwas Anderes (Besseres)**, something else (better), &c.

**Das will etwas sagen.** That is saying a great deal.

**Jrgend etwas**, anything ; **etwas Geld**, some money.

**Judend sagt mein Daumen mir** By the pricking of my thumbs

**Etwas Böses naht sich hier.** Something wicked this way comes.

**Nichts**, *n.* (instead of *nicht etwas*), nothing ; not anything :—

**Nichts Gutes**, nothing good.

**Nichts Besonderes**, nothing in particular.

**Mir nichts, dir nichts**, without any ceremony.

**Einig-er, -e, -es**, *pl.* **einige** (etliche, obsol.), some ; several :—

**Gib mir einige von diesen.** Give me *some* of these.

**Es sind einige zwanzig Jahre her.** It is *some* twenty years since.

**Manch-er, -e, -es**, many a ; many. **Mancher Mann**, many *a* man.

**Viel**, much, **viele**, many ; **Subst.**—**Vieles**, much, a great deal :—

**Viel Schönes**, much that is beautiful.

THE VERB (*das Zeitwort*).

## INTRODUCTORY REMARKS.

§ 34. The Classification of Verbs according to—

(a) *Meaning*—into *Transitive* and *Intransitive*.

(b) *Voice*—into *Active* and *Passive*.

(c) *Mood*—into *Indicative*, *Subjunctive*, and *Imperative*  
(Verbal Nouns and Adjectives—*Infinitive* and *Participles*).

(d) *Tense*—into *Present*, *Past*, and *Future*, and—

(e) *Conjugation*—into *Weak*, *Strong*, and *Anomalous*,  
is, on the whole, the same as in English.

The close kinship between German and English nowhere appears more strikingly than in the treatment of their Verbs; the natural classification into *weak* and *strong* being substantially the same in the two languages:—

**Weak.**

| <i>Present.</i>         | <i>Preterite.</i>          | <i>Part. Perf.</i>       |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------|
| ich lieb-e,<br>I lov-e. | ich lieb-t-e,<br>I lov-ed. | ge-lieb-(e)t,<br>lov-ed. |
| ich teil-e,<br>I deal.  | ich teil-t-e,<br>I deal-t. | ge-teil-t,<br>deal-t.    |

**Strong.**

| <i>Present.</i>           | <i>Preterite.</i>       | <i>Part. Perf.</i>        |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| ich beginn-e,<br>I begin. | ich begann,<br>I began. | begunn-en,*<br>began.     |
| ich focht-e,<br>I fight.  | ich focht,<br>I fought. | ge-focht-en,<br>fought.   |
| ich brach-e,<br>I break.  | ich brach,<br>I broke.  | ge-brach-en,<br>broke-en. |

\* "The Perf. Part. of all Verbs of the *Strong* conj. in English was originally formed by the (adjective) suffix *-en* and the prefixed particle *ge-*. The suffix *-en* has now disappeared from many verbs, and the prefix *ge-* from all."—MASON'S *English Grammar*, § 221.

"*Weak Verbs* form their past tense by means of the suffix *-d* or *-t*. In Old English we find that this ending had a longer form *de*; as,  *Ic ner-e-de*, I saved. This *-de* represents a mere primitive *dede* = *did*, which is the past tense (formed by reduplication) of the Verb *do* :—

I lov-ed, I love-did, thou love-dest = thou love-didst, &c."

(MORRIS, *Historical English Grammar*.)

And thus in German :—"The formation of the Perfect divides all Verbs into two Classes, which radically differ in their stem-formation :—

(a) *Primitive Verbs* form their perfect by *reduplication*, or, if the reduplication is dropped, by the *lengthening* (*Steigerung*) of the root-vowel ;

(b) *Derived Verbs* form their perfect by *composition*; for the Perfect tense-endings of Derived Verbs are nothing else than remnants of the Perfect of the Verb *tu-on* (root *ta*), *to do*, affixed to the Verbal Stem."—SCHLEICHER, *Deutsche Sprache*.

Compare also the Latin : *mōveo*, *mōvi* contracted from the original reduplicated form *mō-mōvi*; and *amo*, *ama-vi*, this suffix *vi* being the same as the Perfect *fui* of the Auxiliary Verb, and doing the same office as the English *do* or the Old German *tuon*.

## § 35. FORMATION OF

All Verbs end in the *Infinit.* in *-en*, or (if

(a) **Weak (Modern) Verbs,**

INFINITIVE : lob-en, to praise.

PRETERITE : ich lob-te, I prais-ed, &c.

PART. PERF. : ge-lob-(e)t, prais-ed.

PART. PRES. : lob-*end*, prais-ing.

## A. THE SIMPLE TENSES.

(1) The **Present**

by adding the *person-inflections*

| INDICATIVE.  |              |              | SUBJUNCTIVE. |              |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| <i>pers.</i> | <i>sing.</i> | <i>plur.</i> | <i>sing.</i> | <i>plur.</i> |
| 1.           | lob-e,       | lob-en.      | lob-e,       | lob-en.      |
| 2.           | — (e)ft,     | — (e)t.      | — eft,       | — et.        |
| 3.           | — (e)t,      | — en.        | — e,         | — en.        |

(2) The **Preterite**

(a) by inserting the *tense-character et* or *t\** between the *stem* and *person-inflection* :—

|    |                   |           |                      |              |
|----|-------------------|-----------|----------------------|--------------|
| 1. | lob-t-e,          | lob-t-en. | lob-(e)t-e,          | lob-(e)t-en. |
| 2. | — t- <i>eft</i> , | — t-et.   | — (e)t- <i>eft</i> , | — (e)t-et.   |
| 3. | — t-e,            | — t-en.   | — (e)t-e,            | — et-en.     |

(3) The **IMPERATIVE**

by adding the *person-inflections*

|    |           |                                |
|----|-----------|--------------------------------|
| 1. | —         | lob-en wir, or laßt uns loben. |
| 2. | lob-e,    | lob(e)t.                       |
| 3. | lob-e er, | loben sie.                     |

(4) The **PERFECT**

(a) by prefixing *ge-* to the *stem* \* and adding *-et* or *-t* :—

ge-lob-t (gered-et)

\* Except Verbs in *-iren* and inseparable comp. Verbs :—  
regiert, verlobt, bejungen.

## TENSES AND MOODS.

contracted) in *-n*, and are classified into—

and (b) **Strong (Ancient) Verbs** :—

|               |                    |           |
|---------------|--------------------|-----------|
| INFINITIVE :  | sing-en,           | to sing.  |
| PRETERITE :   | ich sang,          | I sang.   |
| PART. PERF. : | ge-sung-en,        | sung.     |
| PART. PRES. : | sing- <i>end</i> , | sing-ing. |

## A. THE SIMPLE TENSES.

**Tense** is formed—

as below, to the *Verb-stem* :—

| INDICATIVE. |                       |              | SUBJUNCTIVE. |              |              |
|-------------|-----------------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
|             | <i>sing.</i>          | <i>plur.</i> |              | <i>sing.</i> | <i>plur.</i> |
| 1.          | sing-e,               | sing-en.     |              | sing-e,      | sing-en.     |
| 2.          | — (e)ft, <sup>1</sup> | — (e)t.      |              | — eft,       | — et.        |
| 3.          | — (e)t, <sup>2</sup>  | — en.        |              | — e,         | — en.        |

<sup>1</sup> In some cases the *root-vowel* is changed or modified.

is formed—

(b) by changing the *root-vowel*, and adding the *person-inflection* to the stem :—

(c) by modifying the *root-vowel* of the Indicative :—

|    |                    |          |  |         |          |
|----|--------------------|----------|--|---------|----------|
|    | sang, <sup>2</sup> | sang-en. |  | säng-e, | säng-en. |
| 1. |                    |          |  |         |          |
| 2. | — ft,              | — et.    |  | — eft,  | — et.    |
| 3. | — , <sup>3</sup>   | — en.    |  | — e,    | — en.    |

<sup>2</sup> No inflections in the 1st and 3rd pers. sing.

is formed—

to the *Verb-stem* :—

|    |                      |                                  |
|----|----------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. | —,                   | sing-en wir, or laßt uns singen. |
| 2. | sing-e, <sup>3</sup> | sing-et,                         |
| 3. | sing-e er,           | sing-en sie.                     |

<sup>3</sup> When the *root-vowel* is changed in the *Pres. Indicat.* (see note 1), it is also changed in the 2nd pers. sing. of the *Imperat.*

**PARTICIPLE** is formed—

(b) by prefixing *ge-* to the *stem* (retaining the *-en* of *Infinit.*) and, in most cases, changing the *root-vowel* :—

ge-sung-en,<sup>4</sup>

<sup>4</sup> In some cases the vowel of the Infinitive is not changed.

## B. The COMPOUND TENSES are formed—

by means of *Auxiliary Verbs* + *Perf. Participle* or *Infinitive* :—

with **haben**, to have, for most *trans.* Verbs } to form the *Past* tenses  
with **sein**, to be, for some *intrans.* Verbs } of the *Active Voice*.  
with **werden**, to become, to form—

(a) the *Future* and *Conditional* of the *Active Voice*.

(b) the *whole Passive Voice* :—

(1) The **Pres. Perf. Indic.** is formed by—

the *Pres. Indic.* } + *Part. Perf.* :  
of *Auxil. Verb* }  
**ich habe** { gelobt, praised.  
I have { gesungen, sung.  
**ich bin** { gereist, travelled.  
(lit. I am) { gekommen, come.

(2) The **Pres. Perf. Subj.** is formed by—

the *Pres. Subj.* } + *Part. Perf.* :  
of *Auxil. Verb* }  
**ich habe** { gelobt, praised.  
I may have { gesungen, sung.  
**ich sei** { gereist, travelled.  
(lit. I be) { gekommen, come, &c.

(3) The **Pluperf. Indic.** is formed by—

the *Pret. Indic.* } + *Part. Perf.* :  
of *Auxil. Verb* }  
**ich hatte** { gelobt, praised.  
I had { gesungen, sung, &c.  
**ich war** { gereist, travelled.  
(lit. I was) { gekommen, come, &c.

(4) The **Pluperf. Subj.** is formed by—

the *Pret. Subj.* } + *Part. Perf.* :  
of *Auxil. Verb* }  
**ich hätte** { gelobt, praised.  
I had { gesungen, sung, &c.  
**ich wäre** { gereist, travelled.  
(lit. I were) { gekommen, come, &c.

(5) The **Future Pres.** is formed by—

the *Pres. Indic.* } + *Infin. Pres.* :  
of **werden** }  
**ich werde** { loben, praise.  
I shall { singen, sing.  
          { reisen, travel.  
          { kommen, come, &c.

(6) The **Conditional Pres.** is formed by—

the *Pret. Subj.* } + *Infin. Pres.* :  
of **werden** }  
**ich würde** { loben, praise.  
I should { singen, sing.  
          { reisen, travel.  
          { kommen, come, &c.

(7) The **Future Perf.** is formed by—

the *Pres. Indic.* } + *Infin. Perf.* :  
of **werden** }  
I shall have praised, &c.  
**ich werde** { gelobt haben,  
          { gesungen haben, &c.  
          { gereist sein,  
          { gekommen sein, &c.

(8) The **Condit. Perf.** is formed by—

the *Pret. Subj.* } + *Infin. Perf.* :  
of **werden** }  
I should have praised, &c.  
**ich würde** { gelobt haben,  
          { gesungen haben, &c.  
          { gereist sein,  
          { gekommen sein, &c.

## § 36. COMPARATIVE TABLE OF GERMAN AND ENGLISH TENSES.

An Action—Present, Past, or Future—may be conceived as—

(1) *Indefinite* (Simple), (2) *Imperfect and Continuous*, (3) *Perfect*, or (4) *Perfect and Continuous*.

The annexed Scheme shows how each of these states of action is expressed in English and in German, the latter language being deficient in two of the forms for expressing them—(2) and (4) \* :—

|   | (1) <i>Indefinite.</i>   | (2) <i>Imperfect &amp; Continuous.</i>  | (3) <i>Perfect.</i> | (4) <i>Perfect &amp; Continuous.</i> |
|---|--|---|---------------------|--------------------------------------|
| (a) <i>Present.</i>                       | I praise,<br><u>I am praising.</u><br>ich lobe.                    | I have praised,<br><u>I have been praising.</u><br>ich habe gelobt.                     |                     |                                      |
| (b) <i>Past.</i><br>( <i>Preterite.</i> ) | I praised,<br><u>I was praising.</u><br>ich lobte.                 | I had praised,<br><u>I had been praising.</u><br>ich hatte gelobt.                      |                     |                                      |
| (c) <i>Future.</i>                        | I shall praise,<br><u>I shall be praising.</u><br>ich werde loben. | I shall have praised ;<br><u>I shall have been praising.</u><br>ich werde gelobt haben. |                     |                                      |

\* Nor is there in German either an *Intentional* or *Emphatic* Present, Past, or Future, which must therefore be rendered by a circumlocution :—

I am (*was*) going to praise. ich bin (*war*) im Begriffe zu loben ; or, ich wollte eben loben,  
I do (*did*) praise. ich lobe (*lobte*) in der That (*or* wirklich) ; or, ich lobe ja.

## AUXILIARY VERBS.

§ 37. *Infinitive*: **Haben**, to have. | § 38. *Infinitive*: **Sein**, to be.

| <i>Preterite.</i> | <i>Part. Perf.</i> | <i>Preterite.</i> | <i>Part. Perf.</i> |
|-------------------|--------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| hatte,<br>had,    | gehabt.<br>had.    | war,<br>was,      | gewesen.<br>been.  |

INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE. INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.

## Present.

|                 |                 |             |               |
|-----------------|-----------------|-------------|---------------|
| I have, &c.     | I may have, &c. | I am, &c.   | I be, &c.     |
| ich hab-e,      | ich hab-e.      | ich bin,    | ich sei.      |
| du ha-ft,       | du hab-est.     | du bist,    | du sei-(e)st. |
| er ha-t,        | er hab-e.       | er ist,     | er sei.       |
| wir hab-en,     | wir hab-en      | wir sind,   | wir sei-en.   |
| { ihr hab-(e)t, | ihr hab-et.     | { ihr seid, | ihr sei-et.   |
| { Sie hab-en,   | Sie hab-en.     | { Sie sind, | Sie sei-en.   |
| sie hab-en,     | sie hab-en.     | sie sind,   | sie sei-en.   |

## Preterite (Imperfect).

|                |                    |               |             |
|----------------|--------------------|---------------|-------------|
| I had, &c.     | I should have, &c. | I was,        | I were.     |
| ich hat-te,    | ich hätt-e.        | ich war,      | ich wär-e.  |
| du hat-test,   | du hät-test.       | du war-est,   | du wär-est. |
| er hat-te,     | er hät-te.         | er war,       | er wär-e.   |
| wir hat-ten,   | wir hät-ten.       | wir war-en,   | sie wär-en. |
| { ihr hat-tet, | ihr hät-tet.       | { ihr war-et, | ihr wär-et. |
| { Sie hat-ten, | Sie hät-ten.       | { Sie waren,  | Sie wär-en. |
| sie hat-ten,   | sie hät-ten.       | sie war-en,   | sie wär-en. |

## Pres. Perfect (Past Indefinite).

|                               |                               |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| I have (may have) had, &c.    | I have (may have) been, &c.   |
| ich habe (subj. habe) gehabt, | ich bin (subj. sei) gewesen,  |
| du hast (habe)st gehabt, &c.  | du bist (seiest) gewesen, &c. |

## Pluperfect.

|                               |                               |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| I had (should have) had.      | I had (should have) been, &c. |
| ich hatte (hätte) gehabt, &c. | ich war (wäre) gewesen, &c.   |

## Future Pres. and Conditional Pres.

|                                    |                                   |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| I shall (should) have, &c.         | I shall (should) be, &c.          |
| ich werde (würde) haben, see § 39. | ich werde (würde) sein, see § 39. |

## Future Perf. and Conditional Perf.

|                                 |                                 |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| I shall (should) have had, &c.  | I shall (should) have been, &c. |
| ich werde (würde) gehabt haben, | ich werde (würde) gewesen sein, |
| &c.                             | &c.                             |



## AUXILIARY VERBS.

§ 39. *Werden*, to become.*Principal Parts:—*

| INFINITIVE.                  | PRETERITE.               | PART. PERF.                 |
|------------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <b>werden,</b><br>to become, | <b>wurde,</b><br>became, | <b>geworden.</b><br>become. |

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

**Present.**

I become, I am becoming, &amp;c.

ich werd-e,  
du wir-ft,  
er wird,  
wir werd-en,  
{ ihr werd-et,  
Sie werd-en,  
sie werd-en,

I may become, &amp;c.

ich werd-e.  
du werd-est.  
er werd-e.  
wir werd-en.  
ihr werd-et.  
Sie werd-en.  
sie werd-en.

**Preterite (Imperfect).**

I became, I was becoming, &amp;c.

ich wurd-e (ward),\*  
du wurd-est (ward-ft),  
er wurd-e (ward),  
wir wurd-en,  
{ ihr wurd-et,  
Sie wurd-en,  
sie wurd-en,

I should become, &amp;c.

ich würd-e.  
du würd-est.  
er würd-e.  
wir würd-en.  
ihr würd-et.  
Sie würd-en.  
sie würd-en.

**Pres. Perfect (Past Indefinite).**

I have become, &amp;c.

ich bin geworden,  
du bist geworden, &c.

I may have become, &amp;c.

ich sei geworden.  
du seiest geworden, &c.

**Pluperfect.**

I had become, &amp;c.

ich war geworden, &c.

I should have become, &amp;c.

ich wäre geworden, &c.

**Future Pres.**

I shall become, &amp;c.

ich werde werden, &c.

**Condit. Pres.**

I should become, &amp;c.

ich würde werden, &c.

**Future Perf.**

I shall have become, &amp;c.

ich werde geworden sein, &c.

**Condit. Perf.**

I should become, &amp;c.

ich würde geworden sein, &c.

*Obs. 1.* **ward**, the original form for the *Singular*, is a relic of a numerous class of verbs (ending in a double stem-consonant) which in the *Preterite* had **a** in the *Sing.*, and **u** in the *Plural*.

## WEAK (MODERN) CONJUGATION.

§ 40. *Lieb-en*, to love.

| INFINITIVE.                  | PRETERITE.                   | PART. PERF.                   |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>lieb-en</i> ,<br>to love. | <i>lieb-t-e</i> ,<br>lov-ed. | <i>ge-lieb-t</i> ,<br>lov-ed. |

## INDICATIVE.

## Present.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

I love, &c.  
 ich *lieb-e*  
 du *lieb-(e)st*  
 er *lieb-(e)t*  
 wir *lieb-en*  
 { ihr *lieb-(e)t*  
 { Sie *lieb-en*  
 sie *lieb-en*

I may love, &c.  
 ich *lieb-e*  
 du *lieb-est*  
 er *lieb-e*  
 wir *lieb-en*  
 { ihr *lieb-et*  
 { Sie *lieb-en*  
 sie *lieb-en*

## Preterite.

I loved, &c.  
 ich *lieb-t-e*  
 du *lieb-t-est*  
 er *lieb-t-e*  
 wir *lieb-t-en*  
 { ihr *lieb-t-et*  
 { Sie *lieb-t-en*  
 sie *lieb-t-en*

I might love.  
 ich *lieb-(e)t-e*  
 du *lieb-(e)t-est*  
 er *lieb-(e)t-e*  
 wir *lieb-(e)t-en*  
 { ihr *lieb-(e)t-et*  
 { Sie *lieb-(e)t-en*  
 sie *lieb-(e)t-en*

## Present Perfect.

I have loved, &c.  
 ich *habe*  
 du *hast*  
 er *hat*  
 wir *haben*  
 { ihr *habt*  
 { Sie *haben*  
 sie *haben* } *geliebt.*

I may have loved, &c.  
 ich *habe*  
 du *habest*  
 er *habe*  
 wir *haben*  
 { ihr *habet*  
 { Sie *haben*  
 sie *haben* } *geliebt.*

## Pluperfect.

I had loved, &c.  
 ich *hatte*  
 du *hattest*  
 er *hatte*  
 wir *hätten*  
 { ihr *hattet*  
 { Sie *hätten*  
 sie *hätten* } *geliebt.*

I might have loved.  
 ich *hätte*  
 du *hättest*  
 er *hätte*  
 wir *hätten*  
 { ihr *hättet*  
 { Sie *hätten*  
 sie *hätten* } *geliebt.*

**Future.****Present.****Conditional.**

I shall love, &amp;c.

| <i>Indic. (Subjunct.)</i> |                        |                  |
|---------------------------|------------------------|------------------|
| ich                       | <b>werde</b> (werde)   | } <b>lieben.</b> |
| du                        | <b>wirft</b> (werdest) |                  |
| er                        | <b>wird</b> (werde)    |                  |
| wir                       | <b>werden</b> (werden) |                  |
| { ihr                     | <b>werdet</b> (werdet) |                  |
| { Sie                     | <b>werden</b> (werden) |                  |
| ſie                       | <b>werden</b> (werden) |                  |

I should love, &amp;c.

|       |                |                  |
|-------|----------------|------------------|
| ich   | <b>würde</b>   | } <b>lieben.</b> |
| du    | <b>würdeſt</b> |                  |
| er    | <b>würde</b>   |                  |
| wir   | <b>würden</b>  |                  |
| { ihr | <b>würdet</b>  |                  |
| { Sie | <b>würden</b>  |                  |
| ſie   | <b>würden</b>  |                  |

**Perfect.**

I shall have loved, &amp;c.

| <i>Indic. (Subjunct.)</i> |                        |                         |
|---------------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|
| ich                       | <b>werde</b> (werde)   | } <b>geliebt haben.</b> |
| du                        | <b>wirft</b> (werdest) |                         |
| er                        | <b>wird</b> (werde)    |                         |
| wir                       | <b>werden</b> (werden) |                         |
| { ihr                     | <b>werdet</b> (werdet) |                         |
| { Sie                     | <b>werden</b> (werden) |                         |
| ſie                       | <b>werden</b> (werden) |                         |

I should have loved.

|       |                |                         |
|-------|----------------|-------------------------|
| ich   | <b>würde</b>   | } <b>geliebt haben.</b> |
| du    | <b>würdeſt</b> |                         |
| er    | <b>würde</b>   |                         |
| wir   | <b>würden</b>  |                         |
| { ihr | <b>würdet</b>  |                         |
| { Sie | <b>würden</b>  |                         |
| ſie   | <b>würden</b>  |                         |

**IMPERATIVE.***Sing.* 2. **liebe,** love (thou).3. **liebe** er, let him love.*Plural.* 1. { **lieben** wir, } let us love.  
{ **laßt uns lieben,** }2. **lieb(e)t,** (lieben Sie), love (ye).3. **lieben** ſie, let them love.**SUPINE.***Pres.* :—(um) zu **lieben,** (in order) to love.*Past* :—(um) **geliebt** zu **haben,** (in order) to have loved.**PARTICIPLE.***Pres* :—**lieb-end,** lov-*ing*.

# § 41. CONJUGATION OF AN INTRANSITIVE VERB OF MOTION IN THE COMPOUND TENSES:—

with the Auxiliary Verb **sein**, to be.

INFINITIVE PRES. :—**reisen**, to travel.

INFINITIVE PERF. :—**gereist sein**, to have travelled.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

## Present Perfect.

I have (may have) { travelled.  
been travelling, &c.

|            |      |            |            |       |           |
|------------|------|------------|------------|-------|-----------|
| ich        | bin  | } gereist. | ich        | sei   | } gereist |
| du         | bist |            | du         | seist |           |
| { er (sie) | ist  |            | { er (sie) | sei   |           |
| { es (man) | ist  |            | { es (man) | sei   |           |
| wir        | sind |            | wir        | seien |           |
| { ihr      | seid |            | { ihr      | seiet |           |
| { Sie      | sind |            | { Sie      | seien |           |
| sie        | sind |            | sie        | seien |           |

## Pluperfect.

I had (might have) { travelled.  
been travelling, &c.

|          |       |            |          |        |            |
|----------|-------|------------|----------|--------|------------|
| ich      | war   | } gereist. | ich      | wäre   | } gereist. |
| du       | warst |            | du       | wärest |            |
| er (sie) | war   |            | er (sie) | wäre   |            |
| wir      | waren |            | wir      | wären  |            |
| { ihr    | wäret |            | { ihr    | wäret  |            |
| { Sie    | waren |            | { Sie    | wären  |            |
| sie      | waren |            | sie      | wären  |            |

## Future Pres.

I shall travel, &c.  
ich werde reisen, &c.

## Conditional Pres.

I should travel, &c.  
ich würde reisen, &c.

## Future Perf.

I shall have travelled, &c.  
ich werde  
du wirst  
er wird  
wir werden  
ihr werdet  
sie werden  
} gereist sein.

## Conditional Perf.

I should have travelled, &c.  
ich würde  
du würdest  
er würde  
wir würden  
ihr würdet  
sie würden  
} gereist sein.

1. Conjugate with **sein**, in all *Compound Tenses*, most Verbs denoting—

(a) *existence, transition from one state into another* : as,

| <i>Infinitive Pres.</i> |              | <i>Perfect.</i>          | <i>Infinitive Perf.</i>   |
|-------------------------|--------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| sein,                   | to be ;      | ich <b>bin</b> gewesen ; | gewesen <b>sein</b> .     |
| bleiben,                | to remain ;  | „ geblieben ;            | geblieben <b>sein</b> .   |
| werden,                 | to become ;  | „ geworden ;             | geworden <b>sein</b> .    |
| gelingen,               | to succeed ; | „ gelungen ;             | gelingen <b>sein</b> .    |
| geschehen,              | to happen ;  | „ geschehen ;            | geschehen <b>sein</b> .   |
| erwachen,               | to awake ;   | „ erwacht ;              | erwacht <b>sein</b> .     |
| wachsen,                | to grow ;    | „ gewachsen ;            | gewachsen <b>sein</b> .   |
| sterben,                | to die ;     | „ gestorben ;            | gestorben <b>sein</b> .   |
| erlöschen,              | to die out ; | „ erloschen ;            | erloschen <b>sein</b> .   |
| gelingen,               | to thrive ;  | „ geblieben ;            | geblieben <b>sein</b> .   |
| schmelzen,              | to melt ;    | „ geschmolzen ;          | geschmolzen <b>sein</b> . |

(b) *locomotion, point of departure, &c.* : as,

| <i>Infinitive Pres.</i> |             | <i>Perfect.</i>           | <i>Infinitive Perf.</i>     |
|-------------------------|-------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------|
| gehen,                  | to go ;     | ich <b>bin</b> gegangen ; | gegangen <b>sein</b> .      |
| kommen,                 | to come ;   | „ gekommen ;              | gekommen <b>sein</b> .      |
| sinken,                 | to sink ;   | „ gesunken ;              | gesunken <b>sein</b> .      |
| zurückkehren,           | to return ; | „ zurückgekehrt ;         | zurückgekehrt <b>sein</b> . |
| fallen,                 | to fall ;   | „ gefallen ;              | gefallen <b>sein</b> .      |
| laufen,                 | to run ;    | „ gelaufen ;              | gelaufen <b>sein</b> .      |
| weichen,                | to yield ;  | „ gewichen ;              | gewichen <b>sein</b> .      |

Comp. the French :—Je **suis** allé, venu, devenu, mort, parti, &c.

2. Not a few of these intransitive Verbs, as—

|           |             |                |
|-----------|-------------|----------------|
| reiten,   | to ride ;   | P.P. geritten, |
| reisen,   | to travel ; | „ gereist,     |
| fahren,   | to drive ;  | „ gefahren,    |
| springen, | to spring ; | „ gesprungen.  |

may be conjugated either—

with **haben**, to denote the motion irrespective of the starting point or destination,

or with **sein**, in answer to the questions *whence? whither? where...to? how far?* &c.; as,

Er **hat** viel gereist. He has travelled a great deal.

Er **ist** nach Hause gereist. He has left for home.

Das Kind **hat** den ganzen Tag gesprungen. The child has been romping the whole day.

Er **ist** aus dem Bett gesprungen. He has jumped out of bed.

*Obs.*—It will be noticed that most of these verbs belong to the Strong Conjugation.

## § 42. CONJUGATION OF VERBS WITH FULL INFLECTIONS.

(a) In the 2nd person singular of the *Pres.* and *Pret. Indic.*, the full inflection =**est** (instead of =**t**,) is required with all Verbs the stem of which ends—

(1) in **d, t**, (i.e. dentals), or in **m, n**, preceded by a consonant; as,  
**red=**en, to speak; **wart=**en, to wait; **athm=**en, to breathe; **ordn=**en, to arrange.  
**red=est**; **wart=est**; **athm=est**; **ordn=est**.

(2) in **f, ff, ß, fch, z, s** (i.e. sibilants); as,  
**raf=**en, to rage; **haff=**en, to hate; **heiß=**en, to bid; **raufch=**en, to rustle;  
**raf=est**; **haff=est**; **heiß=est**; **raufch=est**;  
 thus—**heiß=**en, to heat; **troß=**en, to defy, &c.

(b) In the 3rd pers. sing. and 2nd pers. plur. of the *Pres.* and *Pret. Indic.*, the full inflection =**et** (instead of =**t**), is—

(1) required with verbs the stem of which ends in **d, t, m, n**, preceded by a consonant;

(2) optional with verbs the stem of which ends in **f, ff, ß, fch, z, s**—

er (ihr) **red=et**, **wart=et**, **athm=et**, **ordn=et**.

er (ihr) **raf=(e)t**, **haffet** (**faßt**), **fchließ=(e)t**, **reiß=(e)t**, &c.

(1) **INFIN.** **red=**en, to speak; **PRET.** **red=ete**, spoke; **P.P.** **ge=red=et**, spoken.

### Present.

### Preterite.

| INDICATIVE.       | SUBJUNCTIVE.       | INDICATIVE.         | SUBJUNCTIVE. |
|-------------------|--------------------|---------------------|--------------|
| I speak,          | I may speak        | I spoke,            |              |
| I am speaking.    | (may be speaking). | I was speaking, &c. |              |
| ich <b>red=e</b>  | ich <b>red=e</b>   | ich <b>red=ete</b>  |              |
| du <b>red=est</b> | du <b>red=est</b>  | du <b>red=etest</b> |              |
| er <b>red=et</b>  | er <b>red=e</b>    | er <b>red=ete</b>   |              |
| wir <b>red=en</b> | wir <b>red=en</b>  | wir <b>red=eten</b> |              |
| ich <b>red=et</b> | ich <b>red=et</b>  | ich <b>red=etet</b> |              |
| Sie <b>red=en</b> | Sie <b>red=en</b>  | Sie <b>red=eten</b> |              |
| sie <b>red=en</b> | sie <b>red=en</b>  | sie <b>red=eten</b> |              |

(2) **INFIN.** **haff=**en, to hate; **PRET.** **haff=t-e**; **P.P.** **ge=haff=t**.

| INDICATIVE.          | SUBJUNCTIVE.         | INDICATIVE.         | SUBJUNCTIVE. |
|----------------------|----------------------|---------------------|--------------|
| I hate, &c.          | I may hate.          | I hated, &c.        |              |
| ich <b>haff=e</b>    | ich <b>haff=e</b>    | ich <b>haff=te</b>  |              |
| du <b>haff=est</b>   | du <b>haff=est</b>   | du <b>haff=teft</b> |              |
| er <b>haff=(e)t</b>  | er <b>haff=e</b>     | er <b>haff=te</b>   |              |
| wir <b>haff=en</b>   | wir <b>haff=en</b>   | wir <b>haff=ten</b> |              |
| ihr <b>haff=(e)t</b> | ihr <b>haff=(e)t</b> | ihr <b>haff=tet</b> |              |
| sie <b>haff=en</b>   | sie <b>haff=en</b>   | sie <b>haff=ten</b> |              |

## STRONG (ANCIENT) CONJUGATION.

§ 43. The characteristic feature of the Strong Conjugation consists in the change of the root-vowel in the formation of the *Preterite* and *Participle Perfect* (see § 33).

N.B.—In some Verbs the *final Stem-Consonant* also undergoes a change.

TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION (HEYSE'S SYSTEM).

|                    | <i>Infinitive.</i>  | <i>Preterite.</i>   | <i>Partic. Perf.</i>  |  |
|--------------------|---|---|---|--|
| I.                 | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} (a) \text{ } \bar{t} \\ (b) \text{ } \bar{t} \\ (c) \text{ } \bar{e} \end{array} \right.$     | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} a \\ a \\ a \end{array} \right.$                    | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} u \\ u \\ u \end{array} \right.$  | Three vowel degrees:—i.e. the root-vowel is changed in each of the principal parts.<br>Cp. Engl.—to sing, sang, sung.  |
| II.<br>III.<br>IV. | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} e \\ a \text{ } (\bar{a}) \\ a \text{ } (au, o, u) \end{array} \right.$                       | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} a \\ u \\ \bar{e} \text{ } (i) \end{array} \right.$ | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} e \\ \bar{a} \text{ } (\bar{a}) \\ a \text{ } (au, o, u) \end{array} \right.$ | Two vowel degrees:—i.e. the root-vowel is changed in the <i>Preterite</i> only; the <i>Part. Perfect</i> retaining the vowel of the Infinitive.<br>Cp. Engl.—to give, gave, given. |
| V.                 | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} (a) \text{ } \bar{c}i \\ (b) \text{ } \bar{c}i \end{array} \right.$                           | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \bar{t} \\ \bar{e} \end{array} \right.$             | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \bar{t} \\ \bar{e} \end{array} \right.$                                       | Two vowel degrees:—i.e. the change in the root-vowel is the same for the <i>Preterite</i> and <i>Participle Perf.</i><br>Cp. Engl.—to fight, fought, fought.                       |
| VI.                | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} (a) \text{ } \bar{t}e \text{ } (e) \\ (b) \text{ } \bar{t}e \text{ } (e) \end{array} \right.$ | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \bar{u} \\ \bar{u} \end{array} \right.$             | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \bar{u} \\ \bar{u} \end{array} \right.$                                       |  |

## § 44. MODELS OF STRONG CONJUGATION.

| 1st Class (§ 45).  |                      | 2nd, 3rd, & 4th Class (§§ 46-48).  |                      | 5th & 6th Class (§§ 49-50).  |                       |
|--|----------------------|--|----------------------|--|-----------------------|
| <b>Finden, fand, gefunden.</b><br>to find, found, found.     |                      | <b>Fallen, (fällt), fiel, gefallen.</b><br>to fall, (fallest), fell, fallen. |                      | <b>Kämpfen, (kämpft), kocht, gekocht.</b><br>to fight, (fightest), fought, fought. |                       |
| <i>Indicative.</i>   |                      | <i>Indicative.</i>   |                      | <i>Indicative.</i>   |                       |
| <i>Subjunctive.</i>  |                      | <i>Subjunctive.</i>  |                      | <i>Subjunctive.</i>  |                       |
| <b>Present.</b>  |                      | <b>Present.</b>  |                      | <b>Present.</b>  |                       |
| I find,  | I may find.          | I fall,  | I may fall.          | I fight,   | I may fight.          |
| Ich find-e,  | ich find-e.          | Ich fall-e,  | ich fall-e.          | Ich kocht-e,   | ich kocht-e.          |
| du find-est,   | du find-est.         | du fällt-st,   | du fällt-est.        | du kocht-est,  | du kocht-est.         |
| er find-et,  | er find-et.          | er fällt-st,   | er fällt-e.          | er kocht-et,   | er kocht-e.           |
| wir find-en,   | wir find-en.         | wir fällt-en,  | wir fällt-en.        | wir kocht-en,  | wir kocht-en.         |
| ihr find-et,   | ihr find-et.         | ihr fällt-et,  | ihr fällt-et.        | ihr kocht-et,  | ihr kocht-et.         |
| sie find-en,   | sie find-en.         | sie fällt-en,  | sie fällt-en.        | sie kocht-en,  | sie kocht-en.         |
| <b>Preterite.</b>  |                      | <b>Preterite.</b>  |                      | <b>Preterite.</b>  |                       |
| I found.   | I might find.        | I fell,  | I might fall.        | I fought,  | I might fight.        |
| Ich fand,  | ich fand-e.          | Ich fiel,  | ich fiel-e.          | Ich kocht,   | ich kocht-e.          |
| du fand(c)-st,   | du fand(c)-est.      | du fiel(c)-st,   | du fiel(c)-est.      | du kocht-est,  | du kocht-est.         |
| er fand,   | er fand-e.           | er fiel,   | er fiel-e.           | er kocht-et,   | er kocht-e.           |
| wir fand-en,   | wir fand-en.         | wir fiel-en,   | wir fiel-en.         | wir kocht-en,  | wir kocht-en.         |
| ihr fand-et,   | ihr fand-et.         | ihr fiel-et,   | ihr fiel-et.         | ihr kocht-et,  | ihr kocht-et.         |
| sie fand-en,   | sie fand-en.         | sie fiel-en,   | sie fiel-en.         | sie kocht-en,  | sie kocht-en.         |
| <b>Imperative.</b>   |                      | <b>Imperative.</b>   |                      | <b>Imperative.</b>   |                       |
| <i>Sing.</i>   | <i>Plural.</i>       | <i>Sing.</i>   | <i>Plural.</i>       | <i>Sing.</i>   | <i>Plural.</i>        |
| 1. —,  | finden wir.          | 1. —,  | fallen wir.          | 1. —,  | kämpfen wir.          |
| 2. find(e),  | findet (finden Sie). | 2. falle,  | fallet (fallen Sie). | 2. kocht,  | kochtet (kochen Sie). |
| <b>Compound Tenses.</b>                                      |                      | <b>Compound Tenses.</b>  |                      | <b>Compound Tenses.</b>  |                       |
| Ich habe (hatte) gefunden, &c.   Ich bin (war) gefallen, &c. |                      | Ich habe (hatte) gefunden, &c.   Ich bin (war) gefallen, &c.                 |                      | Ich habe (hatte) gefunden, &c.   |                       |



## STRONG VERBS CLASSIFIED.

N.B.—The Verbs marked † are *cognate* English stems, many of which no longer represent the present meaning of the German Verb. These cognates are not given separately when the Verb in the first column is itself the cognate stem.

## § 45. FIRST CLASS.

| (a) <i>Infinitive</i> : -i. |                  | <i>Pres. Indicat.</i> <i>Imperat.</i><br>2nd & 3rd p. Sing.—2nd p. Sing. |   | <i>Preterite</i> : -a.<br><i>Indicative.</i> <i>Subjunct.</i> |            | <i>Part. Perf.</i> : -u. |  |
|-----------------------------|------------------|--|---|---|------------|--------------------------|--|
|                             |                  | No Vowel change.   |   |   |            |                          |  |
| binden,                     | to bind          | —  | — | band,   | bände      | gebunden                 |  |
| bringen († through),        | press, penetrate | —  | — | brang,  | bränge     | gebrungen                |  |
| finden,                     | find             | —  | — | fanb,   | fände, ic. | gefunden                 |  |
| gelingen,                   | succeed          | —  | — | gelang  |            | gelingen (§ 56)          |  |
| ffingen,                    | sound            | —  | — | ffang   |            | geffungen                |  |
| ringen,                     | wring            | —  | — | rang  |            | gerungen                 |  |
| ffchlengen († sling),       | wind, swallow    | —  | — | ffchlang  |            | geffchlungen             |  |
| ffchwinden,                 | vanish           | —  | — | ffchwand  |            | geffchwunden             |  |
| ffchwingen,                 | swing            | —  | — | ffchwang  |            | geffchwungen             |  |
| ffngen,                     | sing             | —  | — | fang  |            | gefunten                 |  |
| ffngen,                     | sink             | —  | — | fant  |            | gefunten                 |  |
| ffpringen,                  | spring           | —  | — | ffprang   |            | geffpringen              |  |
| fffinfen,                   | stink            | —  | — | fffant  |            | gefffunten               |  |
| ffrinfen,                   | drink            | —  | — | ffrant  |            | geffrunten               |  |
| ffwinden,                   | wind             | —  | — | wand  |            | gewunden                 |  |
| ffwingen,                   | force            | —  | — | ffwang  |            | geffwungen               |  |

(b) *Infinitive: -ē.*

|            |           |
|------------|-----------|
| beginnen,  | to begin  |
| gewinnen,  | win       |
| rennen,    | run, flow |
| schwimmen, | swim      |
| sinnen,    | meditate  |
| spinnen,   | spin      |

| <i>Pres. Indic.</i><br><i>2nd &amp; 3rd p. Sing.</i> | <i>Imperat.</i><br><i>2nd p. Sing.</i> | <i>Preterite: -a-.</i><br><i>Indicative, Subjunct.</i> | <i>Part. Perf.: -o-.</i> |
|--|--|--|--------------------------|
| —  | —                                      | begann, ä or ö   | begonnen (§ 56)          |
| —  | —                                      | gavann, "  | gewonnen (§ 56)          |
| —  | —                                      | rann, "  | geronnen                 |
| —  | —                                      | schwamm, "   | geschwommen              |
| —  | —                                      | sann, "  | gesonnen                 |
| —  | —                                      | spann, "   | gesponnen                |

(c) *Infinitive: -e-.*

|                           |               |
|---------------------------|---------------|
| bergen,                   | to hide       |
| bersten,                  | burst         |
| brechen,                  | break         |
| gelten,                   | be worth      |
| helfen,                   | help          |
| schelten, <sup>1</sup>    | scold         |
| erschrecken, <sup>1</sup> | be frightened |
| sprechen,                 | speak         |
| stechen,                  | sting         |
| sterben (+ starve),       | die           |
| treffen,                  | hit, meet     |
| verderben, <sup>2</sup>   | spoil         |
| werben,                   | sue, enlist   |
| werfen,                   | throw         |

| <i>Pres. Indic.</i><br><i>2nd &amp; 3rd p. Sing.</i> | <i>Imperat.</i><br><i>2nd p. Sing.</i> | <i>Preterite: -a-.</i><br><i>Indicative, Subjunct.</i> | <i>Part. Perf.: -o-.</i> |
|--|--|--|--------------------------|
| du birgst (birgst),                                  | birg                                   | berg, berge or berge                                   | geborgen                 |
| brichst,   | brich                                  | ä (or ö)   | geborsten                |
| brichst,   | brich                                  | ä  | gebrochen                |
| gilt,  | gilt                                   | ä (or ö)   | gegolten                 |
| hilff,   | hilf                                   | (ä) or ü   | geholfen                 |
| schelt,  | schelt                                 | ä (or ö)   | gescholten               |
| erschrick,   | erschrick                              | ä  | geschrocken              |
| sprech,  | sprech                                 | ä  | gesprochen               |
| stich,   | stich                                  | ä  | gestochen                |
| stich,   | stich                                  | (ä) or ü   | gestorben                |
| triff,   | triff                                  | ä  | getroffen                |
| verderb,   | verderb                                | (ä) or ü   | verderben (§ 56)         |
| werb,  | werb                                   | "  | geworben                 |
| werf,  | werf                                   | "  | geworfen                 |

<sup>1</sup> erschrecken, *trans.* to frighten, weak.<sup>2</sup> Strong as an Intransitive Verb only, but generally Weak if transitive.

| <i>Infinitive.</i> |              | <i>Preterite.</i> | <i>Participle Perf.</i> |
|--------------------|--------------|-------------------|-------------------------|
| befehlen,          | to command   | befahl,           | befohlen (§ 56)         |
| empfehlen,         | to recommend | empfehl,          | empfohlen               |
| stehlen,           | steal        | stahl,            | gestohlen               |
| nehmen,            | take         | nahm,             | genommen                |
| gebären (+ bear),  | bring forth  | gebär,            | geboren                 |
| kommen,            | come         | kam,              | gekommen                |

## § 46. SECOND CLASS.

| <i>Infinitive: -e.</i>        |         | <i>Preterite: -a.</i> | <i>Part. Perf.: -e.</i> |
|-------------------------------|---------|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| essen,                        | to eat  | aß,                   | gegessen                |
| essen,                        | to eat  | fräß,                 | gefressen               |
| genesen,                      | deavour | genas,                | genesen                 |
| maßen (+ mete),               | measure | maß,                  | gemessen                |
| treten (+ tread)              | step    | trat,                 | getreten                |
| vergessen,                    | forget  | vergaß,               | vergesen                |
| geben,                        | give    | gab,                  | gegeben                 |
| geschäben ( <i>singers</i> ), | happen  | geschah,              | geschäben               |
| lesen                         | read    | las,                  | gesehen                 |
| sehen                         | see     | sah,                  | gesehen                 |
| bitten,                       | beg     | bat,                  | gebeten                 |
| liegen,                       | lie     | lag,                  | gelegen                 |
| sitzen,                       | sit     | saß,                  | gesessen                |

## § 47. THIRD CLASS.

| <i>Infinitive: -a.</i>                  | <i>Pres. Indic.</i>           |                     | <i>Imperat.</i> |   | <i>Preterite: -e.</i>        |           | <i>Part. Perf.: -a.</i> |
|---|-------------------------------|---------------------|-----------------|---|------------------------------|-----------|-------------------------|
|   | <i>2nd &amp; 3rd p. Sing.</i> | <i>2nd p. Sing.</i> |                 |   | <i>Indicative. Subjunct.</i> |           |                         |
| bäcken, to bake                         | bu bäckst,                    | er bäckt            | —               | — | bäck, <sup>1</sup>           | bäcke     | gebacken                |
| fahren († fare), drive                  | fährst,                       | fährt               | —               | — | fähr,                        | führe     | gefahren                |
| graben († grub), dig                    | gräbst,                       | gräbt               | —               | — | grab,                        | grübe, u. | gegraben                |
| laden, <sup>2</sup> load                | (läbst,                       | (läbt)              | —               | — | läd                          | —         | geladen                 |
| schaffen <sup>3</sup> († shape), create | schäfst,                      | schäkt              | —               | — | schuf                        | —         | geschaffen              |
| schlagen († slay), beat                 | trägst,                       | trägt               | —               | — | schlug                       | —         | geschlagen              |
| tragen († drag), carry                  | wächst,                       | wächst              | —               | — | trug                         | —         | getragen                |
| waschen († wax), grow                   | (wäschst,                     | (wäscht)            | —               | — | wusch                        | —         | gewaschen               |
| waschen, wash                           | —                             | —                   | —               | — | wusch                        | —         | gewaschen               |

<sup>1</sup> Imperfect bäcte, if used transitively.<sup>2</sup> Weak in any other meaning but 'to create.'<sup>3</sup> Weak in any other meaning but 'to create.'

## § 48. FOURTH CLASS.

| <i>Infinitive: -a.</i>    | <i>Pres. Indic.</i>           |                     | <i>Imperat.</i> |   | <i>Preterite: -ie.</i>       |            | <i>Part. Perf.: -a.</i> |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------|-----------------|---|------------------------------|------------|-------------------------|
|                           | <i>2nd &amp; 3rd p. Sing.</i> | <i>2nd p. Sing.</i> |                 |   | <i>Indicative. Subjunct.</i> |            |                         |
| blasen, to blow           | bu bläst,                     | er bläst            | —               | — | blies,                       | bliese     | geblasen                |
| braten, roast             | bräst,                        | brät                | —               | — | briet,                       | briete     | gebraten                |
| fallen, fall              | fällst,                       | fällt               | —               | — | fiel,                        | fielle, u. | gefallen                |
| fangen, catch             | fängst,                       | fängt               | —               | — | fing                         | —          | gefangen                |
| halten, hold              | hältst,                       | hält                | —               | — | hielt,                       | —          | gehalten                |
| hängen, <sup>1</sup> hang | hängst,                       | hängt               | —               | — | hing                         | —          | gehangen                |
| lassen, let, leave        | lässt,                        | läßt                | —               | — | ließ                         | —          | gelassen                |
| rathen, advise            | rätst,                        | räth                | —               | — | rieth                        | —          | gerathen                |
| schlafen, sleep           | schläfst,                     | schläft             | —               | — | schließ                      | —          | geschlafen              |
| hauen († hew), cut        | —                             | —                   | —               | — | hieb                         | —          | gehauen                 |
| laufen († leap), run      | läufft,                       | läuft               | —               | — | lief                         | —          | gelaufen                |
| rufen, call               | —                             | —                   | —               | — | rief                         | —          | gerufen                 |
| stoßen, push              | stößt,                        | stößt               | —               | — | stieß                        | —          | gestoßen                |

<sup>1</sup> The derived Verb hängen, to hang (Transit.), is conjugated Weak.The *h* in the Imperf. is a remnant of the *w* in the Old German *houwen*.



| (b) Infinitive: <i>ei.</i> | to remain<br>thrive<br>lend<br>avoid<br>praise<br>rub<br>shed (+ shed),<br>shine<br>write<br>cry<br>be silent<br>spit<br>ascend<br>drive<br>show<br>accuse | Present Indicative and Imperative. |               | Preterite: <i>ie.</i> |           | Part. Perf.: <i>ie.</i> |
|----------------------------|--|------------------------------------|---------------|-----------------------|-----------|-------------------------|
|                            |  | No                                 | Vowel change. | Indicat.              | Subjunct. |                         |
| bleiben,                   |  | —                                  | —             | blief,                | bliebe    | geblieben               |
| geben,                     |  | —                                  | —             | ließ,                 | gebe      | gegeben                 |
| leihen,                    |  | —                                  | —             | lieh,                 | gebe      | geliehen                |
| meiden,                    |  | —                                  | —             | mied                  | gehe      | gemieden                |
| preisen,                   |  | —                                  | —             | pries                 | tiefe, u. | gepreisen               |
| reiben,                    |  | —                                  | —             | rieb                  |           | gerieben                |
| schreiben (+ shed),        |  | —                                  | —             | schrieb               |           | geschrieben             |
| schienen,                  |  | —                                  | —             | schien                |           | geschienen              |
| schreiben,                 |  | —                                  | —             | schrieb               |           | geschrieben             |
| schreien,                  |  | —                                  | —             | schrie                |           | geschrien               |
| schweigen,                 |  | —                                  | —             | schwie                |           | geschwiegen             |
| speten,                    |  | —                                  | —             | spie                  |           | gespien                 |
| steigen,                   |  | —                                  | —             | stieg                 |           | gestiegen               |
| treiben,                   |  | —                                  | —             | trieb                 |           | getrieben               |
| weisen (+ wise)            |  | —                                  | —             | wies                  |           | gewiesen                |
| zeigen,                    |  | —                                  | —             | zieh                  |           | geziehen                |
| heißen (+ hight)           | call, bid  | —                                  | —             | ieß                   |           | gebeten                 |



| (a) <i>Infinitive: -te.</i>   | <i>Present Indicative.</i><br>2nd & 3rd pers. Sing.<br>(obsolete: only used in poetry)    | <i>Preterite: -te.</i>   |   | <i>Part. Perf.: -t.</i>  |
|---|---|--|---|--|
|   |   | <i>Indicat.</i>  | <i>Subjunct.</i>  |  |
| fließen,<br>genießen,<br>gütigen († gush),<br>fließen († reek),<br>schließen,<br>schließen,<br>fließen († seethe), <sup>1</sup><br>fließen († sprout),<br>verdrießen, | to flow<br>enjoy<br>pour<br>creep<br>smell<br>shoot<br>shut<br>boil<br>germinate<br>annoy | fließ,<br>genieß,<br>güß,<br>tröb,<br>schöpf,<br>schloß,<br>kott,<br>spröß,<br>verdröß | flöße,<br>genöße,<br>göße, &c.<br>tröbe,<br>schöpfe,<br>schloße,<br>kotte,<br>spröße,<br>verdröße | gefließen<br>genossen<br>gegossen<br>getroffen<br>geschossen<br>geschloffen<br>gekott<br>getroffen<br>verdrorfen |
| saufen († sip),<br>trinken,<br>fließen,<br>fließen,<br>messen, <sup>2</sup><br>schmelzen († smelt), <sup>2</sup><br>schmelzen, <sup>2</sup>                           | drink<br>fight<br>plait, twine<br>milk<br>spring, rise<br>melt, smelt<br>swell            | er trank,<br>trank,<br>trank,<br>—<br>quoll,<br>schmolz,<br>schmolz,                   | er trinke,<br>trinke,<br>trinke,<br>—<br>quölle,<br>schmolze,<br>schmolze,                        | getrunken<br>gekämpft<br>geflochten<br>gemessen<br>geschmolzen<br>geschmolzen                                    |
| schallen, <sup>3</sup>  | sound   | schall   | schälle   | geschallen   |
| glimmen, <sup>3</sup><br>flammen, <sup>3</sup>  | gleam<br>climb  | glomm<br>flomm   | glömm<br>flömm  | geglommen<br>geflommen   |

<sup>1</sup> Weak as an Intransit. Verb. <sup>2</sup> Weak as Transitive Verbs. <sup>3</sup> Also conjugated Weak.



## § 51. ANOMALOUS VERBS.

(a) Vowel-change of the STRONG CONJUGATION COMBINED with tense-character of the Weak Conjugation. Compare § 35 (a) and (b).

| <i>Infinitive.</i>   |                           | <i>Preterite.</i>        |                  | <i>Participle Perf.</i> |  |
|----------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------|------------------|-------------------------|--|
|                      |                           | <i>Indicat.</i>          | <i>Subjunct.</i> |                         |  |
| bringen,             | to bring                  | brach-te,                | bräch-te         | gebracht                |  |
| denken,              | think                     | bach-te,                 | bäch-te          | gedacht                 |  |
| brennen,             | burn                      | braun-te,                | brenn-te         | gebrannt                |  |
| kennen,              | know ( <i>connaitre</i> ) | kann-te,                 | kenn-te          | gesehen                 |  |
| nennen,              | name                      | nann-te,                 | nenn-te          | gesehen                 |  |
| rennen,              | run                       | raun-te,                 | renn-te          | gesehen                 |  |
| senden,              | send                      | sand-te (or, send-ete),  | send-ete         | gesehen                 |  |
| wenden,              | turn                      | wand-te (or, (wend-ete), | wend-ete         | gesehen                 |  |
| wissen, <sup>1</sup> | know ( <i>savoir</i> )    | wuß-te,                  | wuß-te           | gesehen                 |  |

1. *Indicative Present.*  
 ich weiß, I know.  
 du weißt, thou knowest.  
 er weiß, he knows.

## (b) IRREGULAR.

| gehen,             | to go | ging, | gegangen  |
|--------------------|-------|-------|-----------|
| stehen,            | stand | stah, | gestanden |
| thun, <sup>2</sup> | do    | that, | gethan    |

2. *Indicative Present.*  
 ich thue, I do.  
 du thust, thou doest.  
 er thut, he does.

## § 52. AUXILIARY VERBS OF MOOD.

|                                    |                                     |                                 |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <b>Dürfen,</b><br>to be permitted. | <b>Können,</b><br>to be able (can). | <b>Mögen,</b><br>to like (may). |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|

*Present Indicative.*

|                   |                       |            |
|-------------------|-----------------------|------------|
| I am allowed, &c. | I can, I am able, &c. | I may, &c. |
| ich darf          | ich kann              | ich mag    |
| du darfst         | du kannst             | du magst   |
| er darf           | er kann               | er mag     |
| wir dürfen        | wir können            | wir mögen  |
| ihr dürft         | ihr könnt             | ihr mögt   |
| sie dürfen        | sie können            | sie mögen  |

*Present Subjunctive (regular throughout).*

|                   |                    |                 |
|-------------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| I be allowed, &c. | I may be able, &c. | I may like, &c. |
| ich dürfte, &c.   | ich könnte, &c.    | ich möge, &c.   |
| wir dürften, &c.  | wir könnten, &c.   | wir mögen, &c.  |

*Preterite Indicative.*

|                    |                        |                       |
|--------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|
| I was allowed, &c. | I could, was able, &c. | I might, I liked, &c. |
| ich durfte, &c.    | ich konnte, &c.        | ich mochte, &c.       |
| wir durften, &c.   | wir konnten, &c.       | wir mochten, &c.      |

*Preterite Subjunctive.*

|                  |                  |                  |
|------------------|------------------|------------------|
| ich dürfte, &c.  | ich könnte, &c.  | ich möchte, &c.  |
| wir dürften, &c. | wir könnten, &c. | wir möchten, &c. |

*Participle Perfect.*

gebürft, been allowed. | gekonnt, been able. | gemocht, been allowed.

*Obs.*—With a Verb in the Infinitive for its complement, the *Participle Perf.* of Auxiliary Verbs of Mood is changed into the *Infinitive*, and stands last:—

|                           |   |
|---------------------------|---|
| ich habe gebürft.         | I have been allowed.                          |
| ich habe gehen dürfen.    | I have been allowed to go.                    |
| Wir hätten gekonnt.       | We should have been able ; or, We might have. |
| Wir hätten fallen können. | We might have fallen.                         |

The same rule applies to lassen, to let ; heißen, to bid ; helfen, to help ; hören, to hear ; lehren, to teach ; machen, to make ; lernen, to learn ; sehen, to see.

## AUXILIARY VERBS OF MOOD.

**Müssen,**  
to be compelled  
(must).

**Sollen,**  
to be obliged  
(shall).

**Wollen,**  
to be willing  
(will).

*Present Indicative.*

I must, &c.  
ich muß  
du mußt  
er muß  
wir müssen  
ihr müßt  
sie müssen

I am to (shall), &c.  
ich soll  
du sollst  
er soll  
wir sollen  
ihr sollt  
sie sollen

I will, &c.  
ich will  
du willst  
er will  
wir wollen  
ihr wollt  
sie wollen

*Present Subjunctive* (regular throughout).

I may be compelled.  
ich müß-e, &c.

I may, &c.  
ich soll-e, &c.

I may be willing, &c.  
ich woll-e, &c.

*Preterite Indicative.*

I was compelled, &c.  
ich muß-te, &c.

I was to, &c.  
ich soll-te, &c.

I would, &c.  
ich woll-te, &c.

*Preterite Subjunctive.*

ich müß-te, &c.

ich soll-te, &c.

ich woll-te, &c.

*Participle Perfect.*

genußt, been.

gessollt, been obliged.

gewollt, been willing.

The *Pluperfect Subjunctive* (equivalent to the *Conditional Perf.*) of *Auxiliary Verbs of Mood*, being formed quite differently from English, demands especial notice :—

|                            |  |
|----------------------------|--|
| ich hätte gehen dürfen.    | { I should have been permitted to go ;   |
|                            | { or, I might have gone.                 |
| du hättest kommen können.  | { Thou wouldst have been able to come ;  |
|                            | { or, Thou mightst have come.            |
| er hätte essen mögen.      | { He would have liked to eat ;           |
|                            | { or, He would fain have eaten.          |
| wir hätten zahlen müssen.  | { We should have been obliged to pay ;   |
|                            | { or, We must have paid.                 |
| ihr hättet es thun sollen. | { You should have done it ;              |
|                            | { or, You ought to have done it.         |
| sie hätten es thun wollen. | { They would have been willing to do it. |

## § 53. CONJUGATION OF THE PASSIVE VOICE.

(Formed with the Auxiliary Verb *werden* (§ 38), *to become*, and the *Past Part.* or *Past Infinitive*.)

*Infinitive* :—**geliebt werden**, to be loved.

*Supine* :— **geliebt zu werden**.

## INDICATIVE.

## Present.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

I am loved, &c.  
 ich werde  
 du wirst  
 er wird  
 wir werden  
 ihr werdet  
 sie werden  
 } **geliebt.**

I be loved, &c.  
 ich werde  
 du werdest  
 er werde  
 wir werden  
 ihr werdet  
 sie werden  
 } **geliebt.**

## Preterite.

I was loved, &c.  
 ich wurde  
 du wurdest  
 er wurde  
 wir wurden  
 ihr wurdet  
 sie wurden  
 } **geliebt.**

I were loved, &c.  
 ich würde  
 du würdest  
 er würde  
 wir würden  
 ihr würdet  
 sie würden  
 } **geliebt.**

## Present Perfect.

I have been loved, &c.  
 ich bin  
 du bist  
 er ist  
 wir sind  
 ihr seid  
 sie sind  
 } **geliebt worden.**

I may have been loved, &c.  
 ich sei  
 du seiest  
 er sei  
 wir seien  
 ihr seiet  
 sie seien  
 } **geliebt worden.**

## Pluperfect.

I had been loved, &c.  
 ich war  
 du warst  
 er war  
 wir waren  
 ihr wäret  
 sie waren  
 } **geliebt worden.**

I might have been loved, &c.  
 ich wäre  
 du wärest  
 er wäre  
 wir wären  
 ihr wäret  
 sie wären  
 } **geliebt worden.**

## FUTURE.

## Present.

## CONDITIONAL.

I shall be loved, &amp;c.

I should be loved, &amp;c.

| <i>Indicat.</i> | <i>Subj.</i> |                          |
|-----------------|--------------|--------------------------|
| ich werde       | (werde)      | } <b>geliebt werden.</b> |
| du wirst        | (werdest)    |                          |
| er wird         | (werde)      |                          |
| wir werden      | (werden)     |                          |
| ihr werdet      | (werdet)     |                          |
| sie werden      | (werden)     |                          |

|            |                          |
|------------|--------------------------|
| ich würde  | } <b>geliebt werden.</b> |
| du würdest |                          |
| er würde   |                          |
| wir würden |                          |
| ihr würdet |                          |
| sie würden |                          |

## FUTURE.

## Perfect.

## CONDITIONAL.

I shall have been loved, &amp;c.

I should have been loved, &amp;c.

|            |           |                               |
|------------|-----------|-------------------------------|
| ich werde  | (werde)   | } <b>geliebt worden sein.</b> |
| du wirst   | (werdest) |                               |
| er wird    | (werde),  |                               |
| wir werden | ac.       |                               |
| ihr werdet |           |                               |
| sie werden |           |                               |

|                 |                               |
|-----------------|-------------------------------|
| ich würde       | } <b>geliebt worden sein.</b> |
| du würdest      |                               |
| er würde        |                               |
| wir würden      |                               |
| ihr würdet      |                               |
| sie würden, ac. |                               |

## IMPERATIVE.

*Singular.*

2. Werde geliebt, be loved.
3. Werde er geliebt, let him be loved.

*Plural.*

1. Werden wir geliebt, let us be loved.
2. Werdet geliebt, be ye loved.
3. Werden sie geliebt, let them be loved.

## SUPINE.

(um) geliebt zu werden, (in order) to be loved.  
 geliebt worden zu sein, to have been loved.

*Obs. The Impersonal Passive Voice* is a peculiar construction by means of which *Intransitive Verbs* may be used *Passively* (cp. Lat. *cursum est*):—

Es wird (wurde) getanzt und gesungen.  
 Es ist (war) mir erlaubt worden.  
 Mir wird nachgesehen.

There is (was) dancing and singing.  
 I have (had) been allowed.  
 I am pursued.

## § 54. IMPERSONAL VERBS.

(a) *Denoting natural phenomena (intransitive):—*

|             |              |                             |                         |
|-------------|--------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| es blizt,   | it lightens. | es friert (fror, gefroren), | it freezes.             |
| es donnert, | it thunders. | es dunfelt,                 | it is growing dark.     |
| es hagelt,  | it hails.    | es ist kalt (warm),         | it is cold (warm).      |
| es regnet,  | it rains.    | es ist hell,                | it is bright.           |
| es windet,  | it is windy. | es ist fünf Uhr,            | it is five o'clock.     |
| es schneit, | it snows.    | es wird dunkel,             | it is growing dark.     |
| es thaut,   | it thaws.    | es wird spät,               | it is growing late, &c. |
| es tagt,    | it dawns.    | es werde Licht!             | Let there be light!     |

(b) *Denoting sensations, affections, &c. (used transitively with the Acc. or Dat.):—*

|                       |                             |                                       |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| es dürstet mich,      | or mich dürstet,            | I am thirsty.                         |
| es friert dich,       | „ dich friert,              | thou feelest chilly.                  |
| es hungert ihn (sie), | „ ihn hungert,              | he is hungry.                         |
|                       |                             | [shuddering.                          |
| es schaudert uns,     | „ uns schaudert,            | we shudder, we are                    |
| es verlangt euch,     | „ euch verlangt,            | you are anxious.                      |
| es verbrießt Sie,     | <i>Preterite</i> :—verbroß; | you are annoyed,                      |
|                       | <i>P.P.</i> : verbroßen,    | vexed.                                |
| es freut sie.         | —                           | they rejoice.                         |
| es wundert mich,      | „ mich wundert,             | I wonder.                             |
| es jammert dich,      | „ dich jammert (seiner),    | thou pitiest (him).                   |
| es ahn(e)t mir,       | } I forebode.               | es schwinbelt sie, they feel giddy.   |
| or, mir ahnt, &c.     |                             | es ist mir lieb,                      |
| es dünkt mir,         |                             | or, mir ist lieb, &c.,                |
| es dünkt mir,         |                             | } I am glad, I like.                  |
| es gelingt ihr,       | she succeeds                | es ist dir recht, it suits thee.      |
| (§ 45).               |                             | es ist ihm übel, he feels sick.       |
| es graußt uns,        | we are afraid.              | es ist uns wohl, we feel well.        |
| es bangt euch,        | you are uneasy.             | es ist euch leid, you are sorry.      |
|                       |                             | es ist ihnen warm, they are warm, &c. |

## § 55. CONJUGATION OF REFLEXIVE VERBS.

*Infinitive Pres.* :—**sich bemühen**, to exert *one's self*.*Infinitive Perf.* :—**sich bemüht haben**, to have exerted *one's self*with *Accusative* :—**Present.**

|     |                |                                |
|-----|----------------|--------------------------------|
| ich | bemühe mich,   | I exert <i>myself</i> .        |
| du  | bemühest dich, | thou exertest <i>thyself</i> . |
| er  | bemühet sich,  | he exerts <i>himself</i> .     |
| sie | bemühet sich,  | she exerts <i>herself</i> .    |
| es  | bemühet sich,  | it exerts <i>itself</i> .      |
| man | bemühet sich,  | one exerts <i>one's self</i> . |

with *Dative* :—

|     |                             |
|-----|-----------------------------|
| I   | flatter <i>myself</i> , &c. |
| ich | schmeichle mir.             |
| du  | schmeichlest dir.           |
| er  | schmeichelt sich.           |
| sie | schmeichelt sich.           |
| man | schmeichelt sich.           |

|     |               |                                |
|-----|---------------|--------------------------------|
| wir | bemühen uns,  | we exert <i>ourselves</i> .    |
| ihr | bemühet euch, | you exert <i>yourselves</i> .  |
| Sie | bemühen sich, | they exert <i>themselves</i> . |
| sie | bemühen sich, | they exert <i>themselves</i> . |

|     |                   |
|-----|-------------------|
| wir | schmeicheln uns.  |
| ihr | schmeichelt euch. |
| Sie | schmeicheln sich. |
| sie | schmeicheln sich. |

**Preterite.**ich bemühte mich, &c. I exerted *myself*.I flattered *myself*, &c.  
ich schmeichelte mir, &c.*Singular.***IMPERATIVE.***Plural.*

|  |  |  |
|--|--|--|
| —  | —  | bemühen wir uns, let us exert <i>ourselves</i> . |
| bemühe (du) dich, exert <i>thyself</i> .       | bemühet euch,  | } exert <i>your-</i><br><i>selves</i> .          |
| bemühe er sich, let him exert <i>himself</i> . | bemühen Sie sich,                                    |  |
|  | bemühen sie sich, let them exert <i>themselves</i> . |  |

**Perfect. COMPOUND TENSES. Pluperfect.**I have exerted *myself*.  
ich habe mich bemüht, &c.I had exerted *myself*.  
ich hatte mich bemüht, &c.**Future.****—Present.—****Conditional.**I shall exert *myself*.  
ich werde mich bemühen, &c.I should exert *myself*.  
ich würde mich bemühen, &c.**Future.****—Past.—****Conditional.**I shall have exerted *myself*.  
ich werde mich bemüht haben, &c.I should have exerted *myself*.  
ich würde mich bemüht haben, &c.*Obs. 1.* The Reflexive **sich** may also be used in the *reciprocal* sense of **einander**, one another, each other :—*Die Göttinnen machten sich* (or *einander*) *den Vorrang in der Schönheit streitig.* The goddesses vied with *one another* for the palm of beauty.*Obs. 2.* The Reflexive Pronoun may be strengthened by **selbst** (as in French by *même*) :—*Ihr schadet euch selbst.* It is yourselves that you are injuring.

## COMPOUND VERBS.

§ 56. COMPOUND VERBS (*i.e.* Verbs with a PREFIX) are divided into—

(a) *Inseparable* Compound Verbs, *i.e.* Verbs the prefix of which *cannot be separated* from the stem, and which do not take *ge-* in the *Part. Perf.* :—

*Infin.* verlassen, to forsake ; *P.P.* verlassen, forsaken.

*Pres.* ich verlasse, I forsake ; *Pret.* ich verließ, I forsook.

*Imperative*—verlaß, forsake (thou).

(b) *Separable* Compound Verbs, *i.e.* Verbs the prefix of which *may be separated* from the stem, and which in the *Part. Perf.* insert the *ge-* between prefix and stem :—

*Infin.* ablassen, to leave off ; *P.P.* ab-ge-lassen, left off.

*Pres.* ich lasse...ab, I leave off ; *Pret.* ich ließ...ab, I leave off.

*Imperative*—laß...ab, leave (thou) off.

(a) *Inseparable* are—

(1) The *unaccented* prefixes, *be-*, *ge-*, *ent-*, (or *emp-*<sup>1</sup>), *er-*, *ver-*, *zer-* (none of which can be used standing alone) : as,

## With Weak Verbs.

| <i>Infinitive.</i> |              | <i>Part. Perf.</i>    | <i>Pres. Indic.</i> | <i>Preterite.</i>    |
|--------------------|--------------|-----------------------|---------------------|----------------------|
|                    |              | (without <i>ge-</i> ) |                     |                      |
| besuch'en,         | to visit ;   | besucht' ;            | ich besuch'e ;      | ich besuch'te, &c.   |
| gebrauch'en,       | to use ;     | gebraucht' ;          | ich gebrauch'e ;    | ich gebrauch'te, &c. |
| entfalt'en,        | to display ; | entfalt'et ;          | ich entfalt'e ;     | ich entfalte'te, &c. |
| erlang'en,         | to obtain ;  | erlangt' ;            | ich erlang'e ;      | ich erlang'te, &c.   |
| verlang'en,        | to demand ;  | verlangt' ;           | ich verlang'e ;     | ich verlang'te, &c.  |
| zerstreu'en,       | to scatter ; | zerstreut' ;          | ich zerstreu'e ;    | ich zerstreu'te, &c. |

Thus with *Strong Verbs* :—

|                                       |                |                   |                     |
|---------------------------------------|----------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| beschreib'en, to describe ;           | beschrieb'en ; | ich beschreib'e ; | ich beschrieb', &c. |
| gefall'en, to please ;                | gefall'en ;    | ich gefall'e ;    | ich gefiel', &c.    |
| empfang'en, <sup>1</sup> to receive ; | empfang'en ;   | ich empfang'e ;   | ich empfing', &c.   |
| vergeb'en, to forgive ;               | vergeb'en ;    | ich vergab'e ;    | ich vergab', &c.    |

<sup>1</sup> By assimilation with the following labial, the prefix *ent-* becomes *emp-* in the following *Strong Verbs* only :—*empfangen*, *empfehlen*, *empfinden*.



(2) the *Unaccented* Particles *hinter*, behind, *voll*, full, *wider*, against (which are also used standing alone) and *miß*, mis-, dis- (which is now no longer used standing alone):—

| <i>Infinitive.</i>                    | <i>Part. Perf.</i>     | <i>Pres. Indic.</i>      | <i>Preterite.</i>        |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
|                                       | (without <i>ge</i> -)  |                          |                          |
| <i>hintergeh'en</i> , to deceive ;    | <i>hintergang'en</i> ; | <i>ich hintergeh'e</i> ; | <i>ich hinterging'.</i>  |
| <i>widerleg'en</i> , to refute ;      | <i>widerlegt'</i> ;    | <i>ich widerleg'e</i> ;  | <i>ich widerleg'te.</i>  |
| <i>vollbring'en</i> , to accomplish ; | <i>vollbracht'</i> ;   | <i>ich vollbring'e</i> ; | <i>ich vollbrach'te.</i> |
| <i>mißfall'en</i> , to displease ;    | <i>mißfall'en</i> ;    | <i>ich mißfall'e</i> ;   | <i>ich mißfiel'.</i>     |

(b) *Separable* are—

*all other Prefixes*, i.e. *Adverbs* (and *Adjectives* used adverbially), *Prepositions*, *Nouns* and *Phrases* used as accented prefixes :—

| <i>Infinitive.</i>                            | <i>Part. Perf. &amp; Supine.</i><br>( <i>ge</i> - or <i>zu</i> - intercalated). | <i>Pres., Pret., &amp; Imperat.</i>                              |
|---|---|--|
| <i>her'-stellen</i> ,<br>to restore ;         | <i>her-ge-stellt</i> ;<br>(um) <i>her-zu-stellen</i> ;                          | <i>ich stelle (stellte)...her'.</i><br><i>Stelle...her'.</i>     |
| <i>ab'-legen</i> ,<br>to lay down ;           | <i>ab-ge-legt</i> ;<br>(um) <i>ab-zu-legen</i> ;                                | <i>ich lege (legte)...ab'.</i><br><i>Lege...ab.</i>              |
| <i>Glück'-wünschen</i> ,<br>to congratulate ; | <i>Glück ge-wünscht</i> ;<br>(um) <i>Glück zu wünschen</i> ;                    | <i>ich wünsche (wünschte) Glück.</i><br><i>Wünsche...Glück'.</i> |

Thus also with *Strong Verbs* :—

|                                       |   |  |
|---------------------------------------|---|--|
| <i>her'-gehen</i> ,<br>to go on ;     | <i>her'-ge-gangen</i> ;<br>(um) <i>her'-zu-gehen</i> ;    | <i>es geht (ging)...her'.</i>                              |
| <i>ab'-fallen</i> ,<br>to fall off ;  | <i>ab'-ge-fallen</i> ;<br>(um) <i>ab-zu-fallen</i> ;      | <i>ich falle (fiel)...ab'.</i><br><i>Falle...ab'.</i>      |
| <i>haus'-halten</i> ,<br>to husband ; | <i>haus'-ge-halten</i> ;<br>(um) <i>haus'-zu-halten</i> ; | <i>ich halte (hielt)...Haus'.</i><br><i>Halte...Haus'.</i> |

Thus also with whole phrases—

|   |                            |
|---|----------------------------|
| <i>Inf.</i> Er will sich aus dem Staube machen,*      | He will <i>abscond</i> .   |
| <i>Sup.</i> Er wünscht sich aus dem Staube zu machen, | He wants to <i>abscond</i> |
| <i>P.P.</i> Er hat sich aus dem Staube gemacht,       | He has <i>absconded</i> .  |
| <i>Pres.</i> Er macht sich aus dem Staube,            | He <i>absconds</i> .       |
| <i>Pret.</i> Er machte sich aus dem Staube,           | He <i>absconded</i> .      |
| <i>Imp.</i> Mache dich aus dem Staube !               | <i>Abscond !</i>           |

\* Lit. to make (take) one's self out of the dust.

# § 57. TABLE SHOWING THE DISTINCTIVE FEATURES OF SEPARABLE AND INSEPARABLE VERBS.

## Separable Verbs.

## Inseparable Verbs.

### Infinitive.

(Prefix accented.)

(Verbal Stem accented.)

**Strong:** auf'-stehen, to stand (get up).

verst'e-hen,

to understand.

**Weak:** auf'-setzen, to set up.

bese'tz'en,

to occupy (*lit.* to beset).

### Supine.

(*zu* inserted  
between Prefix and Verb.)

(*zu* standing  
before the Verb.)

(in order)

(in order)

(um) aufzu'stehen,

to get up.

(um) zu verst'e-hen,

to understand.

(um) aufzu'setzen,

to set up.

(um) zu bese'tz'en,

to occupy.

### Past Participle.

(*ge-* inserted  
between the Prefix and Verb.)

(*ge-* not used at all.)

aufge'stan-den,

stood (got) up.

ver'stan-den,

understood.

aufge'setzt,

set up.

bese'tzt,

occupied (beset).

### Present.

(Prefix thrown  
to the end of the sentence.)

(Prefix not detached.)

ich stehe...auf,

I get up...

ich verst'ehe Sie,

I understand you.

ich setze...auf,

I serve up...

ich bese'tze die Stadt, I occupy the town.

### Preterite.

ich stand...auf,

I got up...

ich ver'stand...,

I understood...

ich setzte...auf,

I put on...

ich be'setzte...,

I occupied...

### Imperative.

Stehe...auf,

(Stehen Sie) auf, } get up...

Verstehe mich

(Verstehen Sie) mich, } understand me.

### Compound Tenses.

(Like the Part. Perf. or Infinitive.)

ich bin (war)...aufge'stan-den.

ich habe (hatte)...ver'stan-den.

ich habe (hatte)...aufge'setzt.

ich habe (hatte)...bese'tzt.

ich werde (würde)...aufste-hen.

ich werde (würde)...verst'e-hen.

ich werde (würde)...aufsetz-en.

ich werde (würde)...bese'tz-en.

### § 58. CONJUGATION AND CONSTRUCTION OF SEPARABLE VERBS.

**Weak :** *aussühren*, to carry out. | **Strong :** *angeben*, to give up.

*Present Indicative.*

I carry out the plan, &c.

ich führe den Plan aus,

du führst „ aus,

er führt „ aus,

wir führen „ aus,

ihr führt „ aus,

sie führen „ aus,

I give up the business, &c.

ich gebe das Geschäft auf,

du gibst „ auf,

er gibt „ auf,

wir geben „ auf,

ihr gebet „ auf,

sie geben „ auf, &c.

*Present Subjunctive.*

ich führe den Plan aus,

du führst „ aus, &c.

ich gebe das Geschäft auf,

du gebest „ auf, &c.

*Preterite Indicative.*

I carried out the plan, &c.

ich führte den Plan aus,

du führtest „ aus, &c.

I gave up the business, &c.

ich gab das Geschäft auf,

du gäbest „ auf, &c.

*Preterite Subjunctive.*

ich führete den Plan aus,

du führetest „ aus, &c.

ich gäbe das Geschäft auf,

du gäbest „ auf, &c.

*Imperative.*

Carry (thou, ye) out the plan, &c.

Führe (führt) den Plan aus,

Führen Sie „ aus, &c.

Give (thou, ye) up the business, &c.

Gib (gebet) das Geschäft auf,

Geben Sie „ auf, &c.

*Compound Tenses.*

I have (had) carried out, &c.

ich habe (hatte) den Plan aus-  
geführt.

I shall (should) carry out, &c.

ich werde (würde) den Plan aus-  
führen.

ich werde (würde) den Plan aus-  
geführt haben.

I have (had) given up, &c.

ich habe (hatte) das Geschäft auf-  
gegeben.

I shall (should) give up, &c.

ich werde (würde) das Geschäft auf-  
geben.

ich werde (würde) das Geschäft auf-  
gegeben haben.

The above constructions only hold good in Principal Clauses; for the Prefix is never detached in Dependent Clauses, in which the Verb itself must stand last :—

*Principal Clause :*

I copy the letter.

ich schreibe den Brief ab.

I copied the letter.

ich schrieb den Brief ab.

*Dependent Clause :*

The letter which I copy.

Der Brief, den ich abschreibe.

The letter which I copied.

Der Brief, welchen ich abschrieb.

It was late, when I copied the letter.

He wishes that I should copy the letter.

Es war spät, als ich den Brief abschrieb.

Er wünscht, daß ich den Brief abschreibe.

## OBSERVATIONS ON COMPOUND VERBS.

## (a) Verbs compounded with the prefixes—

|                                 |                            |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>durch, hinter, über,</b>     | through, behind, over,     |
| <b>um, unter, voll, wieder,</b> | round, under, full, again, |

(1) are *separable*, if the *prefix* is *accented* :—

*Infinit.* durch'-reisen, to pass through  
(without stopping),

*Supine* (um) durch'-zureisen

*P.P.* durch'-gcreist,

über'-gehen, to go (pass) over,

(um) über'-zu-gehen,

über'-gegangen,

Thus—um'-gehen, to go round.

wie'der-holen, to fetch back.

(2) *inseparable*, if the *verb-stem* is *accented* :—

durch'reis'en, to roam through.

(um) zu durch'reis'en

durch'reist.

über'ge'h'en, to skip.

(um) zu über'ge'h'en.

über'gang'en.

um'ge'h'en, to turn, evolve.

wie'derhol'en, to repeat.

## EXAMPLES :—

(1) *Accented separable prefix* ;  
Sense :—*literal and concrete* :—

ich **setze** den Reisenden **über'**,

I set the traveller over,

ich habe ihn **über'**ge'setzt,

ich wün'sche ihn **über'**zu'setzen.

Ge'h und **hole** es **wie'der**,

Go and fetch it back again,

ich habe es schon **wie'der'**ge'holt,

ich gebente es **wie'der'**zu'holen.

(2) *Unaccented inseparable pref.* ;  
Sense :—*derived and abstract* :—

ich **über'setz'**e das Buch.

I translate the book.

ich habe es **über'setzt'**.

ich wün'sche es **zu über'setz'**en.

**Wiederhol'**e es noch einmal.

Repeat it once more.

ich habe es schon **wiederhol't'**.

ich gebente es **zu wiederhol'**en.

(b) With regard to Verbs compounded with **miß-** notice that—

(1) Verbs which have the *accent on the verb-stem* are *inseparable* :—

miß'fal'en, to displease ; Pres. ich miß'falle, Pret. ich miß'fiel.

miß'bill'igen, to disapprove ; Pres. ich miß'billige, Pret. ich miß'billigte.

*Past Perf.* without *ge*, if the Verb is *strong* :—miß'fiellen.

„ generally with *ge*, if the Verb is *weak* :—**ge**miß'billigt.

(2) Verbs which have the accent on the prefix *miß-* are also inseparable in the Simple Tenses, but generally intercalate *ge-* in the Part. Perf. :—

*miß-*arten, to degenerate; Part. Perf. *mißgeartet*.

(c) In addition to the Rules mentioned in § 56, notice that—

(1) most Compound Verbs derived from Compound Nouns or Adjectives are inseparable :—

*rat*h[*sch*]agen, to deliberate, to hold counsel (from *Rath[sch]lag*, counsel, advice).  
*wett*seifen, to vie, to emulate (from *Wetteifer*, emulation).

Thus—

*arg*wöhnen, to suspect; *brand*schagen, to lay under contribution; *früh*stücken, to breakfast; *hand*haben, to handle; *lang*weilen, to weary; *lust*wandeln, to promenade; *wall*fahrten, to go on a pilgrimage; *rech*t[er]tigen, to justify; *wesh*lagen, to lament; *wirt*schaften, to husband; *wetter*leuchten, to lighten; *offen*baren, to reveal.

All these, like those compounded with *be-*, *ge-*, &c., remain inseparable in Conjugation; but differently from them, they take the augment *ge-* in the Part. Perf.; compare—

*ber*eden, to persuade; *ich* *berede*; P.P. *beredet*.      *Supine* :—(um) *zu bereden*.

*früh*stücken, to breakfast; *ich* *frühstücke*; P.P. *gefrühstückt*.      (um) *zu frühstücken*.

(2) Verbs with two prefixes are—

(a) *inseparable throughout*, if the first prefix is unaccented and the second accented :—

*be-*antworten, to answer; *ich* *beantworte*, P.P. *beantwortet*.      *Supine* :—(um) *zu beantworten*.  
*ver-*ursachen, to cause; *ich* *verursache*, P.P. *verursacht*.      (um) *zu verursachen*.

(β) *separable* in the simple tenses (but without taking *ge-* in the Part. Perf.), if the first prefix is accented, and the second unaccented :—

*an-*erkennen, to acknowledge, *ich* *erkenne es an*,  
*vor-*behalten, to reserve;      *ich* *behalte mir vor*;

but—Part. Perf. :—*anerkannt*,      *vorbehalten*.

*Supine* :—      *an*z[er]kennen, *vor*z[ur]behalten.

## ADVERBS (Umstandswörter).

## § 59. I. FORMATION OF ADVERBS.

Adverbs are either—

(a) *Primitive*, (b) *Derived*, or (c) *Compounded* :—

(a) *Primitive*: viel, much; mehr, more; genug, enough; wenig, little, few; früh, early; oft, often; nah, near; wol, well, &c.

(b) *Derived*, by means of the suffixes -lich (= Engl. -ly), -lings; -s, -ens (the latter originally Genitive endings) :—

| from <i>Adjectives</i> :— | from <i>Nouns</i> :—     | from <i>Participles</i> :—      |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------------|
| bitterlich, bitterly.     | jährlich, yearly.        | hoffentlich, it is to be hoped. |
| treulich, truly.          | mündlich, verbally.      | wissentlich, wilfully.          |
| blindlings, blindly.      | rücklings, backwards.    | zusehends, visibly.             |
| anders, otherwise.        | theils, partly.          | eilends, hurriedly.             |
| links, to the left.       | morgens, in the morning. |                                 |
| übrigens, for the rest.   | abends, in the evening.  |                                 |
| meistens, mostly.         |                          |                                 |

*Obs.* Almost all German Adjectives, however, may be used as Adverbs without undergoing any change :—

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <i>Adj.</i> —Das Buch ist schön.                      | The book is beautiful.                   |
| <i>Adv.</i> —Das Buch ist schön geschrieben.          | The book is beautifully written.         |
| <i>Adj.</i> —Die Alpen sind höher als die Pyrenäen.   | The Alps are higher than the Pyrenees.   |
| <i>Adv.</i> —Der Adler fliegt höher als die Schwalbe. | The eagle flies higher than the swallow. |

(c) *Compounded* of *Nouns*, *Adjectives*, *Pronouns*, *Prepositions*, and *Primitive Adverbs* :—

1. with *Nouns* (mostly in the Genitive) affixed to other parts of speech :—

*Ding*, n. :— allerbings, undoubtedly; schlechterdings, positively.

*Fall*, m. :— gleichfalls, likewise; jedenfalls, in any case.

*Hand*, f. :— allerhand, all kinds of; rechter Hand, on the right hand.

- Mal**, n. :— **vielfach**, frequently ; **jedesmal**, every time.  
**Maß(e)**, n. :— **einigermassen**, in some degree ; **dermaßen**, in such a degree.  
**Ort**, m. :— **allerorts** (**allerorten**), everywhere.  
**Seite**, f. :— **einerseits...andrerseits**,\* on the one hand...on the other hand.  
**Teil**, m. :— **größtentheils**, chiefly ; **meistentheils**, on my part.  
**Weg**, m. :— **geradeswegs**, straightway ; **keineswegs**, by no means.  
**Weise**, f. :— **einstweilen**, **wittlerweise**, meanwhile, meantime.  
**Weise**, f. :— **glücklichweise**, fortunately ; **kreuzweise**, crosswise.  
**thörichterweise**, foolishly.  
**Zeit**, f. :— **allezeit**, **jederzeit**, at all times.

\* The *masc.* and *neuter* genitive-inflection *-s*, from its frequent use in adverbial genitives, has become an adverbial suffix, and as such is often tacked on to Nouns irrespective of their gender or case. Cf. *die Nacht*, *adv.* **Nachts**, by night ; *acc.* **allen Fall**, *adv.* **allenfalls**, at all events.

2. with *Prepositions* (or *original Adverbs*) prefixed or suffixed to other parts of speech :—

|                                      |                                |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <b>zugleich</b> , at the same time ; | <b>geradezu</b> , straight on. |
| <b>aufwärts</b> , upward ;           | <b>bergauf</b> , uphill.       |
| <b>unterwegs</b> , on the way ;      | <b>bergunter</b> , downhill.   |
| <b>heutzutage</b> , nowadays ;       | <b>jahrelang</b> , for years.  |

---

**meinet-wegen(-halben)**, for my sake ;  
**gesundheitshalber**, for the sake of health.

3. with *Pronouns* (or originally *Pronominal stems*) compounded with each other :—

**wohin** ? whither ? **dahin**, **dorthin**, **thither**,  
**woher** ? whence ? **daher**, **dorthier**, **thence**, &c.

## § 60. II. CLASSIFICATION OF ADVERBS.

Adverbs may be classified, according to their meaning, into Adverbs of—

(1) *Place*, answering the questions—

| wo? where?             | woher? { whence?<br>whence from?        | wohin? { whither?<br>where to?            |
|------------------------|---|---|
|                        |   |   |
| Best.                  | → .                                     | → .                                       |
|                        | from a place to-<br>wards the speaker:— | from the speaker to-<br>wards a place:—   |
| hier, here.            | hierher, hence.                         | hierhin, hither.                          |
| da, here, there.       | daher, hence, thence.                   | dahin, thither, this way.                 |
| dort, there, yonder.   | dorther, thence, from<br>yonder.        | dorthin, thither, that<br>way.            |
| brinnen, in, inside.   | herein, (come) in.                      | hinein (go) in.                           |
| draußen, out, outside. | heraus, (come) out.                     | hinaus, (go) out.                         |
| drüben, over there,    | herüber, (come) over,<br>across.        | hinüber, (go) over, to<br>the other side. |
| oben (oben), above.    | herauf, (come) up.                      | hinauf, (go) up.                          |
| unten (unten), down,   | herunter, herab, (come)<br>below.       | hinunter, hinab, (go)<br>down.            |

(2) *Time*, answering the questions—

**wann? when?** :—jetzt, now; heute, to-day; gestern, yesterday; morgen, to-morrow; sofort, immediately; nie, never, &c.

**wie lange? how long?** :—immer, always; stets, constantly, &c.

**wie oft? how often?** :—täglich, daily; stündlich, hourly; selten.

(3) *Manner or Quality*, answering the question—

**wie? how?** :—so, thus; wohl, well; richtig, correctly; schnell, quickly; langsam, slowly; anders, otherwise; gern, willingly; and nearly all Adjectives without undergoing any change [see I. (b)].

(4) *Affirmation, Negation, or Uncertainty* :—

ja, yes; wirklich, really; in der That, freilich, indeed, in fact, &c.

nein, no; nicht, not; keineswegs, by no means, &c.

vielleicht, perhaps; etwa, perchance; kaum, hardly, scarcely, &c.

(5) *Quantity, Degree*, answering the questions—

**wie viel? how much** (in quantity)? :—viel, much, a great deal; wenig, little; etwas, some; genug, enough.

**wie sehr? how much** (in degree)? :—sehr, much, very; höchst, exceedingly; gänzlich, totally, wholly; äußerst, extremely, &c.

(6) *Cause, Motive, Purpose*, answering the questions—

**warum? why?** :—darum, therefore.

**weßhalb, weßwegen? wherefore?** :—desßhalb, desßwegen, therefore.

**wozu? what for?** :—dazu, for that, &c.

\* The distinction between *quantity* and *degree (intensity)*—both expressed by 'much' in English—must be carefully observed in German:—

He eats much. Er ißt viel. Many friends. Viele Freunde.  
I love him much. Ich liebe ihn sehr. Very much. Sehr viel.



## § 61. III. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

|                             | <i>Comparative,</i><br>by adding <b>-er</b> . | <i>Superl. Absolute,</i><br>by adding <b>-(e)st</b> ,<br>or <b>(e)stens</b> . | <i>Superl. Relative,</i><br>by adding <b>-sten</b> . |
|-----------------------------|---|---|--|
| gehörig, obediently.        | gehöriger,<br>more obediently.                | gehörigst, <sup>1</sup><br>aufs gehörigste,<br>most obediently.               | am gehörigsten,<br>(the) most obediently.            |
| leicht, easily,<br>lightly. | leichter,<br>more easily.                     | leichtestens, <sup>1</sup><br>aufs leichteste,<br>most easily.                | am leichtesten,<br>(the) most easily.                |
| hoch,<br>high.              | höher,<br>higher.                             | höchst, höchstens,<br>exceedingly,<br>at the most.                            | am höchsten, <sup>2</sup><br>(the) highest.          |
| nah,<br>near.               | näher,<br>nearer.                             | gnächst,<br>next of all;<br>nächstens,<br>by and by.                          | am nächsten,<br>(the) nearest.                       |

## § 62. IRREGULAR COMPARISON (formed from other Stems).

|                                  |                              |  |  |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------|--|--|
| gut, wol,<br>well.               | besser,<br>better.           | bestens, } best.                                     | am besten,<br>the best.                        |
| gern, <sup>3</sup><br>willingly. | lieber,<br>rather.           | aufs beste, }<br>(allerliebste, most<br>charmingly.) | am liebsten, (the)<br>most willingly.          |
| balb,<br>soon.                   | eher,<br>sooner.             | balbigst, } very                                     | am ehesten,<br>(the) soonest.                  |
| viel,<br>much.                   | mehr,<br>more.               | cheestens, } soon.                                   | am meisten,<br>(the) most.                     |
| wenig,<br>little.                | minder,<br>weniger,<br>less. | meist, meistens,<br>mostly.                          | am mindesten,<br>am wenigsten,<br>(the) least. |
|                                  |                              | mindestens,<br>wenigstens,<br>at least.              |  |

<sup>1</sup> The Simple Superlatives in **-st**, **-stens**, are limited to a few exceptional cases; as, eiligst, hurriedly; gefälligst, if you please; gütigst, most kindly; erstens, in the first place; spätestens, at the latest; schönstens, in the best manner.

<sup>2</sup> Distinguish between—

Der Adler fliegt am höchsten. It is the eagle that flies the highest (compared with other birds).

Wenn der Adler am höchsten fliegt... When the eagle takes his highest flies (compared with his own flight at other times).

<sup>3</sup> **Gern** is generally best rendered by the Verbs *to like*, *to be fond of* :—

Ich möchte gern (lieber). I should like; (I would rather).

Er trinkt gern. He is fond of (given to) drinking.

Am liebsten ginge ich \* spazieren. I should like best to take a walk.

(Comp. the English—I had as *lieve*, I had *rather*.)

\* If a sentence begins with an Adverb or an Adverbial phrase, the Verb stands before the Subject :—

Ich gehe nach Hause. — Heute (in vierzehn Tagen) gehe ich nach Hause.

## PREPOSITIONS (Vornörter).

Prepositions are best classified according to the case they govern : i.e. (a) the *Accusative*, (b) the *Dative*, (c) both the *Dative* and *Accusative*, and (d) the *Genitive*.

§ 63. A. *Prepositions governing the ACCUSATIVE Case :—*

**durch**, *through* ; **gegen**, *against, towards* ; **für**, *for* ;  
**ohne**, *without* ; **um**, *round about, for* ; **wider**, *against*.

**Durch** den Fluß (— die Wiese, *Through* the river (— the  
— das Feld). *meadow, — the field*).

Den ganzen Tag (die ganze Nacht, *During* the whole day (night,  
das ganze Jahr) *durch*. *year*).

Dadurch [§ 30, (3)] wird nichts *Nothing is gained thereby*.  
gewonnen.

Wer nicht für mich ist, ist *gegen* *He who is not for me, is a-*  
mich. *gainst me*.

Er ist reich *gegen* uns. *He is rich in comparison with us*.

Gegen Mittag. *Gegen* Osten. *Towards noon. To the east*.

Ich habe nichts *dagegen* [§ 30, *I have no objection to it*.  
(3)].

Gegen hundert Pfund. *About one hundred pounds*.

Für das Vaterland sterben. *To die for the fatherland*.

Was wollen Sie da für [§ 30, (3)]? *What do you want for it?*

Ohne einen Pfennig. *Without a penny*.

Um den Wald (— die Kirche, *Togoround* the wood (— church,  
— das Haus) *gehen*. *— house*).

Um sieben Uhr. *Um* Weihnachten. *At seven o'clock. About Christ-*  
*mas*.

Er bittet um ein Stück Brot. *He asks for a piece of bread*.

Ich bemühe mich darum [§ 30, *I trouble myself about it*.  
(3)].

Wider den Wind. *Against the wind*.

Wider meinen Willen. *Against my will*.

*Obs. 1. Sonder, without, is but rarely used.*

*2. Bis, as far as, until, is generally used with other Prepositions, or with Adverbs :—*

*Bis* nach Berlin ; von fünf *bis* sieben Uhr ; *bis* hierher, *so far* ; *bis* jetzt, *till now*, &c.

*3. Entlang, along, with acc. if placed after the Noun :—*

Den Fluß *entlang*. *Along the river*.

*4. Gen, for gegen, is obsolete :—gen Himmel, heavenward.*

§ 64. B.\* *Prepositions governing the DATIVE Case.*

**Aus, außer, bei, entgegen, gegenüber,**  
*out of, without, near by, against, opposite,*

**Mit, nach, seit, von, zu, zuwider.**  
*with, after, since, of, to, contrary.*

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>Aus dem Zimmer</b> (— der Küche,<br>— dem Fenster). | <i>Out of the room</i> (kitchen, window).     |
| <b>Aus den Augen, aus dem Sinn.</b>                    | <i>Out of sight</i> (lit. eyes), out of mind. |
| <b>Die Armee besteht aus Kerntruppen.</b>              | <i>The army consists of</i> picked troops.    |
| <b>Aus Furcht vor Strafe.</b>                          | <i>For</i> (out of) fear of punishment.       |
| <b>Außer dem Bereiche; außer (der) Gefahr.</b>         | <i>Out of</i> (beyond) reach; out of danger.  |
| <b>Alle Schüler außer dir und mir.</b>                 | <i>All the pupils except</i> you and I.       |
| (With the genitive in a few phrases:—                  |   |
| <b>Außer Landes gehen.</b>                             | <i>To go</i> abroad.)                         |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>Bleibe bei ihm.</b>                     | <i>Stay with</i> him.                          |
| <b>Die Schlacht bei Leipzig.</b>           | <i>The battle of</i> Leipzig.                  |
| <b>Ich habe mein Messer nicht bei mir.</b> | <i>I have not my knife about</i> me.           |
| <b>Bei dem (beim) Buchhändler.</b>         | <i>At</i> the bookseller's (Fr. <i>chez</i> ). |
| <b>Es ist bei den Deutschen üblich.</b>    | <i>It is customary with</i> the Germans.       |
| <b>Bei Tische; bei diesem Anlaß.</b>       | <i>At</i> table; <i>on</i> this occasion.      |
| <b>Bei Tag; bei Nacht.</b>                 | <i>In</i> the daytime; <i>in</i> the night.    |
| <b>Bei meiner Ankunft.</b>                 | <i>At</i> my arrival.                          |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>Er kam mir entgegen</b> ( <i>Inf.</i> entgegen-kommen). | <i>He came to meet</i> me.                             |
| <b>Dem Feind entgegen.</b>                                 | <i>Facing</i> the enemies.                             |
| <b>Er wohnt der Kirche gegenüber.</b>                      | <i>He lives opposite</i> the church.                   |
| <b>Komm mit mir; mit lauter Stimme.</b>                    | <i>Come with</i> me; <i>with</i> a loud voice.         |
| <b>Mit Freuden; mit der ersten Gelegenheit.</b>            | <i>With</i> pleasure; <i>on</i> the first opportunity. |

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Nach Süden hin ; nach allen Welttheilen.                | Towards the South ; to all parts of the world. |
| Er reist nach München (nach Hause).                     | He is leaving* (starting) for Munich (home).   |
| Nach dem Frühstück ; nach einer Woche.                  | After breakfast ; a week hence.                |
| Nach meiner Ansicht ; meiner Ansicht nach.              | In my opinion.                                 |
| Dem Scheine nach.                                       | According to appearances.                      |
| Seit einer Woche ; seit vielen Jahren.                  | A week ago ; these many years.                 |
| Er kommt von der Schule (vom Jahrmarkt).                | He is coming from school (from the fair).      |
| Von Jugend auf ; ein Freund von mir.                    | From childhood (up) ; a friend of mine.        |
| Von Ansehen kennen ; ein Gedicht von Goethe.            | To know by sight ; a poem by Goethe.           |
| Was halten sie davon [§ 30, (3)]?                       | What do you think of it ?                      |
| Ich gehe zu meinem Bruder (but nach Paris, nach Hause). | I am going to my brother.                      |
| Zum (zu dem) Fenster hinein (hinaus).                   | In (Out of) the window.                        |
| Sie machten ihn zum Könige.                             | They made him their king.                      |
| Wir gehen zu Tische, zu Bette, zur Schule.              | We are going to dinner, to bed, to school.     |
| Zu Lande, zur See, zu Fuß, zu Pferd, &c.                | By land, by sea, on foot, on horseback, &c.    |
| Der Vernunft zuwider.                                   | Contrary to reason.                            |

*Obs.* Note the following, less frequently used, Particles which complete the above list:—

**innen**, within ; **gemäß**, conformable to ; **gleich**, like ; **ob**, over ; **nächst**, next ; **nebst**, **sammt**, together (along with).

**innen** acht Tagen. *Within* a week.

Also with the *Genitive*:—**innen** eines Monats.

Der Vorschrift **gemäß**. *Conformable to precept, &c.*

§ 65. C. *Prepositions which govern—**the DATIVE,**the ACCUSATIVE,*In answer to the question  
*where?*In answer to the question  
*whither? whereto?**an, auf, hinter, in, and neben,  
at, upon, behind, in, and beside.**über, unter, vor, and zwischen,  
over, under, before, and between.**With Dative.*Er sitzt *an* dem (am) Feuer.He sits *by* the fire.Die Reize ist *an* dir.

It is thy turn.

Am Morgen; am ersten Mai.

In the morning; on the first of  
May.*With Accusative.*Geh *an* das Feuer.

Go near the fire.

Ich denke *an* dich.

I am thinking of you.

Der Brief ist *an* mich gerichtet.

The letter is addressed to me.

Das Licht steht *auf* dem Tische.The candle stands *on* (upon) the  
table.

Auf dem Lande wohnen.

To live *in* the country.Ich bin *auf* der Post, *auf* der  
Börse, *auf* dem Markte, &c.  
gewesen. I have been *at*  
the post-office, *at* the Ex-  
change, *in* the market, &c.Der Garten ist *hinter* der  
Mauer.

The garden is behind the wall.

Stelle den Leuchter *auf* den Tisch.Place the candle *upon* the table.

Auf das Land gehen.

To go *into* the country.Ich ging *auf* die Post, *auf* die  
Börse, *auf* den Markt.I went *to* the post-office, *to* the  
Exchange, *to* the market.Ich eile *hinter* die Mauer.

I hasten behind the wall.

Bleibe *in* dem (im) Zimmer.Stay *in* the room.Der Fisch schwimmt *in* dem Wasser.The fish is swimming *in* the  
water.Komm *in* das Zimmer.Come *into* the room.Der Hund springt *in* das Wasser.The dog jumps *into* the water.Ich sitze *neben* ihm.I am seated *near* him.Ich setze mich *neben* ihn.I sit down *near* him.Die Wolke steht *über* dem Berge.The cloud hovers *over* the  
mountain.Die Wolke zieht *über* den Berg.The cloud flies *over* the moun-  
tain.

Er steht über mir.  
He stands *above* me.

Die Schafe ruhen unter den  
Bäumen.  
The sheep rest *under* the trees.  
Der Größte unter uns allen.  
The greatest *among* us all.  
Kinder unter zehn Jahren.  
Children *under* ten years.

Eine Wache steht vor dem Thor.  
A sentinel is standing *before*  
the gate.  
Vor drei Wochen.  
Three weeks *ago*.  
Vor Furcht zittern; vor Hunger  
verschmachten.  
To tremble *with* fear; to die  
*with* hunger.

Er saß zwischen mir und ihr.  
He sat *between* me and her.

Wir freuen uns über Ihren  
Erfolg.

We rejoice *at* your success.  
Die Schafe gehen unter die  
Bäume.  
The sheep go *under* the trees.  
Der unsaubere Geist fuhr unter  
die Schweine.  
The evil spirit entered *into* the  
swine.

Gehen wir vor das Thor.  
Let us go *outside* the gate.

Treten Sie vor den Spiegel.  
Step *before* the looking-glass.  
Die Feinde rückten mit Heeres-  
macht vor die Stadt.  
The enemies marched in great  
force *before* the town.

Er setzte sich zwischen mich und  
sie.  
He sat down *between* me and her.

§ 66. D. *Prepositions governing the GENITIVE Case.*

außerhalb, innerhalb, oberhalb, unterhalb,  
*outside, inside, above, below.*

diesseit(s), jenseit(s); längs, entlang,  
*on this side, the other side; along.*

Kraft, vermöge; laut, mittelst,  
*by virtue of; conformably to, by means of.*

statt (anstatt), trotz, ungeachtet,  
*instead of, in spite of, notwithstanding.*

wegen, halben, willen; während, zufolge,  
*on account of; during; according to.*

Außerhalb (innerhalb) des Lagers. *Outside (inside) the camp.*

Oberhalb (unterhalb) des Flusses. *Above (below) the river.*

|  |  |
|--|--|
| † (Innerhalb acht Tagen.                     | <i>Within eight days (a week.)</i>               |
| Diesseit(s) [jenseit(s)] des Gebirges.       | <i>On this (the other) side of the mountain.</i> |
| Längs des Ufers.                             | <i>Along the shore.</i>                          |
| † (Längs dem Gestade.                        | <i>Along the beach)</i>                          |
| (also <i>Acc.</i> den Wald entlang.          | <i>Along the wood.)</i>                          |
| Kraft (vermöge) seines Amtes.                | <i>By virtue of his office.</i>                  |
| Laut dieser Urkunde.                         | <i>Conformably to this document.</i>             |
| Mittels† (vermittels†) eines Dietrichs.      | <i>By means of a false key.</i>                  |
| Statt (anstatt) des Fürsten.                 | <i>Instead (in place) of the prince.</i>         |
| An meiner Statt.                             | <i>In my stead.</i>                              |
| Trotz (ungeachtet) des Verbotes.             | <i>In spite (defiance) of the prohibition.</i>   |
| † (Trotz einem, <i>as well as any</i> ;      | <i>trotzdem, for all that.)</i>                  |
| Seines Reichthums ungeachtet.                | <i>His wealth notwithstanding.</i>               |
| Wegen seines Eifers ; seines Eifers wegen.   | <i>On account of his zeal.</i>                   |
| Unserer Freundschaft halben (wissen, wegen). | <i>For the sake of our friendship.</i>           |
| (Um) des Himmels willen.                     | <i>For heaven's sake.</i>                        |
| (Meinetwillen, deinet halben, &c.            | <i>For my sake, &amp;c., see § 25, 2.)</i>       |
| Während meiner Krankheit.                    | <i>During my illness.</i>                        |
| † Zu Folge meines Auftrages. }               | <i>According to my instruction.</i>              |
| Meinem Auftrage zufolge. }                   |  |

*Obs.* Those marked † also govern the *Dative* case.

### *Contraction of Prepositions with the Definite Article.*

The following prepositions may—but need not—be contracted :—

|                 |                     |
|-----------------|---------------------|
| an dem = am,    | an das = ans,       |
| bei dem = beim, | auf das = aufs,     |
| in dem = im,    | durch das = durchs, |
| von dem = vom,  | für das = fürs,     |
| zu dem = zum,   | in das = ins,       |
| zu der = zur.   | um das = ums.       |

## CONJUNCTIONS (Bindewörter).

§ 67. Conjunctions are divided, according as they affect the construction of the clauses they introduce, into :—

A. CO-ORDINATE : { (1) PURE—which *do not affect* the Place of the Verb :—  
(2) ADVERBIAL—which *attract* the Verb before the Subject :—

B. SUB-ORDINATE : { (3) which *remove* the Verb to the end of the sentence :—

A. { (1) Er ist reich, **aber** er ist nicht glücklich.  
He is rich, *but* he is not happy.  
(2) Er ist reich, **deshalb** ist er geachtet.  
He is rich, *therefore* he is esteemed.

B. (3) Er ist reich, **weil** er arbeitssam ist.  
He is rich, *because* he is industrious.

§ 68. Conjunctions are also classified, according to their meaning and the relations they indicate, into—(a) *Copulative*, *Disjunctive*, and *Adversative*, (b) *Local* and *Temporal*, (c) *Causal* or *Conclusive*, (d) *Final*, (e) *Conditional*, and (f) *Concessive*.

Combining these two classifications (the Syntactical and Etymological), we may arrange Conjunctions according to the following Scheme :—

(a) *Copulative and Disjunctive.*

|   |                                    |
|---|------------------------------------|
| A. (1) CO-ORDINATE (Pure).                            | A. (2) CO-ORDINATE (Adverbial).    |
| (which <i>do not affect</i> the place of the Verb) :— | (which <i>attract</i> the Verb) :— |

und, and ; oder, or.  
aber, allein, but, however.  
sondern, but (after a negative phrase).  
sowohl...als auch, as well...as,  
both...and.  
benn, for.  
weder, neither.

auch, also ; zudem, besides.  
noch, jedoch, yet, still.  
dennoch, nevertheless.  
entweder, either (as a correlative to oder, or, and linking co-ordinate clauses).  
noch, nor (as a correlative to weder).



(b) *Local and Temporal.*

B. (3) SUB-ORDINATE.  
(which *remove* the Verb to the end) :—

als, when, as ; wie, as.  
wenn, if ; wann, when.  
während, indem, while, whilst.  
nachdem, after ; seit, seitdem, since.  
bis, until ; ehe, bevor, before, ere.

A. (2) CO-ORDINATE (Adverbial).  
(which *attract* the Verb) :—

damaß, then.  
dann, then.  
indessen, meanwhile, meantime.  
kaum, scarcely, no sooner.  
vorher, zuvor, before.

(c) *Causal, Conclusive.*

weil, because : da, since.

also, thus ; folglich, mithin, consequently.

— — —  
weßhalb, weswegen, wherefore.

daher, darum, hence.  
beßhalb, deswegen, therefore.

(d) *Final.*

daß, that (with Subj.),

auf daß, } in order that, so that.  
damit, }

dazu, darum, for that purpose.

auf daß...nicht, lest.

um...zu, in order to (with *Infinitive*).

(e) *Conditional.*

wenn, if ;

wo nicht, unless ; ob, if, whether.

wofern, falls, in case (with Subj.).

(f) *Concessive.*

obgleich, obwohl, obgleich, } though, zwar, indeed.

wenn...auch, ungeachtet, } although. wohl, truly, &c.

## EXAMPLES :—

- (1) Du thust Recht, und du scheuest Niemanden.  
You do right, and you fear nobody.
- (2) Du thust Recht, darum scheuest du Niemanden.  
You do right, and therefore you fear nobody.
- (3) Thue Recht, auf daß du Niemanden scheuest.  
Do right, so that you fear nobody.
- (1) Ich bin hungrig, denn ich habe nicht gefrühstückt.  
I am hungry, for I have not breakfasted.
- (2) Ich war hungrig, darum habe ich gefrühstückt.  
I was hungry, therefore I breakfasted.
- (3) Ich war hungrig, weil ich nicht gefrühstückt hatte.  
I was hungry, because I had not breakfasted.



## APPENDIX.

§ 69. VOWEL MODIFICATION is a feature of frequent occurrence in the English language, and, as it may be traced to the same origin in the two languages, an illustration of its working in English will better explain the principle than any disquisition, however lengthy, could do:—

“The Plurals formed by change of the Vowel of the Noun, such as ‘foot,’ ‘feet,’ can be partly explained by Anglo-Saxon, and still more by the kindred languages of the Continent, especially the Old Saxon. In Anglo-Saxon the plural is *fēt* where the original vowel (*fōt*) has been changed as in English. But in Old Saxon the plural is *fōti*, and in Gothic words of the same form we find traces of a fuller suffix *-is*. Now this final syllable explains the change of the vowel in the original syllable. It is a well-known phenomenon in language (of which we shall see more hereafter) that one sound affects another in pronunciation; that, for example, if two consonants meet, which differ in some principle of their formation, and therefore are not easily pronounced together, one generally modifies the other. . . . A consonant can affect a vowel, and one vowel can affect another, though not generally in the same syllable; sometimes a vowel changes that of the following syllable, as when Latin *facilis* becomes *difficilis*; more commonly the vowel of the preceding syllable is brought nearer to—not made identical with—that which follows. These Plurals are examples of such a change. Thus in ‘*fōti*’ we have two vowels *o* and *i* (*ee*—sound); for *o* the back of the tongue is raised much higher than for *i*; *e* (sounded as in French *fête*) comes nearer to *i* in this respect; also the mouth is ‘rounded’ for *o*, that is, the lips form a circular hole, the extremities being brought nearer; but the lips are not moved in sounding either *e* or *i*; therefore a speaker, mindful of the coming *i*, and wishing half-unconsciously to spare his labour, so modified the preceding syllable that he sounded *é* instead of *ô*, and said ‘*fēti*.’ Just so he said ‘*menni*’ instead of ‘*manni*’ for the plural of ‘man.’ Then in process of time the termination *i*, like so many others, was dropped, and ‘feet,’ ‘men,’ &c., alone were left. Yet, none the less, the lost vowel had been the cause of the change. This we should certainly never have known except by tracing the history of the vowel, and by comparison with kindred languages, where the same change takes place.”

(PEILE, *Primer of Philology*.)

§ 70 (a). *Substantives with two different PLURALS according to their meaning.*

|   |  |
|---|--|
| das Band, die Bände, fetters.           | das Band, die Bänder, ribbons.           |
| die Bank, die Bänke, benches.           | die Bank, die Banken, banks.             |
| das Ding, die Dinge, things.            | das Ding, die Dinger, creatures.         |
| das Gesicht, die Gesichte, visions.     | das Gesicht, die Gesichter, faces.       |
| der Laden, die Läden, shops.            | der Laden, die Laden, shutters.          |
| das Land, die Länder, lands.            | das Land, die Lande, province, domains.  |
| das Licht, die Lichte, candles.         | das Licht, die Lichter, lights.          |
| der Mann, die Männer, men.              | der Mann, die Mannen, warriors, vassals. |
| der Ort, die Orte, places (in general). | der Ort, die Orter, places, localities.  |
| der Strauß, die Strauße, ostriches.     | der Strauß, die Sträuße, bouquets.       |
| das Wort, die Worte, words, speeches.   | das Wort, die Wörter, single words.      |
| der Zoll, die Zölle, inches.            | der Zoll, die Zölle, toll.               |

§ 70 (b). *Nouns which have a double Gender.*

N.B.—The plurals (except when unchanged or unusual) are given in parenthesis.

|   |   |
|---|---|
| der Band (Bände), volumes.              | das Band (Bänder), ribbon.                  |
| der Bund, see (c) (Bünde), confederacy. | das Bund (Bünde), bundle.                   |
| der Bauer (Bauern), peasant.            | das Bauer, cage.                            |
| der Chor (Chöre), chorus.               | das Chor (Chöre), choir.                    |
| der Erbe (Erben), heir.                 | das Erbe, inheritance.                      |
| die Erkenntniß, intuition.              | das Erkenntniß, verdict.                    |
| der Geißel, hostage.                    | die Geißel (Geißeln), scourge.              |
| die Gift (Mitgift), dowry.              | das Gift, poison.                           |
| der Harz, Hartz mountain.               | das Harz, resin.                            |
| der Heide (Heiden), heathen.            | die Heide, heath.                           |
| der Hut (Hüte), hat.                    | die Hut, hood, guard.                       |
| der Kiefer, jaw.                        | die Kiefer (Kiefern), pine-tree.            |
| der Kunde (Kunden), customer.           | die Kunde, knowledge, tidings.              |
| der Leiter, guide.                      | die Leiter (Leitern), ladder.               |
| der Mangel (Mängel), want.              | die Mangel, mangle.                         |
| der Mark, mark (= shilling).            | die Mark (Marken), border-land.             |
| das Marz, marrow.                       |   |
| der Mensch (Menschen), human being.     | das Mensch (Menschen), wench.               |
| der Messer, measurer, surveyor.         | das Messer, knife.                          |
| der Reis, rice.                         | das Reis (Reiser), twig.                    |
| der Schild (Schilde), shield.           | das Schild (Schilder), sign-board.          |
| der See (Seen), lake.                   | die See, sea, ocean.                        |
| der Sprosse (Sprossen), offspring.      | die Sprosse (Sprossen), step (in a ladder). |
| die Steuer (Steuern), tax, duty.        | das Steuer, helm.                           |
| der Stift (Stifte), pencil, tack.       | das Stift (Stifte), pious foundation.       |
| der Teil (Teile), part.                 | das Teil (Teile), share, portion.           |
| der Thor (Thoren), fool.                | das Thor (Thore), gate.                     |
| der Verdienst (Verdienste), gain.       | das Verdienst (Verdienste), merit.          |

§ 70 (c) *Nouns (mostly abstract) which form their Plural by means of a derivative or of a compound form—which itself is used both in the Singular and Plural.*

| <i>Singular.</i>  | <i>Plural.</i>   |
|---|--|
| der Bau, building, construction,<br>(der Bau, burrow, &c.,<br>das Bestreben, effort,<br>der Betrug, deceit, fraud,<br>der Bund (see b), alliance,<br>der Dank, thanks,<br>das Erbe, inheritance,<br>der Friede, treaty of peace,<br>die Gewalt, force, violence,  | die Bauten (f.).<br>die Baue.)<br>die Bestrebungen (f.).<br>die Betrügereien (f.).<br>die Bündnisse (n.).<br>die Dankjagungen (f.).<br>die Erbschaften (f.).<br>die Friedensverträge (m.).<br>die Gewaltthätigkeiten (f.).<br>(die Gewalten, powers that be.)<br>die Glücksfälle (m.), windfalls.<br>die Gunstbezeugungen (f.).<br>die Kummernisse (f.).<br>die Liebchaften (f.) (amours).<br>die Lobsprüche (m.).<br>die Mordthaten (f.).<br>die Rathschläge (m.).<br>die Rätze.)<br>die Räubereien (f.).<br>die Segnungen (f.).<br>die Streitigkeiten (f.).<br>die Todesfälle (m.).<br>die Unglücksfälle (m.).<br>die Verdrießlichkeiten (f.).<br>die Zänkereien (f.). |
| das Glück, luck,<br>die Gunst, favour,<br>der Kummer, affliction, trouble,<br>die Liebe, love,<br>das Lob, praise,<br>der Mord, murder,<br>der Rath, counsel, advice,<br>(der Rath, councillor,<br>der Raub, robbery,<br>der Segen, blessing,<br>der Streit, quarrel, dispute,<br>der Tod, death, decease,<br>das Unglück, misfortune,<br>der Verdruss, vexation,<br>der Zant, quarrel, |  |

### § 71. *General Remarks on the Adjective Declension.*

As regards the agreement of the Attributive Adjective in *Gender* and *Number* with the Noun it qualifies, German holds a middle position between *French*, where the Adjective agrees both as an Attribute and as a Predicate, and *English* where it never agrees; it differs from both in so far as it agrees in *case* with the Noun qualified by means of case-endings of its own.

The German Declension of the Attributive Adjective differs altogether from the Latin: for whilst in Latin the Declension of the Adjective (1st, 2nd, or 3rd Declension) depends on its stem-suffixes, in German the Declension of an Adjective, be it Masc., Fem., or Neuter, depends not only on the Gender and Number of the Noun qualified, but also on the Determinative word (Article or Pronoun) preceding it:—

(a) The Adjective takes the *Weak* inflections, if preceded by an Article or Pronoun with *Strong* inflections ;

(b) It takes the *Strong* inflections itself, if preceded by *no Article or Pronoun* or by one deficient in inflections (*i.e. Weak*) : thus—

| Article or Pron.    Adjective |              | Article or Pron.    Adjective                |               |
|-------------------------------|--------------|--|---------------|
| Strong :—                     |              | Weak (or no    Strong :—<br>Art. or Pron.):— |               |
| (a) Dieſ-er                   | jung-e Mann. | (b) (Ein)                                    | jung-er Mann. |
| Dieſ-e                        | jung-e Frau. | (Eine)                                       | jung-e Frau.  |
| Dieſ-es                       | jung-e Kind. | (Ein)  | jung-es Kind. |

Now the general law underlying this system of alternation of Strong and Weak Inflections is simply a law of euphony—in other words, the repetition of the same Strong endings in close succession is avoided on account of the grating sound it would produce.

This law is corroborated by the very exceptions to the Rules of Declension: for in the Gen. Sing., Masc. and Neuter, of the Strong Adject. Decl., *-en* is generally substituted for *-es*, because the following Noun itself ends in *-es*.

The fact that, in many cases, as for instance in the Acc. *den jungen Knaben*, this repetition of *-en* is not resented, does not militate against this theory, for the recurrence of *-en* does not grate on the ear as does the repeated *-es*.

The so-called Mixed Adjective Declension is entirely founded on, and strikingly illustrates, this euphonic law :—

| Article Weak—Adjective Strong :— |             | Article Strong—Adjective Weak :— |                |
|----------------------------------|-------------|----------------------------------|----------------|
| Nom. ein                         | gut-er Mann | Gen. ein-es                      | gut-en Mannes  |
| Nom. ein                         | gut-es Kind | Gen. ein-es                      | gut-en Kindes. |

Compare also those Indefinite Pronouns which admit of being used both with or without Case-Inflections :—

*Mancher* brave Mann ; or *Manch* braver Mann !

*Welches* großartige Schauspiel ! or *Welch* großartiges Schauspiel !

## EXERCISES.

### RECAPITULATION OF THE PRINCIPAL RULES ON THE ORDER OF WORDS.

*N.B.*—Only the *most essential* Rules are given. Special Cases and Exceptions will be noticed in due course.

#### A. SIMPLE SENTENCES.

(1) The *Participle Perfect* and the *Infinitive* are, as a rule, placed last :—

*Part. Perf.*  
Ich habe Zeit **gchabt.**  
I have time *had.*  
Er ist hier **gewesen.**  
He is here *been.*  
Du hast ihn **gelobt.**  
You have him *praised.*

*Infinitive.*  
Ich werde Zeit **haben.**  
I shall time *have.*  
Er wird hier **sein.**  
He will here *be.*  
Du wirst ihn **loben.**  
You will him *praise.*

In the *Compound Infinitive*, i.e. *Infinitive Perfect*, composed of *Infinit. Pres.* and *Part. Perf.*, the latter is placed last :—

Er würde es **gethan haben.**  
He would it *done have.*

Sie würde mit uns **gegangen sein.**  
She would with us *gone be.*

(2) *a.* If a Verb has two *Noun-objects*, or if one Object is a *Noun*, and the other a *Pronoun* the *Dative of the Person* is generally placed before the *Accusative of the Thing* :—

Er hat dem Bettler einen Thaler gegeben.  
He has *to the beggar* a dollar given.  
Sie wird uns ihre Bücher gerne leihen.  
She will *to us* her books willingly lend.

*b.* If both Objects of a Verb are *Personal Pronouns*, the *Direct Obj.* (Acc.) is generally placed before the *Indirect* (Dat. or Gen.) :—

Ich werde es ihm morgen sagen.  
I shall *it to him* to-morrow say.

*Obs.* With **mir** and **dir** the acc., **es** is often put last : *Sage mir's.*

(3) *Adverbs* or *Adverbial Phrases* of *time* are placed before other complements :—

**Er wird heute nicht in die Schule gehen.**  
He will to-day not to school go.

(4) A *Complement* (be it an *Adverb*, an *Adverbial Phrase* or *Clause*, or an *Object*) placed at the head of a sentence, *attracts the Verb* \* :—

*Normal* :— **Ich sah** gestern deinen Bruder im Theater.  
I saw yesterday thy brother in the theatre.

*Inverted* :— **Gestern sah** ich deinen Bruder im Theater.  
**Deinen Bruder sah** ich gestern im Theater.  
**Im Theater sah** ich gestern deinen Bruder.

\* It must be well understood that in *Compound Tenses* it is to the *Auxiliary Verb* (and not the Part. Perf. or Infinitive) that the above rules apply :—

**Gestern habe** ich deinen Bruder im Theater gesehen.

*Obs.* 1. *Adverbs* must *not* be placed between the Subject and the Verb :—

*I never* said that. **Das hab' ich nicht** gesagt.

*Obs.* 2. (a) **Nicht** is best placed—

last in *Simple Tenses* of *Simple* (or *inseparable compound*) *Verbs* ;  
in *Compound Tenses*, before the *Infinitive* or *Part. Perf.* :—

**Heute kommt** der Lehrer **nicht**. To-day the master is *not* coming.  
**Gestern ist** der Lehrer **nicht** gekommen.  
**Morgen wird** der Lehrer **nicht** kommen.

(b) With *Separable Compound Verbs*, when they throw their prefix to the end, **nicht** will generally stand before the latter :—

**Mache** das Fenster **nicht** auf (or **mach** **nicht** das Fenster auf).  
Do *not* open the window.

(c) If one particular word in a sentence is emphatically negatived, **nicht** is best placed before that word :—

**Nicht heute** kommt der Lehrer, **sondern morgen**. The master *will come*,  
*not indeed to-day*, but to-morrow.

**Nicht der Lehrer** wird kommen, **sondern...** *Not* the master will come, but...



## B. COMPLEX SENTENCES.

(1) In all *Dependent (Subordinate) Clauses*, the *Verb* (if in a compound tense, the *Auxiliary Verb*) stands *last* :—

(a) *ADJECTIVAL (relative) dependent Clauses* :—  
(introduced by a *Relative* or *Adverbial Pronoun*).

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Das ist ein Schüler,<br>der seine Pflicht thut;<br>den ich belohnt habe;<br>dessen Fortschritte Ihnen zur<br>Ehre gereichen werden. | That is a pupil,<br>who does his duty;<br>whom I have rewarded;<br>whose progress will redound<br>to your credit. |
|---|---|

*Obs.* If the dependent clause is intercalated in the principal sentence, the order remains the same :—

Der Schüler, der seine Pflicht thut, wird belohnt werden.

(b) *SUBSTANTIVAL dependent Clauses* :—

(introduced by the *Subordinate Conjunctions* *daß*, *ob*, or by the *Substantival Relatives* *wer*, *was*.)

|                                     |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| Es freut mich, daß du heute kommst. | I am glad that you come to-day.         |
| Man weiß nicht, ob er kommen wird.  | One does not know whether he will come. |
| Ich wußte wol wer es gethan hatte.  | I knew well who had done it.            |
| Thue was Recht ist.                 | Do what is right.                       |

(c) *ADVERBIAL dependent Clauses* :—

(introduced by *Subordinate Conjunctions of time, place, manner, cause, purpose, condition, concession, &c.*, see § 68 B.).

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Der Hahn kräht, ehe die Sonne am Himmel steht.        | The cock crows before the sun stands in the sky.            |
| Wir arbeiteten, während er im Schatten ausruhte.      | We were working whilst he was resting in the shade.         |
| Es war im Jahr 1812, als Napoleon den Krieg erklärte. | It was in the year 1812, when Napoleon declared war.        |
| Es ist schon lange her, seit er gekommen ist.         | It is a long time since he has come.                        |
| Wissen Sie wann der Zug ankommen wird?                | Do you know when the train will arrive?                     |
| Ich würde es thun, wenn es möglich wäre.              | I should do it, if it were possible.                        |
| Er verreiste früh, damit er den Zug nicht verfehlte.  | He started early in order that he might not miss the train. |

Ich konnte ihn nicht begleiten, da ich zu müde war.  
 I could not accompany him, as I was too tired.  
 Es ist mir unbegreiflich wie es geschehen ist.  
 It is a riddle to me how it has happened.  
 Koblenz liegt wo die Mosel in den Rhein fließt.  
 Coblenz is situated where the Moselle flows into the Rhine.  
 Er will Wein trinken, ob schon er das Fieber hat.  
 He wants to drink wine though he has a fever.

(2) If a *dependent* Clause stands before a *Principal* sentence, the *Verb* of the latter is *attracted*, as it is by a preceding *complement* (see A. 4) : compare—

*Adv. phrase* :—Vor Sonnenaufgang, } verließen wir das Lager.  
*Adv. clause* :—Ehe die Sonne aufging, }

Before sunrise (= before the sun rose), we left the camp.

It follows that—the Verb of the *preceding* dependent clause standing *last*, and the Verb of the *following* principal sentence standing *first*—the two Verbs will come together.

| <i>Dependent Clause.</i> |        |                 | <i>Principal Sentence.</i> |          |                   |
|--------------------------|--------|-----------------|----------------------------|----------|-------------------|
| Conjunct.,               | Subj., | Verb ;          | Verb,                      | Subject, | &c.               |
| Da                       | er     | nicht arbeitet, | soll                       | er       | auch nicht essen. |
| As                       | he     | not works,      | shall                      | he       | also not eat.     |

*Obs.* As a rule, a principal sentence preceded by one or more dependent clauses, will be linked to the latter by the adverbial conjunction *so*, standing as a kind of correlative to the conjunction which introduces the dependent clause :—

Da du krank bist, so mußt du zu Hause bleiben.

Wenn der Sturm heftig wird, so wird er Orkan genannt.

Ob schon er sahm ist, so kann er doch schnell laufen.

(3) A *conditional* or *concessive* dependent clause is often rendered by inversion of the Subject and Verb (in English with *Auxiliary Verbs* only) :—

Hätte ich das gewußt, }  
 instead of— } so wäre ich nicht gekommen.  
 Wenn ich das gewüßt hätte, }

Had I (for—If I had) known that, I should not have come.

But we cannot say with other than *Auxiliary Verbs*, as in German :—

Sprach' er die Wahrheit, so würde ich ihm glauben.  
 If he spoke the truth, I should believe him.

N.B.—Words within *parenthesis* ( ) are to be translated ;  
words within *brackets* [ ] are *not* to be translated.

## THE VERB. INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Synoptic Table of the different forms of the SIMPLE TENSES.*

### I. Weak Conjugation.

(a) *Simple Verb* (§ 35).

*Infinitive* :— **suchen**, to seek ;

*Present* :— ich **suche**.

*Preterite* :—ich **suchte**.

*Imperat.* :— **suche**.

(b) *Compound Verbs* (§§ 56-58).

*Inseparable* :      *Separable* :

**versuchen**, to try ;      **aufsuchen**, to search after.  
ich **versuche** ;      ich **suche** ...**auf**.  
ich **versuchte** ;      ich **suchte** ...**auf**  
**versuche** ;      **suche** ...**auf**.

### II. Strong Conjugation (§§ 43-51).

*Class* :— I.      II.      III.      IV.      V.      VI.

to speak ; to give ; to drive ; to hold ; to tear ; to bend.

*Infinit.* :— **sprechen** ; **geben** ; **fahren** ; **halten** ; **reißen** ; **biegen**.

*Pres.* :—ich **spreche** ; **gebe** ; **fahre** ; **halte** ; **reiße** ; **biege**.

du **sprichst** ; **gibst** ; **fährst** ; **hältst** ; **reißest** ; **biegest**.

er **spricht** ; **gibt** ; **fährt** ; **hält** ; **reißt** ; **biegt**.

*Imper.* :— **sprich** ; **gib** ; **fahre** ; **halte** ; **reiße** ; **biege**.

*Preter.* :—ich **sprach** ; **gab** ; **fuhr** ; **hielt** ; **riß** ; **bog**.

### EXERCISE I. *The Present Tense Indicative.*

The Comparative Table of Tenses (§ 36, p. 51) shows that there is only one form for the *Present* in German. The German *Present* stands not only for the English *Simple Present*, but also—

(a) for the English *Continuous (Imperfect) Present* :—

Die Sonne **geht** eben **auf**.

Im März **geht** die Sonne um sechs  
Uhr **auf**.

Warum **schreiben** Sie nicht?—  
Ich **schreibe** ja.

The sun is just **rising**.

In March the sun **rises** at six  
o'clock.

Why **do** you not **write**?—  
Why, I **do write**.

(b) for the English *Present Perfect*, in describing an action still continuing (as in French—*Depuis quand neige-t-il ?*) :—

Er ist seit vierzehn Tagen hier. He has now been here a fortnight.  
Seit wann schneit es? How long has it been snowing?

(c) for the *Pret.*, for the sake of vividness (*historical Pres.*): as :—  
Und wie er sitzt und wie er lauscht, And as he sat, and hearken'd there,  
Teilt sich die Flut empor; The flood was cleft in twain;  
Aus dem bewegten Wasser rauscht And, lo! a dripping mermaid fair  
Ein seuchtes Weib hervor. Sprang from the troubled main.

GOETHE.

(d) for the *Future*, when the action is considered certain :—  
Heut Abend geh' ich fort. To-night I shall go away.

A. 1. Was machst du da?—Ich schreibe einen Brief ab.  
2. Wann kommt die Post an?—Punkt neun Uhr Morgens.  
3. Warum steht er noch nicht auf?—Weil er noch schläft.  
4. Halten Sie auch Ihr Versprechen?—Verlassen Sie sich darauf.  
5. Verhält es sich denn wirklich so?—Es muß wohl wahr sein, da wir alle übereinstimmen.  
6. Lassen Sie uns eilen!—Warum?—Weil es schon sehr spät ist.  
7. Morgen reise ich nach Bremen, komme aber in acht Tagen wieder und besuche dich gewiß.  
8. Wem man gibt, der schreibt es in den Sand; wem man nimmt, der schreibt's in den Stein.  
9. Wer Anderen eine Grube gräbt, fällt selbst hinein.  
10. Wer sich in Gefahr begibt, verdirbt darin.  
11. Oh' du noch das Lager magst erreichen, ist die Jungfrau dort, und pflanzt in Orleans das Siegeszeichen.

B. 1. Lead melts very easily. 2. Where are you staying now?—*In* (say—auf with *dat.*) the country. 3. Next year we are going *to* (= auf with *acc.*) the world's Exhibition in Paris. 4. The earth moves round the sun in 365 days (see Recap. A. 3, p. 99). 5. This very minute we have received a telegram. 6. What French grammar are you using now?—We are using an historical French grammar. 7. This afternoon we shall go for a drive. 8. When does the first mail-train pass?—At half-past ten. 9. It seldom rains (see Recap. A. 4, Obs. 1) in Egypt, but the Nile regularly overflows the land and spreads fertility over the whole valley. 10. Practice makes *perfect* (say—the master).

**EXERCISE II.** The *Preterite (Imperfect)*, see §. 35, A (2), pp. 48-49.

According to the Comparative Table of German Tenses, § 36, p. 51, the German *Preterite* does duty both for the English *Imperfect* and *Preterite* :—

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Was machten Sie soeben?—                    | What <i>were</i> you <i>doing</i> just now?—                        |
| Ich machte meine Aufgabe.                   | I <i>was</i> <i>doing</i> my exercise.                              |
| Ich las, während er arbeitete.              | I <i>was</i> <i>reading</i> , whilst he <i>was</i> <i>working</i> . |
| Im Winter las ich jeden Abend.              | In winter I <i>used to read</i> every evening.                      |
| Da es regnete, so las ich zum Zeitvertreib. | As it rained, I <i>read</i> to pass the time.                       |
| Warum lasen Sie nicht?—                     | Why <i>did</i> you not read?—                                       |
| Ich las ja.                                 | Why, I <i>did</i> read!   |

A. 1. Sahen sie nicht, daß er verlegen war?—Freilich sah ich es. 2. Wo waren Sie, als das Feuer ausbrach?—Ich war eben im Schlafzimmer. 3. Was thaten Sie, als Sie in Nachen waren?—Ich trank das Wasser zweimal des Tages. 4. Und wie schmeckte es Ihnen?—Ungefähr wie faule Eier. 5. Wie brachten Sie Ihre Zeit zu, wenn das Wetter schlecht war?—Ich spielte Schach. 6. Warum warnten Sie mich nicht bei Zeiten?—Ich warnte Sie ja zu wiederholten Malen.

B. 1. What were your pupils doing just now?—They were translating from English into German. 2. Where *were* (say—*was*) the police, when the thief ran away?—A long way off. 3. How did your nieces spend their time at Blackpool?—They used to collect shells. 4. Where were you, when the storm broke out?—We were just on the top of the mountain. 5. Why were you hesitating?—Because his conduct inspired *us with* (= *to us*) suspicion. 6. How long did you then wait *for* (= *upon*) his arrival?—We waited until half-past nine o'clock. 7. The time passed very quickly. 8. I came, I saw, I conquered. 9. A little bee was flying busily hither and thither, *sucking* (= *and sucked*) honey *from* (= *aus*) all flowers.

10. When Adam delv'd and Eve span,  
Where was then the gentleman?

C. 1. Caesar won the favour of the people by his liberality. 2. For a long time Fabius avoided a battle with Hannibal. 3. Æneas carried his father on his shoulders out of Troy. 4. The sailors sprang overboard, when they saw that the boat was catching fire. 5. Already when a boy Hannibal swore eternal hatred to the Romans. 6. The citizens fought bravely for hearth and home. 7. The trees lost their leaves, and the swallows flew towards the south. 8. The day broke, the sun shone, and the mist disappeared.

*D. Verbs with a double form (Strong or Weak) for the Preterite.*

|                     | <i>Strong ;</i>      | <i>Weak.</i>       |
|---------------------|----------------------|--------------------|
| p. 62. erschrecken, | to be frightened ;   | to frighten.       |
| 65. schaffen,       | to create ;          | to work.           |
| hängen,             | to hang (intrans.) ; | to hang (trans.).  |
| schleifen,          | to grind ;           | to raze.           |
| 67. pflegen,        | to carry on ;        | to nurse.          |
| (er)löschen,        | to be extinguished ; | to extinguish, &c. |

(1st Class.) 1. The rolling of the thunder frightened the child. 2. They were frightened (Active) at the sight of the lightning.

(3rd Class.) 3. God created the world. 4. The labourers worked from early morning till late at (say—in the) night.

(4th Class.) 5. The sign was suspended from the roof. 6. I hung my hat on a peg.

(5th Class.) 7. When the cannibals sharpened their knives, we turned pale. 8. The allied armies of the French and English razed (a) part of the fortress of Sebastopol.

(6th Class.) 9. The besieged garrison carried on negotiations with the besiegers. 10. The sister of mercy nursed the wounded soldiers. 11. The fire went out, and I had to grope my way in the darkness. 12. Who put the fire out?—I did not (say—I not).

## COMPOUND PAST TENSES.

These being formed by means of an *Auxiliary Verb* (*haben* or *sein*) and the *Participle Perfect*, it will be well to remember the different ways of forming the latter:—

## (a) SIMPLE VERBS.

|                     | <i>Infinitive.</i>  | <i>Participle Perfect.</i>                             |
|---------------------|---|--|
| <i>Weak</i> :—      | { <i>setz-en</i> , to set ;<br><i>wart-en</i> , to wait ; | <i>ge=setz-t</i> , set.<br><i>ge=wart-et</i> , waited. |
| <i>Strong</i> :—    | <i>sing-en</i> , to sing ;                                | <i>ge=sung-en</i> ,* sung.                             |
| <i>Anomalous</i> :— | <i>bring-en</i> , to bring ;                              | <i>ge=brach-t</i> , brought.                           |

\* Again, these *Strong* forms of the *Part. Perf.* may be subdivided according to the vowel-changes they undergo, into—

|  |  |
|--|--|
| I. (a) <i>Infin.</i> <i>binden</i> ; <i>P.P.</i> <i>gebunden</i> . | V. (a) <i>Infin.</i> <i>beißen</i> ; <i>P.P.</i> <i>gebissen</i> . |
| (b) „ <i>rinnen</i> ; „ <i>geronnen</i> .                          | (b) „ <i>bleiben</i> ; „ <i>geblieben</i> .                        |
| (c) „ <i>bergen</i> ; „ <i>geborgen</i> .                          | VI. (a) „ <i>biegen</i> ; „ <i>gebogen</i> .                       |
| II. „ <i>treten</i> ; „ <i>getreten</i> .                          | (b) „ <i>stießen</i> ; „ <i>gestoßen</i> .                         |
| III., IV. „ <i>fahren</i> ; „ <i>gefahren</i> .                    |  |

## (b) COMPOUND VERBS.

(1) *Inseparable.*

|                     | <i>Infinitive.</i>  | <i>Part. Perf.</i>                     |
|---------------------|---|--|
| <i>Weak</i> :—      | { <i>versetzen</i> , to displace ;<br><i>erwarten</i> , to expect ; | <i>versetzt</i> .<br><i>erwartet</i> . |
| <i>Strong</i> :—    | <i>besingen</i> , to sing (trans.) ;                                | <i>besungen</i> .                      |
| <i>Anomalous</i> :— | <i>verbringen</i> , to spend ;                                      | <i>verbracht</i> .                     |

(2) *Separable.*

| <i>Infinitive.</i>                    | <i>Part. Perf.</i>    |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>ab=setzen</i> , to depose ;        | <i>ab=gesetzt</i> .   |
| <i>auf=warten</i> , to wait on ;      | <i>auf=gewartet</i> . |
| <i>vor=singen</i> , to set a melody ; | <i>vor=gesungen</i> . |
| <i>ab=bringen</i> , to dissuade ;     | <i>ab=gebracht</i> .  |

Compare also, with regard to the order of words—

*Normal* :— *Ich habe ihn gestern besucht.* } In a *Principal* or *Co-*  
*Inverted* :— *Gestern habe ich ihn besucht.* } *ordinate Clause.*  
*Transposed* :— *Du weißt, daß ich ihn besucht habe.* In a *Dependent*  
*Clause.*

EXERCISE III. The *Present Perfect* and the *Pluperfect Indicative*; formed by means of the Auxiliary Verb **haben**, to *have*.

(1) It must be borne in mind that German uses the same form to express *simple* and *continuous* action (see p. 51):—

I have (had) *learnt*.  
I have (had) *been learning*. } Ich habe (hatte) **gelernt**

(2) The German *Present Perfect* is, as a rule, used—

(a) as in English, to express a past action, with reference to the *present* (i.e. a past action, the consequences of which still make themselves felt in the present):—

Du **hast** deine Pflicht nicht **gethan**. You *have* not *done* your duty.

(b) as in French, but contrary to English usage, to express an action *simply past*, without any reference to the present:—

Wie **haben** Sie vorige Woche Ihre Zeit **zugebracht**? How *did* you *spend* your time last week?

Ich **habe** eine ganze Stunde auf Sie **gewartet**. I *waited* for you a whole hour. (Je vous ai attendu une heure entière.)

**Haben** Sie wol **geschlafen**? Did you *sleep* well?  
Gott **hat** die Welt **erschaffen**. God *created* the world.

(but— In sechs Tagen **sah** Gott Himmel und Erde.)

Der König Karl am Steuer **saß**, King Charles sat at the rudder,  
Der **hat** kein Wort **gesprochen**. He never *spoke* a word.

A. 1. Warum haben Sie nicht an Ihre Frau Mutter geschrieben?—Ich wußte nicht, daß sie einen Brief von mir erwartete. 2. Wie lange hat es heut Morgen geregnet?—Es hat den ganzen Morgen geregnet. 3. Habe ich es Ihnen nicht gesagt?—Ja, das haben Sie in der That. 4. Wie hat es Ihnen in Paris gefallen?—Es hat mir dort sehr gut gefallen. 5. Schiller hat unter allen deutschen Dichtern am meisten die Zuneigung der Jugend gewonnen. 6. Ich hatte kaum den Fuß aus der Thür gesetzt, als es anfang zu regnen. 7. Was ich gesagt habe, bleibt gesagt. 8. Der große Cäsar hat mit den Teutonen gekämpft, sie besiegt und doch in ihrem eignen Lande nichts ausgerichtet.

B. 1. I spent a whole year in that delightful country. 2. How long have you been waiting for me?—Half an hour. 3. How did you spend your time meanwhile?—I read the advertisements in your newspaper. 4. Lucullus



brought the cherry from Asia to Europe. 5. How did he like Berlin?—Not at all. 6. How long has it been snowing?—Ever since half-past eight o'clock. 7. Did he not tell *her so* (say—*it to her*)?—Yes, he told her so several times. 8. Hardly had I reached (*zurückgeen*) my seventh year, when immediately the Seven Years' War broke out. 9. The comrades of Ulysses would not return to their ships because they had tasted (of) the lotus. 10. No sooner had I said this, when she began to cry.

EXERCISE IV. Verbs conjugated with the Auxiliary Verb *sein*, to be, in the Compound Tenses; see § 41, pp. 56, 57.

Amongst the Verbs which are conjugated with *sein*, there are many that are compounded with the prefixes *ent-*, *er-*, *ver-*, *zer-* (*inseparable*) and *ab-*; *auf-*, *aus-*, *ein-*, &c. (*separable*), though the Simple Verbs with which they are compounded, take *haben* :—

ich *habe* geschlafen, I have slept. ich *bin* eingeschlafen, I have fallen asleep.

ich *habe* gewacht, I have watched. ich *bin* erwacht, I awoke.  
die Lilie *hat* geblüht, the lily has bloomed. die Lilie *ist* verblüht, the lily is faded.

A. 1. Er *ist* von seiner langen Reise erst gestern zurückgekommen. 2. *Ist* die Sonne schon untergegangen? 3. Ich *bin* dir auf dem Fuße gefolgt. 4. Was *ist* dir begegnet? Du siehst so traurig aus! 5. Der arme Dichter *ist* Hungers gestorben. 6. Wo waren Sie in Paris abgestiegen?—In einem Gasthof von erstem Range. 7. Die Schlacht *ist* verloren gegangen, und viele Tausende sind auf dem Schlachtfeld geblieben. 8. *Ist* Ihr Unternehmen gelungen?—Nein, es *ist* gescheitert. 9. *Ist* das Wetterglas gestiegen?—Im Gegentheil, es *ist* sehr tief gefallen.

B. 1. Have you ever been in Italy? 2. We have been riding the whole day. 3. Where have you met him? 4. The general has recovered from his wounds. 5. An accident has happened to him. 6. The last rose of summer has faded away. 7. As their plan had not succeeded, they were in great distress. 8. He has fallen asleep never to awake again. 9. When the sun had risen the stars faded. 10. Has anything happened?—Yes, (the) Queen Anne is dead.

## THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Synoptic Table of the Different Forms  
of the SUBJUNCTIVE as compared with the INDICATIVE*

## I. PRESENT.

## (a) AUXILIARY VERBS (§§ 37, 38).

| Indicat.         | Subjunct. | Indicat.      | Subjunct.    |
|------------------|-----------|---------------|--------------|
| hab-en, to have. |           | sei-n, to be. |              |
| ich hab-e,       | hab-e.    | bin,          | sei.         |
| du hab-st,       | hab-est.  | bist,         | sei-(e)(ft). |
| er ha-t,         | hab-e.    | ist,          | sei.         |
| wir hab-en,      | hab-en.   | find,         | sei-en.      |
| ihr hab-(e)t,    | hab-et.   | find,         | sei-et.      |
| sie hab-en,      | hab-en.   | find,         | sei-en.      |

## (b) WEAK VERBS (§§ 40, 41).

| Indicat.          | Subjunct. |
|-------------------|-----------|
| lieb-en, to love. |           |
| lieb-e,           | lieb-e.   |
| lieb-st,          | lieb-est. |
| lieb-t,           | lieb-e.   |
| lieb-en,          | lieb-en.  |
| lieb-t,           | lieb-et.  |
| lieb-en,          | lieb-en.  |

## (c) STRONG VERBS (§§ 43-50).

|   |  |
|---|--|
| sing-en, to sing (with-<br>out vowel-change). | brech-en, to break (with<br>vowel-change in 2nd<br>& 3rd p.s. Indic.). |
| ich sing-e,                                   | sing-e.  |
| du sing-st,                                   | sing-est.  |
| er sing-t,                                    | sing-e.  |
| wir sing-en,                                  | sing-en.   |
| ihr sing-t,                                   | sing-et.   |
| sie sing-en,                                  | sing-en.   |
| ich sing-e,                                   | sing-e.  |
| du sing-st,                                   | sing-est.  |
| er sing-t,                                    | sing-e.  |
| wir sing-en,                                  | sing-en.   |
| ihr sing-t,                                   | sing-et.   |
| sie sing-en,                                  | sing-en.   |

## (d) AUXILIARY VERBS OF MOOD (§ 52).

|  |
|--|
| fönn-en, can (with vow-<br>el change in 1st, 2nd,<br>& 3rd p.s. Indic.). |
| fann,  |
| fann-st,   |
| fann,  |
| fönn-en,   |
| fönn-t,  |
| fönn-en,   |
| fönn-e,  |
| fönn-est.  |
| fönn-e.  |
| fönn-en.   |
| fönn-et.   |
| fönn-en.   |

## II. PRETERITE (IMPERFECT).

## (a) AUXILIARY VERBS (§§ 37, 38).

|             |         |      |        |
|-------------|---------|------|--------|
| ich hatt-e, | hätt-e. | war, | wär-e. |
|-------------|---------|------|--------|

## (b) WEAK VERBS (§§ 40, 41).

|          |              |
|----------|--------------|
| lieb-te, | lieb-(e)t-e. |
|----------|--------------|

## (c) STRONG AND ANOMALOUS VERBS.

(without vowel-modifi-  
cation).

|                     |                              |
|---------------------|------------------------------|
|                     | fall-en, to fall.            |
| ich                 | fiel,               fiel-e.  |
| du                  | fiel-st,           fiel-est. |
| er                  | fiel,               fiel-e.  |
| wir                 | fiel-en,           fiel-en.  |
| &c., see §§ 48, 49. |                              |

(with vowel-modification.)

|                    |           |
|--------------------|-----------|
| sing-en, to sing.  |           |
| sang,              | säng-e.   |
| sang-ft,           | säng-est. |
| sang,              | säng-e.   |
| sang-en,           | säng-en.  |
| &c., see §§ 45-47. |           |

|                        |            |
|------------------------|------------|
| sterb-en, to die.      |            |
| starb,                 | stürb-e.   |
| starb-st,              | stürb-est. |
| starb,                 | stürb-e.   |
| starb-en,              | stürb-en.  |
| &c., see §§ 45 (b, c). |            |

## EXERCISE V. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN PRINCIPAL CLAUSES.

I. The *Present Subjunctive* is used in *Principal Clauses*—(a) As an *Imperative* or *Optative* : as,

|                                 |                             |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Lang lebe (es lebe) der König ! | Long live the king !        |
| Gehen wir !                     | Let us go !                 |
| Seien wir Gott dankbar !        | Let us be grateful to God ! |
| Möge er bald genesen !          | May he soon recover !       |

(b) to express *Supposition* or *Concession* : as,

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Die Figur a, b, c, d, sei ein rechtwinkeliges Viereck. | Let the figure a, b, c, d, be a rectangular quadrangle.                |
| Er sei wer er wolle.                                   | { Whosoever he be (or, may be).  |
| Er habe Recht oder Unrecht, das ist mir ganz einerlei. | { No matter who he may be !  |
| Er thue was er wolle.                                  | { Whether he be (lit. have) right or wrong is quite indifferent to me. |
|  | { Whatever he may do.  |

II. The *Preterite (Imperfect) Subjunctive* is used—(a) in *Optative* sentences (i.e. to express a *wish, desire, &c.*) : as,

|                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| { Hätte ich nur Geld !              | Had I only money !                         |
| { Hätte er doch Geduld gehabt !     | If only (would that) he had had patience ! |
| { Wäre er doch hier !               | If only he were here !                     |
| { Wäre er doch hier gewesen !       | If only he had been here !                 |
| { Käme er doch endlich !            | If only he would come at last !            |
| { Wäre er doch gekommen !           | If only he had come !                      |
| Es wäre zu wünschen !               | It were to be wished !                     |
| Sch lernte gern deutsch ! or—       | { I would fain learn German !              |
| Sch würde gern deutsch lernen ! *   |  |
| Sch säh' ihn gerne wieder !         | { I should like to see him again !         |
| Sch würde ihn gerne wiedersehen ! * |  |

\* In optative clauses the *conditional* form is allowable if qualified by *gern(e)*.

(b) in *Conditional* and *Concessive* sentences : compare :—

| <i>Indicative :</i>                        | <i>Conditional :</i>   |
|--|--|
| Ich bin immer froh, wenn ich zu Hause bin. | Ich wäre froh, wenn ich zu Hause wäre.                                       |
| I am always glad, when I am at home.       | I should be glad, if I were at home.   |
| Ich war glücklich, als ich hier war.       | Ich wäre froh gewesen, }<br>Ich würde froh gewesen sein, }                   |
| I was happy, when I was here.              | wenn ich hier gewesen wäre.<br>I should have been happy, if I had been here. |

A. 1. Wozu riethest du in diesem Falle ?—Ich riethe dir zu schweigen. 2. Wie wäre es wenn Sie mich endlich bezahlten ?—Das wäre Ihnen wohl sehr erwünscht. 3. Was sagten die faulen Mägde ?—Wenn der Hahn nicht wäre, so dürften wir länger schlafen. 4. Man dünkte kaum, daß es möglich sei. 5. Ich sähe ihn gerne wieder. 6. Wer einen Hasen im Busen trägt, der stiche ! 7. Wer thäte das nicht ? 8. Die Sache dürfte (or möchte) sich doch anders verhalten. 9. Er wäre beinahe zu spät gekommen. 10. Wer wüßte das nicht ?

11. Ach, wäre Jedermann so arbeitsam wie er,  
So gäb's im ganzen Lande keine Bettler mehr !

B. 1. He would be in good health, if he were (*Pret. Subj.*) more frugal. 2. Would it not be better to be silent ?—Of course. 3. Would you ever have believed it ?—No, never. 4. Would you have gone in my place ?—Perhaps. 5. I, for my part, should not have done it. 6. May they soon return ! 7. I should willingly take you with me. 8. Oh, if I had had money enough ! 9. We would willingly go with them, if we had (*Pret. Subj.*) time. 10. They would have brought their friends with (them) if we had invited (*Plupf. Subj.*) them. 11. Let him protest his innocence as much as he likes (say—will), we don't believe him. 12. Let them rejoice. 13. Let *a, b, c, d*, be an isosceles triangle. 14. I should never have believed that.

EXERCISE VI. *The Subjunctive Mood in Dependent Clauses.*

The Subjunctive is used in *Dependent Clauses* (*oratio obliqua*) to express—

(a) an *Indirect Statement* (enunciation), after Verbs of *saying, declaring, believing*, and the like:—

Man sagt (behauptet, glaubt), **daß** People say (assert, believe)  
er schuldig sei. (that) he is guilty.

(b) an *Indirect Question* (interrogation) after Verbs of *asking doubting, &c.*—

Er fragt mich,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ob es wahr sei.} \\ \text{wer ich sei.} \end{array} \right.$  He asks me  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{whether it is true.} \\ \text{who I am.} \end{array} \right.$

(c) an *Indirect Command* (petition), after Verbs of *commanding, entreating, &c.*:—

Er will **daß** ich es thue.  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{He wishes that I should do it.} \\ \text{He wants me to do it.} \end{array} \right.$

*Obs. 1.* An *Indirect Statement* may also be expressed by a *Co-ordinate Clause* (the Verb of which *must* be in the Subjunctive):—

Man sagt er sei krank.  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{They say (that) he is ill.} \\ \text{(Instead of daß er krank sei).} \end{array} \right.$   $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{He is said to be ill.} \end{array} \right.$

*Obs. 2.* Contrary to the usual sequence of tenses, an *Indirect Statement* (Question, or Command) depending on a *Verb in a Past tense*, may, in German, stand in the *Present tense*, i.e. the tense that would be used if the statement were *direct*; compare—

*Direct.*

*Indirect.*

Er sagt:—Ich bin verantwortlich. Er sagt er sei (he is) verantwortlich.

Er sagte:—Ich bin verantwortlich. Er sagte er sei (he was) verantwortlich.

(a) Er gestand  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{daß er es gethan habe (hätte).} \\ \text{er habe (hätte) es gethan.} \end{array} \right.$  He admitted  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{that he had done it.} \\ \text{having done it.} \end{array} \right.$

(b) Er fragte mich,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ob es wahr sei (wäre).} \\ \text{was ich wolle (wollte).} \end{array} \right.$  He asked  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{whether it was true.} \\ \text{what I wanted.} \end{array} \right.$

(c) Er wollte, **daß** ich es thue (thäte). He wished  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{that I should do it.} \\ \text{or, me to do it.} \end{array} \right.$

Er bestand darauf, **daß** ich gehe (ginge). He insisted upon my *going* (lit. *upon-it that I go*).

Turn the following *direct* quotations into *indirect* ones :—

1. Ein Schriftsteller sagt: „Der Mensch hat leicht zu viel, aber nie genug.“ 2. Kopernikus bewies: „Die Erde bewegt sich um die Sonne.“ 3. Sokrates gestand: „Je älter ich werde, desto mehr sehe ich ein, daß ich nichts weiß.“ 4. Der Offizier berichtete: „Ein Ueberfall wird kaum gelingen, da der Feind auf der Hut ist.“

A. 1. Was hat er Sie gefragt?—Er fragte mich wer ich sei. 2. Was haben Sie ihm geantwortet?—Ich antwortete ich sei ein Matrose. 3. Warum warteten Sie nicht?—Wir glaubten Sie hätten uns vergessen. 4. Was sagten die Leute?—Sie sagten Sie dürften uns nicht hineinlassen. 5. Ich wünschte er käme bald. 6. Uns dünkt die Erde stehe still und die Sonne bewege sich. 7. Boll Staunen erzählt ein römischer Schriftsteller, der im germanischen Lande gewesen war, von den Wohnsitzen der Chauken, wie die Meeresflut das Land dort weithin überschwemme, die Hütten der Menschen auf Erdhügeln ständen, wo sie ihr Leben dahinbrächten, Seefahrern gleich, wenn die Flut eintritt, und Schiffbrüchigen gleich, wenn sie zurückweicht; wie diese Menschen sich nicht einmal Vieh halten könnten, da weit umher kein Strauch gedeihe, und sich deshalb von Fischen nährten, die sie in schlechten Netzen, aus Schilf und Sumpfgraß geflochten, einfingen, während Regentwasser ihr einziges Getränk sei.

B. 1. My nephew writes to me that he is ill. 2. They assured me that it was true. 3. They asked me who I was. 4. She says her brother has arrived. 5. Our master wishes me to answer at once. 6. My medical man believes I am ill; so do I (say—and I also, or, that believe I also). 7. My medical man believes I am ill; but I don't (say—that believe I however not). 8. Let a man ask himself what he is best fit for (what...for = wozu...). 9. The stranger asked whether anybody was at home. 10. He wanted to know why I had not come. 11. The messenger reported that the enemies were defeated and had retreated with great loss.

C. Turn the *direct* quotations in the following extract into *indirect* ones:—

Vor der Schlacht bei Leuthen sprach Friedrich der Große zu den Generalen seines Heeres: „Es ist euch bekannt daß es dem Prinzen Karl von Lothringen gelungen ist Schweidnitz zu erobern, den Herzog von Bayern zu schlagen und sich zum Meister von Breslau zu machen, während ich gezwungen war, den Fortschritten der Franzosen und Reichsvölker Einhalt zu thun. Ein Theil von Schlesien ist dadurch verloren gegangen und meine Widerwärtigkeiten würden aufs Höchste gestiegen sein, setze ich nicht ein unbegrenztes Vertrauen in euren Mut, eure Standhaftigkeit und eure Vaterlandsliebe, die ihr bei so vielen Gelegenheiten mir bewiesen habt.“

#### EXERCISE VII. *The Subjunctive Mood* (continued).

The SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD may \* be used in—

*Consecutive, Comparative, and Final* Clauses, introduced by the Sub-ordinate Conjunctions *so daß, so that; ohne daß, without (that); als daß, than that; ehe, bevor, before, ere; daß (auf daß) damit, in order that*, to denote an expected (or unexpected) result, an uncertain contingency, or a purpose not accomplished:— \*

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Sprich so daß man dich verstehe.                                  | Speak so that one may understand you.                                  |
| Das Schiff ging unter, ohne daß man ihm Hilfe gebracht hätte.     | The ship sank without any one having assisted it.                      |
| Es war schlimmer als ich geglaubt hätte.                          | The case was worse than I should have supposed.                        |
| Ehre Vater und Mutter, auf daß (damit) du lange lebest auf Erden. | Honour thy father and thy mother, that thou mayest live long on earth. |
| Ziele gut, daß du den Apfel treffe.                               | Aim well, so that you may hit the apple.                               |

Thus also in *Adjectival* Clauses introduced by a *Relative Pronoun*, if the result is considered uncertain or impossible—

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Ich suche vergebens Einen, der mir helfe * | In vain do I look for some one who would help me. |
|--|---|

\* The alternative between the use of the *Subjunctive* or *Indicative* depends entirely on the sense expressed or implied in the principal clause, i.e. the probability or uncertainty of the expected result or contingency; compare—

Er ist zu stolz, als daß er mit uns umgeht (or umginge).  
He is too proud to keep company with us.

A. 1. Wir eilten damit wir zu rechter Zeit ankämen.  
 2. Die See geht zu hoch als daß man einen Lotfen aussetzen könnte.  
 3. Niemand war in der Nähe, der mir hätte beistehen können.  
 4. Wo du auch seist, vergiß nicht daß Gott dich sieht.  
 5. Der Versucher schleicht umher und sucht welchen er verschlinge.  
 6. Wähle keinen zum Vertrauten, du habest ihn denn erprobt.  
 7. Etwas muß der Mensch haben, dem er seine Neigung zuwendet, dessen er sich freuen könne, worauf er sich stütze.  
 8. Sneewittchen erzählte den Zwergen, daß seine Mutter es hätte umbringen wollen; der Jäger hätte ihm aber das Leben geschenkt, und da wär' es gelaufen den ganzen Tag, bis es endlich ihr Häuschen gefunden hätte.

9. Sehe jeder wo er bleibe,  
 Sehe jeder wie ers treibe,

Und wer steht daß er nicht falle.—GOETHE.

10. Was die heulende Tiefe da unten verhehle,  
 Das erzählt keine lebende glückliche Seele.—SCHILLER.

B. 1. I shall take my aim well, so that I may hit the bull's eye. 2. Mind you don't fall! 3. He behaves as if he were the master. 4. The brook is too deep to be *forded* (say—*than that one could ford it*). 5. He saves in order that he may not suffer want in old age. 6. I found him too busy for me to venture (say—*than that I had...ventured*) to disturb him. 7. Give me your arm, lest I should lose you in the throng. 8. No one was near who could have assisted me. 9. Many animals are too small for us to see them with [the] naked eye (*plur*). 10. The doubt whether he had acted properly tormented him day and night.



EXERCISE VIII. *The Subjunctive Mood* (continued).

1. The *Subjunctive Preterite* or *Pluperfect* is used in *Conditional* Clauses introduced by *wenn, if, wenn auch, even though, als ob, as if*, to denote *what would be or happen* (or, *would have been or happened*), if the hypothesis (supposition) expressed in the principal sentence were real: compare—

**Dependent Clause;****Principal Sentence.**

(a) INDICATIVE ;

INDICATIVE,

*expressing possible contingency :*     *stating a probable or possible result :*

*Wenn ich zu Hause bin,  
When (if) I am at home,*

*so bin ich glücklich.  
I am happy.*

(b) SUBJUNCTIVE,

SUBJUNCTIVE OR CONDITIONAL,

*expressing an unreal or rejected  
contingency :—*

*denoting an imaginary con-  
clusion :—*

*Wenn ich zu Hause wäre,  
or, Wäre ich zu Hause,\*  
If I were at home,  
or, Were I at home,  
(Si j'étais chez moi,*

*so wäre ich glücklich ; or—  
so würde ich glücklich sein.  
I should be happy.  
je serais heureux.)*

Thus also with the Verb in the *Pluperfect* :—

*Wenn ich da gewesen wäre, } { so wäre ich froh gewesen ; or,  
or, Wäre ich da gewesen,\* } { so würde ich froh gewesen sein.*

As in English, the *Principal Sentence* may stand first :—

**Principal Sentence ;****Dependent Clause.**

*Ich wäre froh, or— }  
Ich würde froh sein, }*

*wenn ich zu Hause wäre.*

*Ich ginge, or— }  
Ich würde gehen, }  
I should go,*

*wenn ich Zeit hätte.  
if I had time.*

*Ich wäre gegangen, or— }  
Ich würde gegangen sein, }  
I should have gone,*

*wenn ich Zeit gehabt hätte.  
if I had had time.*

\* See introductory remarks on Order of words, B (c) 3, p. 101.

2. Here may be classed the use of the Subjunctive in *Concessive* Clauses introduced—

(a) by the Conjunctions **wenn auch, wenn gleich, ob, although, even though (if)**—but generally only if the Verb is in the *Pres.* or *Plupf.*)—

Wir fürchten uns nicht, wenn      We are not afraid, though the  
gleich die Welt unterginge.      world were to go to ruin.

or (b) by the Relative Pronouns or Adverbs—

**wer auch, welcher auch, whoever, whosoever,**  
**was auch, whatever; wie auch, however:—**

Werer auch sei, was er auch thue,      Whoever he be, whatever he  
ich werbe ihn nicht fürchten.      may do, I shall not fear  
him.

*Obs.* The hypothesis on which the Subjunctive depends may be contained in an adverbial phrase, or simply implied:—

Dñne dich vermöchte ich nichts.      Without your assistance I could do  
nothing.

Ich hätte es nicht so gemacht;      I should not have done it thus:  
(i.e. wenn ich es zu machen hätte).      (i.e. if I had to do it).

A. 1. Du würdest bescheidener sein, wenn du öfter an deine Fehler dächtest. 2. Und wäre nicht der Bauer, so hättest du kein Brot. 3. Warum gehst du nicht nach Hause? —Ich ginge gern, wenn ich nur dürfte. 4. Der Mensch ist frei, und sei er in Ketten geboren. 5. Das Dampfboot setzt seinen Weg fort, der Wind mag kommen woher er wolle. 6. Hätte die Rahe Flügel, kein Sperling wär in der Luft mehr. 7. Hätte jeder was er wünscht, wer hätte noch was?

B. 1. If I were a bird, I would fly to thee! 2. Had I known this, I should have acted differently. 3. Were you my brother, I could not do it for you. 4. I would have finished the work, had it been possible. 5. If I had not been a witness of the deed, I should not believe it. 6. If I were not Alexander, I should like to be Diogenes. 7. He were no lion, were not Romans hinds. 8. Be he ne'er so vile, this day shall gentle his condition. 9. It would be well, if all men felt how surely ruin awaits those who abuse their gifts and powers.

## EXERCISE IX. THE IMPERATIVE.

## (a) Auxiliary Verbs.

|                          |              |             |               |
|--------------------------|--------------|-------------|---------------|
|                          | to have,     | to be,      | to become.    |
| <i>Infinitive</i> :—     | haben,       | sein,       | werden.       |
| <i>Imperat. Sing.</i> :— | <b>habe,</b> | <b>sei,</b> | <b>werde.</b> |

## (b) Weak Verbs.

|                          |                |                     |                    |
|--------------------------|----------------|---------------------|--------------------|
|                          | <i>Simple.</i> | <i>Inseparable.</i> | <i>Separable.</i>  |
|                          | to wait,       | to expect,          | to attend on.      |
| <i>Infinitive</i> :—     | warten,        | erwarten,           | auf-warten.        |
| <i>Imperat. Sing.</i> :— | <b>warte,</b>  | <b>erwarte,</b>     | <b>warte...auf</b> |

## (c) Strong Verbs.

|                     |               |                           |               |              |               |
|---------------------|---------------|---------------------------|---------------|--------------|---------------|
|                     | I.            | I (c)                     | III.          | V.           | VI.           |
|                     | (a & b)       | & II.                     | & IV.         | (a & b)      | (a & b)       |
|                     | to sing,      | break, give,              | drive,        | bite,        | offer.        |
| <i>Inf.</i> :       | singen,       | brechen, geben,           | fahren,       | beißen,      | bieten.       |
| <i>Imp. Sing.</i> : | <b>singe,</b> | <b>brich, gib (gieb),</b> | <b>fahre,</b> | <b>beiß,</b> | <b>biete.</b> |

*Obs.* In German the *Past Participle* is very often used in the sense of the *Imperative* : as,

|                                |                                |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Rein gehalten dein Gewand,     | Rein von Erbschmutz die Hand ; |
| Rein gehalten Mund und Hand,   | Sohn, die äußere Keinlichkeit  |
| Rein das Kleid von Erbschmutz, | Ist der Innern Unterpfand ! *  |

\* Compare the English proverb : " Cleanliness is next to godliness."

*A. Proverbs* :—1. Bete als hülfe kein Arbeiten, arbeite als hülfe kein Beten. 2. Erst besinn's, dann beginn's (abbr. of es). 3. Thue Recht und scheue Niemand. 4. Steh auf dich und die deinen, darnach schilt mich und die meinen. 5. Wer da steht, sehe zu, daß er nicht falle. 6. Sage nicht Alles was du weißt, aber wisse immer was du sagst.—7. Sieh, da liegt ein Stück von einem Hufeisen, heb' es auf und steck' es ein. 8. Bringen Sie unsere Briefe mit. 9. Hier laßt uns unsere Zelte aufschlagen. 10. Gehab' dich wol (Lebewol), mein Freund. 11. Trau, schau, wem !

*B.* 1. Give me a glass of wine. 2. Do not speak so loud. 3. Let us stay here. 4. See there, what a beautiful rain-bow ! 5. Take this piece of bread and break it. 6. Help me (*Dat.*). 7. Do not throw your money away. 8. Do not read so many novels. 9. Do not forget me (*Genit.*). 10. Eat a little of this excellent cheese. 11. Copy this exercise at once. 12. Do not give up your undertaking.

EXERCISE X. THE PURE INFINITIVE (WITHOUT *zu*).

The *Pure Infinitive* (i.e. without *zu*) is used—

(a) *substantively* (with or without Article) as the *Subject* or *Predicative Complement* of a sentence (in the *Genitive Case* if used with the Def. Art. as the complement of a Noun or Adj.):—

Das Schwimmen stärkt die Glieder. *Swimming* strengthens the limbs.

Geben ist seliger als nehmen. *To give* is more blessed than to receive.

Die erste Wirkung des Lügens ist Mißtrauen. The first effect of *lying* is distrust.

(b) as the *Complement* of an *Auxiliary Verb of Mood*; and of the following Verbs (mostly Verbs of *Perception*):—

|                  |                   |                     |
|------------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| fühlen, to feel. | lehren, to teach. | lassen, to let.     |
| hören, to hear.  | lernen, to learn. | machen, to make.    |
| sehen, to see.   | helfen, to help.  | nennen, to call.    |
| gehen, to go.    | heißen, to bid.   | bleiben, to remain. |

Wir können gut tanzen.\*

We can dance well.

Er kann es thun.\*

He can (knows how to) do it.

Der General ließ die Stadt

The general ordered the town

bestürmen.†

to be stormed.

Wir sehen die Sterne leuchten.

We see the stars shining.

Ich lerne zeichnen.

I learn drawing.

\* Notice carefully that the Infinitive complement of a Verb used in a simple tense is placed at the end.

† Notice the use of the Infinitive *Active* (instead of the English *Passive*) after *lassen*; cf. Lesson 18.

For full particulars on the Infinit. after *aux. verbs of mood*, see Exs. 16-18.

A. 1. Haben Sie ihn singen hören (§ 51, *Obs.*)?—Singen nicht, aber schreien. 2. Schwimmen Sie gerne?—Ja, das Schwimmen ist mein größtes Vergnügen. 3. Wollen Sie mit mir spazieren gehen?—Nein, vor acht Uhr darf ich nicht ausgehen. 4. Wann werden Ihre Kinder schlafen gehen?—Um ein viertel auf zehn. 5. Wann lernt man seine Freunde kennen?—Wenn man im Unglück ist. 6. Warum wollen Sie mir nicht antworten?—Schweigen ist ja auch eine Antwort. 7. Hörtest du nicht die Balken krachen?—Ja, und ich sah das Schiff sinken.

B. 1. We heard you talk. 2. To err is human. 3. Necessity teaches the lame [man] to dance. 4. Have you been able to see him? 5. They went for a walk. 6. At what o'clock shall you go to bed (to sleep)?—At half-past seven. 7. I had to leave this town. 8. Do you know this man?—Yes, we have learned to know him. 9. Speaking is silver, silence is gold. 10. Let us go for a walk together. 11. He kept me waiting [for] a whole hour. 12. It is *worth remarking* (say—*remarking worth*) that the *Active Infinitive* is to be used in German after verbs of ordering.

EXERCISE XI. THE INFINITIVE WITH *zu* (SUPINE).I. *Simple Verbs.*

|                             |                             |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| The pleasure of reading it. | <i>In order to read it.</i> |
| Das Vergnügen es zu lesen.  | Um es zu lesen.             |

II. *Compound Verbs.*(1) *Inseparable.*

The pleasure of selecting.  
Das Vergnügen zu *erlesen*.  
*In order to select well.*  
Um gut zu *erlesen*.

(2) *Separable.*

The pleasure of reading it aloud.  
Das Vergnügen es *vorzulesen*.  
*In order to read it aloud.*  
Um es *vorzulesen*.

The *Infinitive* with *zu* (answering not only to the *Infinitive* with *to*, but also to the *Gerund* in English), stands—

(a) as a *Complement* of a *Noun* or *Adjective* (Cp. Lat. Supine : *horribile dictu*) : as,

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Es ist Zeit nach Hause <i>zu</i> gehen.                    | It is <i>time to go</i> home.                           |
| Er hat nichts <i>zu</i> essen.                             | He has <i>nothing to eat</i> .                          |
| Es ist leicht <i>zu</i> sagen, aber schwer <i>zu</i> thun. | It is <i>easy to say</i> , but <i>difficult to do</i> . |

(b) as a *Complement* after all *Verbs* (other than *Auxiliary Verbs* of *Mood* and *Verbs* of *Perception* ; see Ex. X.) : as,

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Er begann sogleich <i>zu</i> sprechen.   | He <i>began immediately to speak</i> . |
| Es fängt an sehr stark <i>zu</i> regnen. | It <i>begins to rain</i> very fast.    |

(c) after the *Auxiliary Verbs* *haben* and *sein*, to express *necessity* or *possibility* (Cp. Lat. Gerundive : *Laudanda est virtus*) : as,

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Es ist allerdings <i>zu</i> bedauern.          | It is of course <i>to be regretted</i> .   |
| Ich habe noch zwei Briefe <i>zu</i> schreiben. | I have still two letters <i>to write</i> . |

(d) after the *Prepositions*: *um*, in order; *ohne*, without; *anstatt* (*statt*), instead of; *daran* (compd. of *an dem*), about: as,

Man ißt *um* zu leben.

One eats *in order to* live.

Helfst euch selbst, *anstatt* zu betteln.

Help yourself *instead of* begging.

Wir waren gerade *daran* die Kiste zu öffnen.

We were just *about to* open the box.

A. 1. Welches ist das beste Mittel *um* alt zu werden?—

Arbeit, Mäßigkeit, und Ruh,

Schließt dem Arzt die Thüre zu.

2. Haben Sie nicht Lust sich hier *aufzuhalten*?—Doch, zuerst habe ich aber noch eine Bestellung zu verrichten. 3. Gibt es hier etwas Interessantes zu sehen?—Ja, eine schöne Gemälsammlung. 4. Er will auf meinen Rath nicht hören.—Nun, wem nicht zu rathen ist, dem ist auch nicht zu helfen. 5. Den Freund zu erkennen, mußt du erst einen Scheffel Salz mit ihm essen.

6. Ich fühle Muth, mich in die Welt zu wagen,

Der Erde Beh, der Erde Glück zu tragen,

Mit Stürmen mich herum zu schlagen,

Und in des Schiffbruchs Knirschen nicht zu zagen.

GOETHE, *Faust*, I. 1.

B. 1. We have no time to lose. 2. We must eat in order to live, but we must not live in order to eat. 3. I have a mind to rise early to-morrow. 4. Was there anything curious to see in that town?—Yes, a very old cathedral. 5. Let us work instead of talking! 6. I *will* see you to-morrow. 7. I *wish to* see you. 8. I *shall* see you. 9. A peasant went with his son in order to see if the corn was (*Ex. V., Obs.*) ripe. 10. They have yet three pages to translate. 11. Yesterday I had the pleasure of meeting your nieces. 12. That poor sailor is much to be pitied. 13. What is the best way to become rich?—I am not here to solve riddles. 14. What a galaxy of fine ladies have come to see the spectacle!—Yes, but they *have* (*are*) not come to see, but in order to be seen (*"Spectatum veniunt, spectentur ut ipsae"*).

## THE PARTICIPLES AND THE GERUND.

## INTRODUCTORY.

N.B.—In order to understand fully the relationship between the English and German Participial constructions, the student will do well, first of all, to bear in mind that the modern English Verbal form in *-ing* does duty for—

(1) the *old Imperfect Participle* in *-end(e)*, [subsequently *-inde, -inge, -ing* : cf. Lat. *-ent* ; Greek *οντ*], which is a *verbal adjective*, answering to the Germ. *Pres. Part.* : as,  
Mony a wepkinde eye (Rob. of Glouc.). Mand' weinendes Auge.

(2) the *old Infinitive* in *-an*, which answers to the German *Infinitive* : O.E. writ-an, subsequently writ-en, writ-in, writ-ing.

(3) an *old abstract Noun* ending in the suffix *-ung*, which answers to the modern Germ. abstract Nouns in *-ung*, as,

For earnunge écan lifes. lit. Zur **Erwerbung** des ewigen Lebens.

In accordance with the above fundamental distinctions, the English Verbal forms in *-ing* must be rendered in German either by a *Participle* proper, an *Infinitive* (or *Supine*), or by an *Abstract Noun*, see p. 125 :—

|                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| Beware of waking the sleeping lion. | Hüte dich den schlafenden Löwen zu wecken. |
| Yawning is catching.                | Das Gähnen ist ansteckend.                 |

EXERCISE XII. A. *The Present Participle.*

In German the *Pres. Part.* (Verbal adjective in *-end*) is used—

(a) as an *Adjective* used *attributively* : as,

The travelling merchant.

A travelling merchant.

Der reisende Kaufmann.

Ein reisender Kaufmann.

As with *Adjectives*, the Complement of a *Past Part.* is placed before that *Participle* : as,

Ein in Rußland reisender Kaufmann.

A merchant travelling Russia.

Obs. 1. A *Participle Pres.* may be used *predicatively* only in so far as it has assumed the character of an *adjective proper*. Thus we may say—

Die Aussicht ist reizend.

The view is charming.

Seine Beredsamkeit ist hinreißend.

His eloquence is overpowering.

But we cannot say—Das Kind ist spielend. The child is *playing*.

Obs. 2. The *Past Part.* of the Aux. Verbs *sein* and *haben* is hardly ever used, and had better be avoided altogether.

(b) as a *Noun* denoting (1) a *person* (m. or f.), or (2) the *characteristic feature* of a thing (neut.) :—

(1) Der Reisende, the traveller. Ein Reisender, a traveller.  
declined throughout like an *Adjective* ; see (a) above, and p. 25.

(2) Das Ueberraschende { What is surprising in this is that ..  
dabei ist, daß, &c. { or, The surprising part of this affair..

(c) as an *Adverb* (generally of *manner*, sometimes of *cause*): as,

Das Kind kam **weinend** nach Hause. } The child came home  
or, **Weinend** kam das Kind nach Hause. } *weeping*.

Einen Hinterhalt **befürchtend**,\* *Fearing* an ambush, the enemies  
war der Feind auf seiner were on their guard.  
Hut.

\* If the Verb is *transitive*, the Perf. Participle must stand *after* its Object.

(d) as a *Future Passive* (Gerundive) used as an *attribute* preceded by *zu*: as,

Das **zu lesende** Buch. The book *to be read*.  
Ein **zu lesendes** Buch. A book *to be read*;  
(cf. Lat. *liber legendus*.) or, a book *worth reading*.

A. 1. Bei einbrechender Nacht machten wir uns auf den Weg. 2. Wir Schwestern saßen, die Wolle spinnend, in den langen Nächten. 3. Der Schildwach stehende Soldat ging schweigend auf und ab. 4. Haben Sie je das Alpenglügen gesehen?—Ja, freilich; die hinter den Alpen aufgehende Sonne ist ein nie zu vergessendes (= unvergeßliches) Schauspiel. 5. Donnernd stürzen die stets wachsende Lavine über die schwankende Brücke. 6. Heulend kommt der Sturm geflogen, der die Flamme brausend sucht.

7. Und der Rinder glatte Scharen kommen brüllend,  
Die gewohnten Ställe füllend.

B. 1. A sleeping fox catches no fowl. 2. (The) man is a thinking creature. 3. The travellers looked at us threateningly. 4. The child trembling with cold began to cry. 5. The water is boiling hot. 6. The riding messenger, turning towards me, inquired after the nearest way to the town. 7. The loving mother appeased the weeping child. 8. There he sat, forgetting everything around him. 9. The sun setting in the sea is a glorious sight. 10. A traveller riding in the desert was attacked by prowling Bedouins. 11. What was striking in this was that he succeeded in escaping. 12. Are you still in the land of the living? (*Lebend* or *Lebendig* in the *plural*.)



**B. Summary of the Constructions which are Participial (or Gerundial) in English but not in German.**

The English Verbal form in *-ing* must be rendered in German—

(a) by the *finite form* of the corresponding Verb, if it denotes a *continuous* (or *imperfect*) *Present*, *Past*, or *Future*: as,

|                                       |                         |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| He <i>is</i> (was) travelling.        | Er reist (reiste).*     |
| He <i>has</i> (had) been travelling.  | Er hat (hatte) gereist. |
| He <i>will</i> (would) be travelling. | Er wird (würde) reisen. |

|                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| * Or, Er ist (war) auf der Reise. | Er ist (war) auf der Reise gewesen, &c |
| The boy stood gaping.             | Der Knabe stand und gaffte.            |

(b) by the *Passive Voice*, if the meaning is clearly passive: as,  
 The ship *is building* ; { Das Schiff wird gebaut ; or,  
 (i.e. is being built) { ist im Bau begriffen.

(c) if it stands as a *Subject*, an *Object*, or a *Complement* in the Genitive case—

either (1) by the *Pure Infinitive* (without *zu*), as.

|   |                                   |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| N. <i>Swimming</i> strengthens the limbs.         | Das Schwimmen stärkt die Glieder. |
| A. I hate this everlasting wrangling.             | Ich hasse dies ewige Zanken.      |
| G. I am tired of waiting.                         | Ich bin des Wartens müde.         |
| There is <i>no denying</i> .                      | Es läßt sich nicht leugnen.       |
| I hear a bird <i>singing</i> (i.e. <i>sing</i> ). | Ich höre einen Vogel singen.      |

or (2) by a Verbal Noun in *-ung*, see p. 123: as,

|  |                            |
|--|----------------------------|
| For the <i>strengthening</i> of faith. | Zur Stärkung des Glaubens. |
| To have good <i>nursing</i> .          | Gute Wartung haben.        |

*Obs. 1.* It should be borne in mind that not nearly all Verbs have this form in *-ung*, and that consequently the student must make sure of its existence by reference to the Dictionary.

*Obs. 2.* Sometimes the simple verb-stem is an adequate equivalent of the English form in *-ing*—

|  |   |
|--|---|
| The art of <i>building</i> .                       | Die Baukunst.                           |
| The <i>building</i> of ships.                      | Der Schiffbau.                          |
| <i>Fox-hunting</i> .                               | Die Fuchsjagd.                          |
| The powers of <i>thinking</i> and <i>judging</i> . | Das Denkvermögen und die Urtheilskraft. |

(d) by the *Infinitive* with *zu*, if used—

(1) as the *Complement* of the Prepositions—*without*, *ohne* ; *instead of*, *anstatt* (see Ex. XI.), if the Subject of both Verbs is the same :—

|                                     |                                |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| He did it <i>without asking</i> us. | Er that es ohne uns zu fragen. |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------|

(2) as a *Gerund*; i.e. as the *Complement* of a Verb, a Noun or an Adjective: as,

The pleasure of *seeing* you.

He intends *staying* here.

I am tired of *waiting* for him.

Das Vergnügen Sie *zu* sehen.

Er beabsichtigt hier *zu* bleiben.

Ich bin müde auf ihn *zu* warten.

**Caution:** (1) No German Preposition takes the Verbal form in *-end*. (2) Only *ohne*, *anstatt*, *zu* (*um zu*), and Prepositions compounded with *da*, as *daran*, take the *Infinitive*.

If the first Verb takes any other preposition, as, for instance:

We insist *upon* . . . . Wir bestehen *auf* . . . . ;

then this Preposition is affixed to the pronominal adverb *da(r)* (see § 30), as *darauf*, *damit*, *dadurch*, &c., followed—

(1) by the dependent Verb in the *Infinitive*, if it has the *same subject*: as,

We insist *upon doing* it ourselves. Wir bestehen *darauf* es selbst *zu* thun.  
selves, lit. We insist *thereon* it ourselves *to do*.

or (2) by a substantive clause introduced by *daß*, if the dependent Verb has a different Subject:—

We insist *upon your doing* it. Wir bestehen *darauf*, *daß* du es selbst *thuest*.  
yourself.

\* This compound of *pron. adv.* + *prep.* (here *darauf*) may be considered as doing duty as a finger-post pointing emphatically to the dependent clause, the latter standing as it were in apposition to the former, i.e.

We insist *upon this point*: that you do it yourself.

(e) by an *Adverbial Clause*, introduced by a subordinate conjunction of (1) *time*, (2) *cause*, (3) *means, instrument*, &c., according as the analysis of the English sentence may require: as,

(1) *Saying* (i.e. *whilst*, or *as*, *Während* er dies sagte, ging er he said) this, he went out. hinaus.

(2) *Being* (i.e. *as I was*) ill, Da ich krank war, so konnte ich I could not come. nicht kommen.

He was punished for *stealing* (i.e. *because he had stolen*) a horse. Er wurde bestraft, weil er ein Pferd gestohlen hatte.

(3) *By persuading* (i.e. *thereby that we persuade*) others, Dadurch daß wir andere über- reden,\* überzeugen wir uns we convince ourselves. selbst.

\* We might also turn by—*durch Ueberredung Anderer*, see (c) 3, &c.

(f) by an *Adjective Clause*, introduced by a Relative Pron. :  
as,

|   |  |
|---|--|
| The citizens, <i>having</i> (i.e. <i>who had</i> ) no arms, were defenceless. | Die Bürger, <i>die</i> keine Waffen hatten, waren wehrlos. |
| I saw a bull <i>running</i> towards me.                                       | Ich sah einen Stier, <i>der</i> auf mich zu lief.          |

EXERCISE XIII. Verbal form in *-ing* (a, b, c, d).

A. 1. Wohin rennen Sie so schnell?—In die Wilhelmsstraße, wo ein Haus brennt. 2. Ermüdet Sie dieses ewige Schreien nicht? 3. Die Aufführung dieses reizenden Lustspiels war sehr unterhaltend. 4. Dieser Schüler bedarf der Anregung. 5. Ich bin mit dem Schreiben fertig. 6. Was für ein Rißern ist das? 7. Er sollte sich schämen so etwas zu sagen. 8. Das heißt den Spaß zu weit getrieben (or treiben).

B. 1. Do you like reading?—Yes, I am very fond of reading Goethe's writings. 2. We are not ashamed of having done it. 3. The rain is falling in torrents. 4. Playing at chess is our favourite amusement. 5. Silently they were listening to me. 6. We are conscious of having done our duty. 7. They went away without taking leave of us. 8. We are tired of waiting for them. 9. She took an early opportunity of avenging herself. 10. No general can effect anything great without possessing the confidence of his men. 11. We heard distinctly the groaning of the dying soldiers. 12. I shall do myself the honour of waiting upon you. 13. He regrets not being able to come. 14. He much regrets *your* not being able to come. 15. Beware of bathing in this impetuous river. 16. Do you call that working? 17. We could not help laughing. 18. The lion remained standing before the slave Androcles. 19. The earth never wearies of shedding its benefits on those who till it. 20. One increases one's happiness by sharing it with a friend.

EXERCISE XIV. Verbal form in *-ing* rendered (e) by an *Adverbial Clause*; or (f) by an *Adjectival Clause*.

A. 1. Da er noch nicht fertig ist, so muß er bleiben. 2. Worin besteht das wahre Glück des Menschen?—Darin daß man mit seinem Schicksal zufrieden ist. 3. Den Mangel an Reiterei wußte er dadurch zu ersetzen, daß er Fußgänger zwischen die Reiter stellte. 4. Durch das genaue Beobachten dieser Regeln werden Sie den groben Fehler vermeiden die in *-ing* endende Verbalform durch ein Gerundium ins Deutsche zu übersetzen. 5. Der Nutzen des Reisens besteht darin, daß man die Phantasie durch die Wirklichkeit regelt, und statt daran zu denken, wie die Dinge sein können, dieselben sieht wie sie sind.

B. 1. Being ill, he could not come. 2. Having no money, he has no friends. 3. They went away without our knowing it. 4. Having nothing pressing to do, we intend spending a week in Paris. 5. Our going thither is uncertain. 6. We insist upon his offering an apology. 7. By cutting off the supplies we compelled the town to surrender. 8. Work instead of begging, you good-for-nothing idlers! 9. Having vanquished the Russians, Frederick hastened into Saxony. 10. The French having been dispersed by a gale, had to put back to Toulon. 11. He was not suffered to go home, it being a stormy night. 12. The vicar of Wakefield's wife could read any English book without much spelling, but for pickling, preserving, and cookery none could excel her. 13. I positively deny his ever having learned anything worth knowing. 14. Somebody asking Diogenes how (*he*) could avenge himself on his (one's self on one's) enemies, he replied: by becoming an upright man. 15. There is no flying without wings. 16. Far from praising him, I cannot help blaming him.

## THE PARTICIPLE PERFECT (PASSIVE).

## SYNOPTIC TABLE OF THE DIFFERENT FORMS OF THE PARTICIPLE PERFECT.

A. **WEAK**, pp. 54-58.

| (1) <i>Simple.</i>                           | (2) <i>Inseparable.</i>                        | (3) <i>Separable.</i>                                |
|--|--|--|
| <i>Inf.</i> red-en<br><i>P.P.</i> gered-et   | <i>Inf.</i> bered-en<br><i>P.P.</i> bered-et   | <i>Inf.</i> an-red-en<br><i>P.P.</i> an-gered-et     |
| <i>Inf.</i> wanden<br><i>P.P.</i> gewander-t | <i>Inf.</i> bewanden<br><i>P.P.</i> bewander-t | <i>Inf.</i> aus-wanden<br><i>P.P.</i> aus-gewander-t |

B. **STRONG**, pp. 59-68.

## (a) SIMPLE STRONG VERBS. See pp. 48-49.

| (1) <i>With Vowel Change.</i> |                        | (2) <i>Without Vowel Change.</i><br>II., III., IV. |
|-------------------------------|------------------------|--|
| I. a & b.                     | V.                     | VI.  |
| find-en<br>gefund-en          | reiß-en<br>geriß-en    | biet-en<br>geböt-en                                |
| brech-en<br>gebroch-en        | bleib-en<br>geblieb-en | gieß-en<br>gegöff-en                               |
|                               |                        | fang-en<br>gefang-en                               |

## (b) INSEPARABLE STRONG VERBS. See pp. 76-78.

|                            |                            |                        |                          |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------|
| empfind-en<br>empfund-en   | entreib-en<br>entriß-en    | gebiet-en<br>gebot-en  | vergeb-en<br>vergeb-en   |
| zerbrech-en<br>zerbroch-en | verbleib-en<br>verblieb-en | begieß-en<br>begöff-en | empfang-en<br>empfang-en |

## (c) SEPARABLE STRONG VERBS. See pp. 76-79.

|                               |                                  |                              |                              |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| ausfind-en<br>aus-gefund-en   | auf-reiß-en<br>auf-geriß-en      | an-biet-en<br>an-gebot-en    | mit-geb-en<br>mit-gegeben    |
| einbrech-en<br>ein-gebroch-en | nach-bleib-en<br>nach-geblieb-en | aus-gieß-en<br>aus-gegöff-en | ein-fang-en<br>ein-gefang-en |

C. **ANOMALOUS**, p. 69.

|                      |                         |                               |
|----------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------------|
| send-en<br>gesand-t  | versend-en<br>versand-t | zu=send-en<br>zu-gefang-t     |
| stehen<br>gestand-en | bestehen<br>bestand-en  | aus=steh-en<br>aus-gestand-en |

## (d) AUXILIARY VERBS OF MOOD. See pp. 70-71.

|                      |          |          |         |           |          |          |
|----------------------|----------|----------|---------|-----------|----------|----------|
| <i>Inf.</i> dürfen   | können   | mögen    | müssen  | sollen    | woollen  | lassen   |
| <i>P.P.</i> gedurft, | gekonnt, | gemocht, | gemußt, | gefollet, | gewollt, | gelaßen. |

EXERCISE XV. The *Participle Perfect* is used—(a) as in English—*attributively, predicatively, or absolutely*—

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Nach gethaner Arbeit ist gut<br>ruhen.          | It is sweet to rest after labour<br><i>done</i> . |
| Die verlorene Gelegenheit.                      | The <i>lost</i> opportunity.                      |
| Ein von Jedermann geachteter<br>Bürger.         | A citizen <i>esteemed</i> by every-<br>body.      |
| Dieser Bürger wird von Jeder-<br>mann geachtet. | This citizen <i>is esteemed</i> by<br>everybody.  |
| Sie kamen Alle, ausgenommen<br>der Jüngste.     | They all came, <i>except</i> the<br>youngest.     |

(b)—contrary to English usage—after *kommen* and *heißen* :—

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Er kam in aller Eile gelaufen.                  | He came <i>running</i> in great<br>haste.                    |
| Das heißt die Höflichkeit zu weit<br>getrieben. | That is (I call that) <i>carrying</i><br>politeness too far. |

Obs. 1. The Past Perf. is more freely used as a *Noun* than in English :  
as—

Der Gesandte, Bediente, Beamte, &amp;c.

Ein Gesandter, Bedienter, Beamter, &amp;c.

Obs. 2. For the use of the Part. Perf. for an *Imperative*, see Ex. IX.*Proverbs* :—

|                                  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| Wie gewonnen, so zerronnen.      | Lightly come, lightly go.                                      |
| Gesagt, gethan.                  | No sooner said than done.                                      |
| Jung gewohnt, alt gethan.        | What is bred in the bone, will<br>never come out of the flesh. |
| Frisch gewagt ist halb gewonnen. | Well begun is half done.                                       |

A. 1. Was glänzt ist für den Augenblick geboren,  
Das Rechte bleibt der Nachwelt unverloren.

2. Dreifach ist der Schritt der Zeit :—

Zögernd kommt die Zukunft hergezogen,  
Pfeilschnell ist das Jetzt entflohen,  
Ewig still steht die Vergangenheit.

3. Kein Stäubchen geht im Haushalte Gottes verloren.

B. 1. The hussars came riding at full speed. 2. A lost opportunity *is* not easily *found* (say—*finds itself*) again. 3. A man despised by all honest people. 4. That is not keeping word faithfully. 5. Wearied with walking, we stopped in order to rest. 6. Rome was not built in a day. 7. We rely upon your keeping your promise. 8. Being tired, we sat down. 9. The earth produces, without being cultivated, plants of every kind. 10. Manlius was con-

demned to be thrown down from the Capitol. 11. The French Protestants, who had been compelled to leave their native country, established manufactories in several countries.

### AUXILIARY VERBS OF MOOD. See § 52, pp. 70, 71.

Notice the following peculiarities in which the *German Auxiliary Verbs of Mood*—

**wollen, sollen, müssen, können, mögen, dürfen.**  
*will, shall, must, can, may, be allowed (dare).*  
 differ from other Verbs, and from their English cognates, either in conjugation or in construction, or in both:—

(1) *Vowel-change in the Indic. Pres. Sing.* (except *sollen*): as,  
*ich will (soll), muß, kann, mag, darf, &c.*  
*wir wollen, sollen, müssen, können, mögen, dürfen, &c.*

(2) *No vowel-modification in the Pret. (Impf.) Indic. and Part. Perf.:* as,

(*ich wollte, sollte*); *mußte, konnte, mochte, durfte, &c.*  
 (*gewollt, gesollt*); *gewußt, gekonnt, gemocht, geburft.*

(3) *No tenses and moods wanting*—

(a) *Preterite*:—

*ich wollte, sollte, mußte, konnte, mochte, durfte.*  
*I would, was to, had to, could, might, was allowed.*

(b) *Pres. Perf. and Pluperfect, formed by means of*—

Aux. Verb + Part. Perf.:—

|                  |  |                     |   |
|------------------|--|---------------------|---|
| <i>ich habe</i>  | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{gewollt,} \\ \text{gesollt,} \\ \text{gewußt,} \\ \text{gekonnt,} \\ \text{gemocht,} \\ \text{geburft,} \end{array} \right.$ | <i>I have (had)</i> | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{been willing.} \\ \text{been obliged.} \\ \text{been compelled.} \\ \text{been able.} \\ \text{been disposed.} \\ \text{been allowed.} \end{array} \right.$ |
| <i>ich hatte</i> |  |                     |   |
|                  |  |                     |   |
|                  |  |                     |   |
|                  |  |                     |   |

(c) *Future Pres. and Condit. Pres., formed by means of*—

Aux. Verb + Infinitive:—

|                  |  |                         |   |
|------------------|--|-------------------------|---|
| <i>ich werde</i> | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{wollen,} \\ \text{sollen,} \\ \text{müssen,} \\ \text{können,} \\ \text{mögen,} \\ \text{dürfen,} \end{array} \right.$ | <i>I shall (should)</i> | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{be willing.} \\ \text{be obliged.} \\ \text{be compelled.} \\ \text{be able.} \\ \text{be disposed.} \\ \text{be allowed.} \end{array} \right.$ |
| <i>ich würde</i> |  |                         |   |
|                  |  |                         |   |
|                  |  |                         |   |
|                  |  |                         |   |

(d) *The Condit. Perf. is expressed by the Subjunctive Pret.:*—

*ich hätte wollen, sollen, müssen, können, mögen, dürfen.*

*I should have been willing, &c. See further on, p. 132, also p. 71.*

(4) *Two forms for the Participle Perfect*, i.e. the *new* (or *weak*) form (see 2), and the *old* (*strong*) form, identical with the *Infinitive Pres.*; which latter must be used whenever it is joined with another Verb in the Infinitive :—

Ich habe **gewollt** (gemusst), &c. I have *been willing* (*compelled*).  
 Ich habe gehen **wollen** (müssen). I have *been willing* (*forced*) to go, &c.

Notice especially, as entirely differing from English, the construction of the *Subjunctive Pluperfect* used for the *Conditional Perfect* :—

|                                      |   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Ich hätte bleiben <b>sollen</b> .    | I <i>should</i> ( <i>ought to</i> ) have stayed.                    |
| Du hättest folgen <b>sollen</b> .    | You <i>should</i> ( <i>ought to</i> ) have followed, &c.            |
| Ich hätte zahlen <b>müssen</b> .     | I <i>should</i> ( <i>might</i> ) have been forced to pay.           |
| Du hättest schreiben <b>müssen</b> . | You <i>would</i> ( <i>might</i> ) have been compelled to write, &c. |
| Ich hätte es thun <b>können</b> .    | I <i>could</i> ( <i>might</i> ) have done it, &c.                   |
| Ich hätte es thun <b>mögen</b> .     | I <i>would have liked</i> to do it, or,                             |
| Ich hätte ausgehen <b>dürfen</b> .   | I <i>might have done</i> it, &c.                                    |
|                                      | I <i>should have been allowed</i> to go out, &c.                    |

*Obs.* The *elliptical* use of Verbs depending on Auxiliary Verbs of Mood, deserves special notice :—

Was **soll** das (i.e. heißen, or bedeuten)? What does that mean?

Was **will** er damit (i.e. thun, or machen)? What does he want to do with it?

Wo **will** er hin (i.e. gehen)? Where does he want to go?

Kann er französisch (i.e. sprechen)? Can he speak French?

## EXERCISE XVI. AUXILIARY VERBS OF MOOD. See §§ 51, 52.

### (a) **Wollen** :—

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Willst du kommen oder nicht?            | Will you come or not?   |
| Was <b>wollen</b> Sie für Ihr Pferd?    | What do you want for your horse?                                    |
| <b>Wollen</b> Sie Bier oder Wein?       | Will you have beer or wine?   |
| Er <b>will</b> in Amerika gewesen sein. | He <i>says</i> (i.e. would have us believe) he has been in America. |
| Er sei wer er <b>wolle</b> .            | Whoever he may be.  |
| Die Sonne <b>wollte</b> eben aufgehen.  | The sun <i>was just about</i> to rise.                              |



(b) Sollen:—

Du sollst deinen Nächsten lieben.

Er hätte längst schreiben sollen.

Das Haus soll verkauft werden.

Die Königin soll heute ankommen.

Wenn es regnen sollte.

Er soll sehr gelehrt sein.

Ich soll heute noch verreisen.

Thou *shalt* love thy neighbour.

He *ought to* (should) *have* written long since.

The house *is* (appointed) *to be* sold.

The queen *is expected* to-day.

If it *should* rain.

He *is said to be* very learned.

I *am to* set out this very day.

(c) Müssen:—

Alle Menschen müssen sterben.

Ich muß fort (elliptical).

Er muß wol krank sein.

All men *must* die.

I *must* leave (go away)

He *must* be ill.

A. 1. Wissen Sie warum er uns nicht hat besuchen wollen?—Nein, das weiß ich nicht. 2. Was wollt ihr?—Wir wollen essen und trinken. 3. Du hättest bei uns bleiben sollen.—Allerdings, aber ich habe eine Bestellung ausrichten müssen. 4. Was soll ich damit?—Das geht mich nichts an. 5. Was soll das heißen?—Ich kann es Ihnen nicht sagen. 6. Was willst du dort?—Ich möchte gern die Merkwürdigkeiten besichtigen. 7. Sage mir wo du hin willst?—Nach Hause will ich jetzt.

8. Das kleine Wort: Ich muß,  
Ist doch von allen Müssen,  
Die Menschen knacken müssen,  
Die allerhärteste Muß.

B. 1. They are said to be very ambitious. 2. Do you know that their house is to be sold by auction?—No, I did not know it. 3. If it should freeze, I shall buy a pair of skates. 4. Your young niece has not been willing to accompany us. 5. She must have been prevented. 6. They ought to have told me that. 7. I should have been obliged to sell my horse, if I had left the country. 8. We had to repeat all *that* (say—*what*) we had said. 9. I was just about to go out, when he came. 10. We are to go home to-morrow. 11. They say (assert) they have seen it themselves.

EXERCISE XVII, AUXILIARY VERBS OF MOOD (*continued*).

## (d) Können:—

Er kann sehr gut reiten.

He can ride very well.

Können Sie deutsch?

Do you know German?

Er kann kommen, wann er will.

He may come whenever he likes.

Ich kann nicht dafür.

I cannot help it.

Wir können nicht umhin zu bemerken.

We cannot but observe...

## (e) Mögen:—

Er mag hereinkommen.

He may come in.

Ich mag diesen Wein nicht.

I don't like this wine.

Ich möchte gerne wissen.

I should like to know.

Er möchte gern mit Ihnen sprechen.

He wants to speak to you.

Ich möchte lieber hier bleiben.

I would (had) rather stay here.

## (f) Dürfen:—

Sie dürfen es nur sagen.

You have only to speak.

Er darf sich nicht beklagen.

He has no reason (cause) to complain.

Darf (dürfte) ich fragen?

May (might) I ask?

Es dürfte wirklich wahr sein.

It might really be true.

Darf man hier fischen?

Are people allowed to fish here?

A. 1. Warum haben Sie keinen Wein trinken dürfen?—Weil ich das Fieber hatte. 2. Was sagte Stauffacher zu dem Landvogt?—Das dürft ihr nicht, das darf der Kaiser nicht. 3. Warum haben Sie nicht im Fluße fischen dürfen?—Das darf ich Ihnen nicht sagen. 4. Haben Sie nicht ausreiten mögen?—Nein, bei solchem Wetter bleibe ich lieber zu Hause. 5. Sollte ich mich drein ergeben?—Ja freilich, was man nicht ändern kann, soll man ertragen. 6. Wollen Sie mich ein Stück Wegs begleiten?—Es dürfte wol zu spät sein. 7. Ich wollte du dürftest mit mir gehen.—Ja, wenn ich nur dürfte! 8. Wer nicht kann wie er will, muß wollen wie er kann.

9. Sie mögen sprechen wie sie wollen,  
Wenn sie nur zahlen wie sie sollen.

B. 1. Are people allowed to hunt in this forest?—No, but you may walk through. 2. Does he like to dance?—No, but he is very fond of hunting. 3. You have not cause to lament. 4. They have not been allowed to take a ride. 5. We don't like these fishes. 6. I could not but complain of his conduct. 7. I should like to write to him about it. 8. May we ask whether you will accompany us? 9. I cannot do it otherwise, you may say what you *like* (say—*will*). 10. He must come, *whether he likes or not* (say—*he may, will, or not*). 12. We want to know whether we may go out this afternoon. 13. Some one asked (the) Diogenes at what time he ought to dine. The *latter* (say—*this*) replied: "If you (*sing.*) are rich, eat when you *like* (say—*will*); if you are poor, when you can.

EXERCISE XVIII. AUXILIARY VERBS OF MOOD (*continued*).

(g) **Lassen**: to let, to leave, to allow, to cause, &c.

(1) used as *Auxiliary Verb*, to form the first pers. plur. of the *Imperative*:—

Hier laßt uns unser Zelte aufschlagen.  
Lassen Sie uns hier bleiben!

(2) *Causative*; with the dependent Verb in the *Infinitive active* (= French *faire*):—

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Der General läßt die Stadt beschießen.<br>(Le général fait bombarder la ville.) | The general orders the town to be shelled. |
| Ich lasse meine Bücher in Leipzig binden.                                       | I get my books bound in Leipzig.           |
| Ich ließ ihn bestrafen.   | I had him punished.                        |
| Sie läßt mich warten.   | She keeps me waiting.                      |
| Ich lasse ihn holen.  | I send for him.                            |
| Ich lasse ihn grüßen.   | Remember me to him.                        |
| Er läßt dich grüßen.  | He wishes to be remembered to you.         |
| Ich habe mir sagen lassen.  | I have been told, I have heard.            |
| Er ließ die Flasche fallen.   | He dropped the bottle.                     |
| Lassen Sie ihn heraufkommen.  | Desire (request) him to walk up stairs.    |

(3) *Reflexive* ; with the dependent Verb in the *Infin. active* :—

|                             |   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Sie läßt sich betrügen.     | She allows (suffers) herself to be cheated. |
| Das Buch läßt sich lesen.   | The book is readable.                       |
| Er läßt sich leicht rühren. | He is easily moved.                         |

(4) *Reflexive and Impersonal* :—

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Er läßt es sich sehr anlegen sein.        | He is very anxious about it.                 |
| Er läßt es sich gefallen.                 | He submits to it.                            |
| Er läßt es sich sehr sauer werden.        | He toils very hard.                          |
| Das läßt sich hören.                      | That is something like. That is plausible.   |
| Es läßt sich nicht läugnen.               | It cannot be denied. There is no denying it. |
| Es läßt sich denken.                      | It can be imagined.                          |
| Es ließe sich Alles trefflich schlichten, | Easily could everything be                   |
| Könnte man Alles zweimal ver-             | settled, if everything could                 |
| richten.                                  | be done over again.                          |

A. 1. Wo hast du dir die Haare schneiden lassen?—Beim Haarschneider (Friseur). 2. Warum ließen Sie ihn so lange warten?—Weil ich nicht früher habe kommen können. 3. Wo haben Sie Ihre neuen Kleider machen lassen?—Ich habe sie in London machen lassen. 4. Bitte, laß mich deine französische Uebersetzung sehen!—Ich darf sie nicht sehen lassen. 5. Erinnerst du dich noch der Verba, welche die Eigenheit haben, daß sie die Infinitivform statt des Particips annehmen, wenn sie mit einem andern Infinitiv in Verbindung treten?—Ja freilich, ich habe dieselben zum leichtern Memoriren in Reime gebracht. 6. Ei, so laß doch hören!—

Dürfen, können, sollen, | Helfen, heißen, sehen, hören,  
Mögen, müssen, wollen, | Lassen,—und oft lernen, lehren.

B. 1. Let us persevere! 2. I have ordered a pair of boots to be made. 3. You have let the fire go out. 4. Why did you keep him waiting so long?—I could not help it. 5. That cannot be done. 6. If you will not obey, I shall have you punished. 7. Do not drop this inkstand. 8. I have sent him word not to come. 9. We have ordered the house to be repaired. 10. It could not be proved. 11. We toil very hard. 12. Are people allowed to bathe in this river? 13. Where does he have his hair cut?

EXERCISE XIX. *The Passive Voice*, see § 53, pp. 72, 73.

Distinguish carefully between—

(a) The *Passive Imperfect*, and (b) the *Passive Perfect*,

(Continuous),

denoting the *actual progress* of an action, or a *permanent state of things* :—

Ich **werde** bestraft.\*  
 (i.e. jetzt straft man mich)  
 I *am being* punished (now).

Er **wird** im Lateinischen unterrichtet.  
 He *is being* taught Latin.

Ich (werde immer) gestraft,  
 (i.e. man straft mich immer)  
 wenn ich nicht gehorche.  
 I *am* (always) punished, when  
 I do not obey.

Das Haus **wird** (wurde) gebaut.  
 The house *is* (was) *being* built.  
 (it is [was] not finished yet)

Das Thor **wird** (jetzt) geschlossen.  
 The gate *is just being* closed.  
 (They are just closing the gates)

Im Sommer **wird** das Thor um  
 zehn Uhr, im Winter um  
 neun, geschlossen.  
 In summer the gate *is* (regularly)  
 closed at ten, in winter at  
 nine.

denoting the *full accomplishment* of an action :—

Ich **bin** bestraft.\*  
 (i.e. man hat mich bestraft)  
 I *am* punished (i.e. the deed is  
 done, but the consequences  
 still make themselves felt !)

Er **ist** gut unterrichtet.  
 He *has been* well taught.  
 (he is well informed)

Ich **bin** gestraft worden, weil ich  
 nicht gehorchen wollte.

I *have been* punished, because I  
 would not obey.

Das Haus **ist** (war) gebaut.  
 The house *is* (was) built  
 (finished).  
 (i.e. it is now [was then] ready  
 for occupation)

Das Thor **ist** geschlossen.  
 The gate *is already* closed.  
 (We are too late)

So eben **ist** das Thor geschlossen  
 worden.

This very minute the gate *has  
 been* closed.

\* By way of a test, put the verb into the active voice ; if then it requires to be in the same tense, the aux. verb **werden** (i.e. the passive voice) must be used ; if not, use **sein**.

Obs. 1. Distinguish carefully between—

(a) *Present Passive* :—

*Aux. V. + Part. Perf.*

Ich werde **geschlagen**.  
I am being *beaten*.

and

(b) *Future Active* :—

*Aux. V. + Infinit. Pres.*

Ich werde **schlagen**.  
I shall *beat*.

(c) *Future Passive* :—

*Aux. V.*

Ich werde  
I shall

*Infinit. Perf.*

**geschlagen-werden**  
*be-beaten*.

Obs. 2. Bear in mind how the construction of the *Passive Voice* is affected by the transposition of words in dependent clauses :—

NORMAL ORDER

in a *principal* or *co-ordinate* sentence.

TRANSPOSED ORDER

in a *sub-ordinate* clause ; pp. 101-2

Er **wird** gelobt.

Er **ist** gelobt worden.

Er **wird** gelobt werden.

Er **wäre** gelobt worden.

Er **würde** gelobt worden sein.

Ich weiß—

daß er gelobt **wird**.

daß er gelobt worden **ist**.

daß er gelobt werden **wird**.

daß er gelobt worden **wäre**.

{ daß er gelobt worden sein **würde**, or.  
daß er **würde** gelobt worden sein.

Obs. 3. It will be seen that with **werden** the *Part. Perf.* retains its verbal character, whilst with **sein** it becomes virtually an *adjective* used predicatively. Compare further—

Das Rad **wird** bewegt.

The wheel is *set in motion*.

Eine Schlacht **wird** geschlagen.

A battle is *being fought*.

Er **ist** tief bewegt.

He is deeply moved (*affected*).

Die Feinde **sind** gänzlich geschlagen.

The enemies are *totally defeated*.

Thus—He is surprised = Er **ist** (not **wird**) erstaunt.

We are willing = Wir **sind** (not **werden**) geneigt.

The bread was well baked = Das Brot **war** (not **wurde**) gut gebacken.

They were experienced = Sie **waren** (not **wurden**) erfahren, &c.

*Drill.*—In the following sentences put the Verb into the *passive voice*, with interchange of Subject and Object, as—  
I plant the trees = The trees are planted by me.  
Ich pflanze die Bäume = Die Bäume werden von mir gepflanzt :—

1. Der Hund fängt (fing) den Hasen. 2. Das Licht blendet das Auge. 3. Der Sturm hat (hatte) viele Bäume entwurzelt. 4. Ich werde das Buch übersetzen. 5. Du wirst (würdest) mich getadelt haben. 6. Wer hat Amerika entdeckt ? 7. Wo schlug Hannibal die Römer ?

A. 1. Warum wurde der Sklave zum Tode verurtheilt?—Weil er seinem Herrn entlaufen war. 2. Von wem sind die Quellen des Nils entdeckt worden?—Von englischen Reisenden. 3. Wo wird das beste englische Bier gebraut?—In Burton soll das beste Bier gebraut werden. 4. Nachdem die Stadt beschossen worden war, wurde sie mit Sturm genommen, geplündert und in Asche gelegt. 5. Welch' schlechter Gebrauch wird oft von der Zeit gemacht und wie kostbar ist sie doch! Sie müßte mit Gold gewogen werden, damit ihr Wert richtig geschätzt würde. Wenn aber in die eine Wagschale die zu wiegende Zeit gelegt würde, und in die andere die während derselben zu erfüllenden Pflichten, welche der beiden Wagschalen würde schneller sinken? Jede Minute, die verstreicht, ist ein Theil unseres Lebens, der uns entzogen wird, und von jeder Minute, sagt die Heilige Schrift, wird einst Rechenschaft von uns gefordert werden.

Die Zeit kann mit jenem Pfund Gold verglichen werden, das von einem Hausvater jedem seiner drei Söhne geliehen worden war. Von dem ältesten Sohne wurde das Gold in kurzer Zeit verschwendet, von dem zweiten vergraben, von dem dritten zu seiner Arbeit benutzt und der Gewinn auf Zinsen gelegt. Die beiden älteren Söhne wurden von dem Vater streng getabelt und bestraft; den dritten aber, dessen Summe durch Arbeit und Zinsen verdoppelt worden war, lobte und belohnte er reichlich.

B. 1. A mouse, so the fable relates, rescued a lion who had been caught in a net. 2. During the reign of Diocletian the Christians were cruelly persecuted. 3. After the destruction of Jerusalem, the Jews were sold as slaves or taken away to Rome. 4. The criminal would have been pardoned, if he had been repentant. 5. In what season is wheat generally sown?—In autumn; sometimes also in spring. 6. Are you astonished to hear that he has been punished? 7. They are inclined to do it sooner or later. 8. The wheels of a watch are set in motion by a spring. 9. Writing is said to have been invented by the Phœnicians. 10. You are requested to appear to-morrow at noon.

EXERCISE XX. *The Impersonal Passive Voice.*

Only *Transitive Verbs* that govern the *Accusative* can, as a rule, be used in the *Personal Passive*: whilst—

(a) *Intransitive Verbs*, and (b) *Verbs that govern the Dative* of the Person, can only be used in the *Impersonal Passive Voice* in German—

| <i>Active.</i>  | <i>Passive.</i>  |
|---|--|
| (a) <b>Man läutet</b> um zehn Uhr zur Kirche.   | <b>Es wird</b> um zehn Uhr zur Kirche <b>geläutet.*</b>  |
| <i>They ring the bells for church at ten o'clock.</i>   |  |
| <b>Man tanzte</b> und sang bis spät in die Nacht.   | <b>Es wurde</b> bis spät<br>in die Nacht<br>or, <b>Bis spät</b> in die<br>Nacht <b>wurde *</b>             |
| <i>They danced and sang till late in the night.</i>   |  |
| (b) <b>Man setzt</b> mir nach.<br><i>They pursue me.</i>  | <b>Es wird</b> mir <b>nachgesetzt;</b><br>or, <b>Mir wird nachgesetzt.*</b><br>I am pursued.               |
| <b>Man erlaubte</b> ihm zu gehen.<br><i>They allowed him to go.</i><br>(cf. Fr. 'Il lui a été permis de partir.') | <b>Es wurde</b> ihm } <b>erlaubt</b> zu<br>or, <b>Ihm wurde *</b> } <b>gehen.</b><br>He was allowed to go. |

\* If the sentence does not begin with the Verb, the gram. subj. *es* is omitted; as,

Um zehn Uhr **wird** zur Kirche **geläutet**.

A. 1. *Es* ist keinem römischen Priester erlaubt zu heiraten.  
2. Wird hier deutsch gesprochen?—Ja, hier spricht man deutsch. 3. *Es* ist nach Ihnen gefragt worden. 4. Wurde Ihnen erlaubt zu bleiben?—Nein, im Gegenteil, es wurde mir verboten zu bleiben. 5. Wurde er nicht schwer verwundet?—Ja, es wurde sogleich nach dem Arzt geschickt.

B. 1. The slave was pursued. 2. That is not to be expected. 3. Are you allowed to do that?—No, we are strictly forbidden to do it. 4. Do you know that you are being looked for everywhere?—No, I did not know it. 5. We were promised great things. 6. Is the new German-English dictionary already printed?—No, but it is being printed now. 7. When will it be published?—I think it will be published in a fortnight. 8. I was ordered to translate three pages. 9. There was quarrelling and wrangling.



EXERCISE XXI. *Résumé of the Cases in which the English Passive Voice is rendered by a different construction in German :—*

|  |   |
|--|---|
| He is said (supposed) to be very rich.                     | Er soll sehr reich sein. Ex. xvi.<br>(Il doit être...).                           |
| It cannot be denied.                                       | Es läßt sich nicht läugnen.<br>Ex. xviii.   |
| He is not allowed to go.<br>(Il ne lui est pas permis...). | { Er darf nicht gehen. Ex. xvii.<br>Es ist ihm nicht erlaubt zu gehen.<br>Ex. xx. |
| I had him punished.  | { Ich ließ ihn bestrafen. Ex. xviii.  |
| I ordered him to be punished.                              | { (Je le fis punir.)  |
| I have been told (On m'a dit).                             | { Man hat mir gesagt.<br>Ich habe mir sagen lassen.                               |
| That is understood.  | Das versteht sich (Cela s'entend).  |
| The thunder was heard to roll.                             | Man hörte den Donner rollen.  |

By the *Gerundive*, see pp. 123-5

|   |  |
|---|--|
| What is to be done?                     | Was ist zu thun?   |
| There is nothing to be gained by it.    | Dabei ist nichts zu gewinnen.  |
| The physician is to (must) be sent for. | { Man muß den Arzt holen lassen.<br>Es muß nach dem Arzt geschickt werden. |
| What shall I be thought of?             | Was wird man von mir denken?   |

*Recapitulation :—*

1. They are said to have done their work very well.
2. The dark clouds were seen to pass over the mountains.
3. The master ordered the passive voice to be learnt by heart.
4. It could not be imagined that it was true.
5. There was nothing to be hoped for.
6. What would you be thought of, if you were to do that?
7. We are not allowed to be from home, when once the gates are shut.
8. If you were disposed to do your work well, you would be rewarded.
9. There was nobody to be found.
10. I am (supply—*it*) not accustomed to be treated thus.

EXERCISE XXII. *Impersonal Verbs*, see § 54, p. 74.

In addition to the more or less exclusively Impersonal Verbs denoting—

*Natural phenomena* : as, es schneit, es regnet, &c.

*Bodily sensations* : as, es dürstet mich, es hungert mich, &c.

*Mental affections* : as, es ahnt mir, es dünkt mich (mich dünkt, methinks), &c.

there are in German a great many *transitive* and *intransitive* Verbs which admit of being used *impersonally* to a much wider extent than English Verbs :—

They are best classified according to the constructions by which they are to be rendered in English :—

(a) answering to an *English Impersonal Verb*, with *there* or *it* for its *grammatical subject* : as,

Es sind nun drei Jahre her. *It is now three years since.*

Es gibt, *there is, there are.* Was gibt's? *what is the matter?*

Es hat...gegeben, &c., *there has been...* Es wird...gegeben haben,

Es wird geben, &c., *there will be...* there will have been...

(b) answering to an *Engl. verbal form in -ing* predicating *there is*, or *it is*; or to an *Infinit. Passive* predicating *it can*.

Thus in the case of many German Verbs used—

(1) *passively*, see Ex. XX. : as,

|                                   |   |   |
|-----------------------------------|---|---|
| Es wird hier viel gespielt.       | } | <i>There is much playing going on here.</i> |
| or, Hier wird viel gespielt.      |   |   |
| Es wurde die ganze Nacht getanzt. |   | <i>There was dancing the whole night.</i>   |

(2) *reflexively*, see Ex. XXIII. : as,

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Es wohnt sich hier ganz bequem.         | <i>It is very comfortable to live here. (A very snug place, this!)</i> |
| Es traf sich, daß wir zusammen ankamen. | <i>It so happened that we arrived together.</i>                        |
| Das versteht sich (Cela s'entend).      | <i>That is understood (a matter of course).</i>                        |

So especially with *lassen*, Ex. XVIII. ; as,

Es läßt sich nicht läugnen.

*There is no denying.*

Es läßt sich leicht denken.

*It can easily be imagined.*

(c) answering to an *Engl. Personal verb* with a logical subject (whilst in German the logical subject is put in the Dat. or Acc. case): as,

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <b>Es</b> ist mir gelungen.                             | <i>I have</i> succeeded.                |
| Wie geht's? (Comment cela va-t-il?)                     | How are you? How do you get on?         |
| <b>Es</b> liegt ihm viel daran.                         | <i>He is</i> very anxious about it.     |
| <b>Es</b> gefällt mir in Paris.                         | <i>I like</i> Paris.                    |
| <b>Es</b> verlangt mich dich zu sehen (Il me tarde...). | <i>I long</i> to see you.               |
| <b>Es</b> fragt sich, ob...                             | The question is whether...              |
| <b>Es</b> fehlt an Geld.                                | Money is wanting.                       |
| <b>Es</b> wird seiner rühmlichst gedacht.               | <i>He is</i> most honourably mentioned. |
| <b>Es</b> gilt das Leben.                               | Life is at stake.                       |
| Was gilt's?   | What do you bet?                        |

So especially with *sein* and *werden* :—

|   |                                  |
|---|----------------------------------|
| <b>Es</b> ist mir } nicht wohl zu<br>or, Mir ist } Mut. | <i>I don't</i> feel comfortable. |
| <b>Es</b> wird mir warm; }<br>or, Mir wird warm.        | <i>I begin</i> to feel warm.     |

(d) answering to an *English Imperative* : see Ex. IX.

|                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| Jetzt wird gelesen! | { Now we are going to (let us) read. Now for a reading! |
|---------------------|---|

Here may be classed—

(e) the emphatic use of *es*, to introduce a Verb preceding its logical subject (a very common construction in German, the unusual order being more forcible):—

|   |                                  |
|---|----------------------------------|
| <b>Es</b> lebe der König!                       | Long live the king!              |
| <b>Es</b> bebt die Erde (die Erde bebt).        | The earth quakes.                |
| <b>Es</b> grüßen euch alle Brüder.              | All the brethren greet you.      |
| <b>Es</b> führt kein andrer Weg nach Küssnacht. | No other way leads to Küssnacht. |

"Men are liable to certain feelings, such as shame, fear, repentance, and the like, which seem *not* to be originated by the *person*, but seem to come upon him from without. For this reason such *impersonal* feelings are in some languages represented by *impersonal* verbs. In Latin such verbs are numerous, 'pudet,' 'piget,' 'tædet,' 'pœnitet,' 'libet,' &c. In early English they were still more numerous, and we retain 'it snows,' 'it hails,' 'it rains,' though we have almost, or quite, lost 'methinks,' 'me-seems,' 'it shames me,' 'it repents me.'"

A. 1. Ist es Ihnen gelungen ihn zu überzeugen?—Noch nicht, aber es freut mich zu sehen, daß es ihn reut.  
 2. Was gibt es Neues hier?—Es ist ein großes Unglück geschehen.  
 3. Warum ist Ihnen so bang zu Muthe?—Ach, ich weiß nicht wie es kommt, aber es ahnt mir ein Unglück.  
 4. Es schläfert mich, darf ich schlafen gehen?—Es ist mir ganz einerlei.  
 5. Fehlt es am Wind, so greife zum Ruder!  
 6. Es schlägt nicht immer ein, wenn es donnert.  
 7. Es ist mir lieb, daß du gekommen bist.

8. Es donnern die Höhen, es zittert der Steg,  
 Nicht grauet dem Schützen auf schwindlichem Weg!  
 SCHILLER.

9. Mit einem Herren steht es gut,  
 Der, was er befohlen, auch selber thut!  
 10. Kennst du das Land? auf Säulen ruht sein Dach,  
 Es glänzt der Saal, es schimmert das Gemach.

GOETHE.

B. 1. Does it always rain in Scotland?—No, sometimes it snows.  
 2. It is cool, for it has been lightning and thundering the whole night.  
 3. There are *people* (Leute) who are not pleased *with this place* (say—here).  
 4. We do not feel comfortable in this house.  
 5. Has he succeeded in translating this chapter from English into French?—No, he has not succeeded.  
 6. That can easily be done.  
 7. Has it not been very cold?—Yes, it has been freezing.  
 8. The question is whether he is to be punished or not.  
 9. That is all the same to them.  
 10. Methinks you will not succeed.  
 11. We are very sorry (that) you cannot come.  
 12. Water was wanting.  
 13. We were anxious to see you.  
 14. It is comfortable to rest here.  
 15. We long to meet him.  
 16. Was it you?—You are quite mistaken, it was he.

EXERCISE XXIII. *Reflexive Verbs*, see § 55, p. 75.

A German *Reflexive Verb* may be rendered in English either—

(a) by a *corresponding reflexive Verb* : as,

|                                |                                      |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Ich wasche mich.               | I wash myself.                       |
| Er hat sich wader vertheidigt. | He (has) defended himself gallantly. |

or, if the English usage does not admit of the reflexive construction,

(b) by the *Passive Voice* : as,

|                                   |                              |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Sie irren sich (v.v. trompez).    | You are mistaken.            |
| Es versteht sich (Cela s'entend). | It is understood.            |
| Er versteht sich auf Alles.       | He is skilled in everything. |

(c) by a *transitive verb* with an object qualified by a possessive adjective, if this object denotes part of the body or a mental faculty : as,

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Der reuige Sünder schlug sich die Brust (Le pécheur repentant se frappa la poitrine). | The penitent sinner smote his (own) breast. |
| Ich zerbreche mir den Kopf einen Ausweg zu finden.                                    | I am racking my brains to find a stratagem. |

(d) by the various other constructions : as,

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Wie befinden Sie sich?                                      | How do you do?                         |
| Vom sichern Port läßt sich's gemächlich raten (Ex. xviii.). | Safe in the port it is easy to advise. |
| Worum handelt es sich?                                      | What is the question about?            |
| (De quoi s'agit-il?)  |  |
| Es handelt sich es kühn zu wagen.                           | The question is to attempt it boldly.  |

Obs. 1. *Reflexive Verbs* take either—

(1) an *Accusative* of the *Person* affected by the action, and a *Genitive* of the *Object* of the *Action* :—

|                           |                 |
|---------------------------|-----------------|
| Ich erinnere mich dessen. | I recollect it. |
|---------------------------|-----------------|

or (2) an *Accusative* of the *Thing*, and a *Dative* of the *Person* :—

|                                |                                    |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Du bildest dir was Großes ein. | You fancy yourself mightily great. |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|

Obs. 2. Notice the *factitive* use of *Reflexive Verbs* :—

|                    |                               |
|--------------------|-------------------------------|
| Sich trant lachen. | lit. To laugh one's self ill. |
| Sich müde laufen.  | lit. To run one's self tired. |

A. 1. Gewöhne dich frühzeitig dich zu beherrschen!—Ich bestrebe mich Ihrem guten Räte zu folgen. 2. Wie befindet sich Ihre Fräulein Schwester?—Ich habe mich heut Morgen nach ihrer Gesundheit erkundigt. 3. Erinnern Sie sich noch des Märchens von den sieben Raben?—Ja freilich, ich ergötze mich noch oft es wieder zu lesen. 4. Das junge Herrchen bildet sich was ein!—Ja, man möchte sich krank lachen. 5. Nehmen Sie sich in Acht!—Ich danke sehr, aber ich fürchte mich vor Niemand. 6. Läßt sich das beweisen?—Das versteht sich. 7. Beide Feldherrn maßen sich die Ehre des Sieges an.

B. 1. The earth moves round its axis. 2. The delight of the good old man cannot be described. 3. I still remember how we lost our way in the dark forest. 4. How do you do?—I am very well. 5. We are preparing to accompany him on his journey. 6. Next month we shall betake ourselves to the country. 7. Where have you met him?—I have met him at Cologne. 8. You must be very tired, sit down beside us. 9. I long to see you again! 10. The question now is to find the shortest way home. 11. I am washing my hands. 12. Honour is at stake.

#### EXERCISE XXIV. A. INSEPARABLE Compound Verbs.

The formation and conjugation of these, as compared with *Separable* Compound Verbs, are given on pp. 76–78. For the better understanding of their use, it remains to illustrate by examples the bearing of the inseparable prefixes (*be-*, *ge-*; *ent-*, *emp-*, *er-*, *ver-*, *zer-*) on the *meaning* or *force* of the Simple Verbs to which they are prefixed.

(a) *be-* (cognate with the prep. *bei*, *by*) is used—

(1) to make *intransitive* verbs *transitive*, denoting the application of an action to a special object: as,

|                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| leben, to live; beleben, to animate.  | streiten, to quarrel; bestreiten, to dispute. |
| weinen, to weep; beweinen, to bewail. | wachen, to be awake; bewachen, to watch:—     |

Er steigt auf den Thron.

He steps on the throne.

Er bestiegt den Thron.

He ascends the throne.

(2) to give a different direction to the action expressed by a *transitive* verb: as,

|                                 |                                  |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Er säet den Samen auf das Feld. | } He sows the seed in the field. |
| Er besäet das Feld mit Samen.   |                                  |

It will be seen (1) that the *Indir. Obj.*, denoting the *recipient* (das *Feld*) of the simple verb (*ſäen*) becomes the *Direct Object* of the compound verb (*beſäen*); and that (2) *vice verſa*, the *Dir. Obj.* (denoting the *material*, den *Samen*) of the simple Verb becomes the *Indir. Complement* (mit *Samen*) of the comp. Verb.

Er malt Bilder auf die Wand. He paints pictures on the wall.

Er bemalt die Wand mit Bildern. He *be*paints the wall with pictures.

Er ſchenkte ihm einen Thaler. lit. He gave to him a dollar.

Er beſchenkte ihn mit einem Thaler. He *pre*sented him with a dollar.

Ich fürchte ihn (or, mich vor ihm). I fear him.

Ich befürchte einen Unglücksfall. I dread (apprehend) a misfortune.

Hence in the *passive voice*—

Das Bild wird (iſt) gemalt. Die Wand wird (iſt) bemalt.

Cf. also—Der Tiſch iſt gedeckt. Die Alpen ſind mit Schnee bedeckt.

or (3) to form *transitive* verbs from *Nouns* and *Adjectives* denoting—to *endow with* (i.e. with that which is expressed by the Noun or Adj.): as,

der Thau, the dew;

beſthauen, to bedew.

der Rauſch, the intoxication;

berauſchen, to intoxicate.

der Geiſt, the ſpirit;

begeiſtern, to inspire.

das Glück, the happineſs;

beglücken, to make happy.

die Gabe, the gift;

begaben, to endow (begabt, gifted).

der Flügel, the wing;

beſflügeln, to give wings.

frei, free;

befreien, to free.

feucht, moist;

beſeuchten, to bedew, moisten.

In a few caſes the ſimple form is loſt:—beginnen, to begin.

(b) *er-* denotes *forth from*, *out of*, and is uſed to expreſs—

(1) the origin or gradual progreſs of an action or condition: as,

ſcheinen, to ſhine; erſcheinen, to appear. ziehen, to draw; erziehen, to educate.

[i.e. *er-* (cognate with Lat. *ex-*) + ziehen (cognate with Lat. *ducere*)]

bauen, to build; erbauen, to edify. blind, blind; erblinden, to become blind.

(2) the *obtaining* of an object by means of the action expreſſed by the Simple Verb: as,

betteln, to beg;

erbetteln, to obtain by begging.

trogen, to deſy;

ertrogen, to obtain by threats.

denken, to think, to cogitate;

erdenken, to excogitate; to contrive.

ſehen to look;

erblicken, to perceive.

(c) *ge-* conveys no very definite meaning ; in *gefrieren* (from *frieren*, to freeze), and *gerinnen*, to coagulate (from *rinnen* to run), it suggests an idea of *concentration* ; comp. the formation of Nouns denoting companionship, as—*Gesellschaft*, company ; *Gespiele*, playmate, &c.

(d) *ent-* \* (older form *-ant*, as in *Antwort*, answer) denotes not only *towards*, *against* (the speaker), but also *away from* (with respect to the starting point) :—

|                               |  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| <i>sprechen</i> , to speak ;  | <i>entsprechen</i> , to correspond.                          |
| <i>springen</i> , to spring ; | <i>entspringen</i> , to spring <i>up</i> ; to take its rise. |
| <i>kommen</i> , to come ;     | <i>entkommen</i> , to escape.                                |
| <i>laufen</i> , to run ;      | <i>entlaufen</i> , to run <i>away from</i> .                 |
| <i>Erbe</i> , inheritance ;   | <i>enterben</i> , to <i>disinherit</i> .                     |
| <i>Thron</i> , throne ;       | <i>enthronen</i> , to <i>dethrone</i> .                      |
| <i>Haupt</i> , head ;         | <i>enthaupten</i> , to <i>behead</i> .                       |
| <i>mutig</i> , courageous ;   | <i>entmutigen</i> , to <i>discourage</i> .                   |

\* Or *emp-*, by assimilation : the dentals *nt* become the labials *mp* before the labial *f* in the strong verbs—*empfangen*, *empfehlen*, *empfinden*.

(e) *ver-* (cognate with *vor*, English *for* in *forsake*) is used—

(1) in the sense of *away*, *off*, *wrong*, *amiss* : as,

|                                    |   |
|------------------------------------|---|
| <i>kennen</i> , to know ;          | <i>verkennen</i> , to <i>misjudge</i> .                     |
| <i>leiten</i> , to lead ;          | <i>verleiten</i> , to <i>mislead</i> .                      |
| <i>geben</i> , to give ;           | <i>vergeben</i> , to <i>forgive</i> ; to give <i>away</i> . |
| <i>lernen</i> , to learn ;         | <i>verlernen</i> , to <i>unlearn</i> .                      |
| <i>achten</i> , to esteem ;        | <i>verachten</i> , to <i>despise</i> .                      |
| <i>salzen</i> , to salt ;          | <i>versalzen</i> , to <i>oversalt</i> .                     |
| <i>spielen</i> , to play ;         | <i>verspielen</i> , to <i>gamble away</i> .                 |
| <i>essen</i> , to eat ;            | <i>freissen</i> ( <i>veressen</i> ), to <i>devour</i> .     |
| <i>brauchen</i> , to need, rouse ; | <i>verbrauchen</i> , to <i>consume</i> ; to spend.          |

or (2) simply to intensify the meaning of the stem : as,

*ändern*, *verändern*, to alter ; *bergen*, *verbergen*, to conceal.

(3)—with *Nouns*—to denote the process of *covering with*, *transforming into* : as,

*Gold*—*vergolden*, to gild ; *Silber*—*versilbern*, to silver.  
*Stein*—*versteinern*, to petrify ; *Gott*—*vergöttern*, to idolize, &c.

(4) with *Adjectives* (in the positive or comparative) in the sense of 'to endow with (or, intensify) the quality' expressed by the adj. : as,

*dünn*, thin ; *verbünnen*, to dilute ; *schöner*, finer ; *verschönern*, to embellish.



(f) *zer-* (cognate with *dis*, asunder) denotes *separation, dissolution, disintegration*; hence *ruin, destruction, annihilation*, &c. : as,

fallen, to fall; zerfallen, to decay.  
 stören, to disturb; zerstören, to destroy.

Examples of the modifications of meaning :—

(1) *stehen, to stand* :—

Die Luft **besteht** aus Sauerstoff und Stickstoff. Air *consists of* oxygen and nitrogen.

**Gestehen** Sie, daß Sie schuldig sind? Do you *confess* that you are guilty?

Er wird ein Haus **ersehen**. He will *purchase* a house.

Ein großes Feuer kann aus einem kleinen Funken **entstehen**. A great fire can *originate* from a small spark.

**Verstehen** Sie mich? Do you *understand* me?

(2) *fallen, to fall* :—

Ein großes Unglück hat ihn **befallen**. A great misfortune has *befallen* him.

Das Wort ist mir **entfallen**. The word has *escaped* my memory.

Diese Pläne **gefallen** mir nicht. These plans do not *please* me.

Die Mauern des alten Schlosses sind **zerfallen** (*verfallen*). The walls of the old castle are *decayed* (*in ruins*).

A. 1. Alles Irdische vergeht. 2. Etwas **erfinden** ist ganz was anders, als etwas **entdecken**; die Sache, die man **entdeckt**, existierte schon vorher; was man **erfindet**, war vor der Erfindung noch gar nicht vorhanden. 3. Alles was auf Erden **erblüht**, muß auch wieder **verblühen**.

B. 1. Do you know who (has) invented (the) gunpowder? —A certain monk, Berthold Schwarz, is said to have invented it quite accidentally. 2. If you do not learn a language scientifically, you will have to unlearn a great part of *what* (= *that which*) you have learnt so laboriously. 3. Qui s'excuse s'accuse. 4. The maiden strewed flowers on her mother's grave. 5. She bestrewed the grave with flowers. 6. These vile courtiers have obtained the king's favours by flattering. 7. You will obtain nothing by threats. 8. The poor ill-treated slave ran away from his inhuman master, and lost his way in the desert. 9. We were very well received and entertained. 10. In the letter which my correspondent has written to me, the scenery is very picturesquely described.

EXERCISE XXV. B. *SEPARABLE Compound Verbs*,  
see § 58, p. 79.

The formation and conjugation of these is given at full length, §§ 56–58 ; it remains to show how the place of a *separable* prefix is affected, if the compound verb is contained in a *dependent* clause :—

| <i>Principal Clause.</i>            | <i>Dependent Clause.</i>   |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| Er führt den Plan aus.              | Der Plan, den er ausführt, ist gut.                                |
| Er führte den Plan aus.             | Ich möchte, daß er ihn ausführte.                                  |
| Er hat (hatte) den Plan ausgeführt. | Der Plan, den er ausgeführt hat (hatte).                           |
| Er wird den Plan ausführen.         | Ich zweifle ob er ihn ausführen wird.                              |
| Er wünscht den Plan auszuführen.    | Der Plan, den er auszuführen wünscht.                              |
| Er wird ihn bald ausgeführt haben.  | { Wenn er ihn ausgeführt haben wird (or, wird ausgeführt haben,... |

A. 1. Wo triffst du deinen Freund an?—Ich habe ihn nicht angetroffen, weil er ausgegangen war. 2. Des Alters Kräfte nehmen immer ab ; aber seine Bürden nehmen täglich zu. 3. Stehe mir bei!—Hilf dir selbst, so wird dir Gott helfen. 4. Die Thoren knüpfen die Knoten, die Weisen machen sie auf. 5. Drücke den Pfeil nicht zu schnell ab, der nimmer zurückkehrt. 6. Die feindlichen Truppen hielten nicht Stand.

B. 1. The birds of passage emigrate at (= bei with Dat.) the approach of winter into warmer countries. 2. Velvet and silk put the fire in the kitchen out. 3. Do begin to copy these letters ; you know that you have to send them to the post-office before half-past eleven. 4. Do not spend so much money, else you will have nothing left in your old age. 5. The sun was just setting behind the snow-covered Alps, when we arrived. 6. He continued to read the newspaper, although we did not listen to him. 7. You look very sad ; has, perhaps, a misfortune befallen you ? 8. Call for me, before you set out for Australia. 9. When the days grow shorter, the nights grow longer. 10. Have you taken your medicine?—No, I have thrown it out of the window (= to-the window out), it was so nasty !

EXERCISE XXVI. *SEPARABLE Compound Verbs*,  
see pp. 80, 81.

Besides the *simple Prepositions* and *Adverbs* used as *separable* prefixes, as, *ab-*, *an-*, *auf-*, *aus-*, *bei-*, *durch-*, *ein-*, *mit-*, *nach-*, *um-*, *vor-*, *wider-*, *zu-* : &c., *dar-*, *fort-*, *empor-*, *her-*, *hin-*, *los-*, *wieder-*, &c., there are a great number of (a) *Compound adverbs*, (b) *Adverbial phrases*, (c) *Adjectives*, and (d) *Nouns*, which are treated as separable prefixes : as,

| (a) <i>Infinit. and Supine.</i>                                 | <i>Pres. and Pret.</i>                         | <i>Part. Perf.</i>                       |
|---|--|--|
| <i>aufrecht</i> -halten, to maintain.<br>(lit. to hold upright) | <i>ich halte...aufrecht</i> ;<br>I maintain.   | <i>aufrecht</i> gehalten,<br>maintained. |
| <i>aufrecht</i> zuhalten, in order to<br>maintain.              | <i>ich hielt...aufrecht</i> ;<br>I maintained. |  |

Thus—

*davon*-rennen, to run *away*.

*dazu*-thun, to add (*to*).

*dazwischen*-geraten, to get *be-*  
*tween*.

*entgegen*-gehen, to go and *meet*.

*entgegen*-kommen, to come and  
*meet*.

*voran*-eilen, to walk *before*,  
precede.

*voran*s-setzen, to suppose.

*vorbei*-fahren, to drive *by*.

*zurück*-senden, to send *back*.

Notice especially the compounds of—

*her-*, *hither* ; *here* ;  
(denoting motion *towards* the  
speaker) :—

*herab*-kommen, to come *down*.

*herunter*-fallen, to fall *down*.

*herauf*-fahren, to drive (come)  
*up*.

*heran*-kommen, to come *on*, ap-  
proach.

*herein*-treten, to step (come) *in*.

*heraus*-treten, to step (come) *out*.

*herüber*-fahren, to drive *over*  
(*hither*).

*daher*-stolzieren, to strut *along*.

*herbei*-rufen, to call (*to the spot*).

*hin-*, *thither* ; *there* ;  
(denoting motion *away from*  
the speaker) :—

*hinab*-gehen, to go *down*.

*hinunter*-fallen, to fall *down*.

*hinauf*-fahren, to drive (go) *up*.

*hinau*-arbeiten, to tend *to*.

*hinein*-treten, to step (go) *in*.

*hinaus*-treten, to walk (go) *out*.

*hinüber*-fahren, to drive *over*  
(*thither*).

*dahin*-sprengen, to dash *away*  
(*off*).

*hinweg*-schicken, to send *away*.

- (b) *Infinitive* :— sich in Acht nehmen, to take care.  
*Supine* :— (um) sich in Acht zu nehmen, in order to take care.  
*Pres. Indic.* :— ich nehme mich in Acht, I take care.  
*Pret. Indic.* :— ich nahm mich in Acht, I took care.  
*Imperat.* :— nimm dich in Acht! take care!  
*Pres. Perf.* :— ich habe mich in Acht genommen, I have taken care.  
*Fut. Pres.* :— ich werde mich in Acht nehmen, I shall take care.  
*Condit. Perf.* :— ich würde mich in Acht genommen haben, I should have taken care.

Thus—im Stiche lassen, to leave in the lurch; zu Stande bringen, to bring about, &c.

| (c) <i>Infinit. and Supine.</i>     | <i>Pres. and Pret.</i> | <i>Part. Perf.</i> |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------|--------------------|
| frei-sprechen, to acquit;           | ich spreche...frei;    | freigesprochen,    |
| freizusprechen, in order to acquit. | ich sprach...frei;     | acquitted.         |

Thus—gleich-kommen, to equal; hoch-schätzen, to esteem.

| (d)                                       |                   |               |
|---|-------------------|---------------|
| Dank-sagen, to give thanks.               | ich sage...Dank;  | Dank gesagt,  |
| Dank zu sagen (in order), to give thanks. | ich sagte...Dank; | given thanks. |

Thus—statt-finden, to take place; haus-halten, to husband.

A. 1. Komme doch herauf, Karl!—Ich will lieber warten, bis du herabkommst. 2. Wo gehen Sie hin?—Wo Sie herkommen. 3. Warum rufst du ihn nicht herbei?—Er ist ja davongelaufen. 4. Ich habe meinen Freund nicht angetroffen, weil er ausgegangen war. 5. Wann kehren Sie wieder heim?—Zu Weihnachten kehre ich heim. 6. Gehen Sie ihr doch entgegen!—Sie sehen ja, daß ich mich anschicke ihr entgegenzu-gehen. 7. Das Kind schlief um halb acht ein, und wachte erst um ein viertel auf neun wieder auf. 8. Was hast du heute vor?—Ich schicke mich an, Schiller's „Lied von der Glocke“ auswendig zu lernen.

*B.* 1. When do you begin to copy your letters?—I should have begun long ago, if I had not been prevented. 2. In spring the days increase, in autumn they decrease. 3. Read something to me till I fall asleep!—Very well, I will read you Thompson's *Seasons*. 4. Come down stairs immediately. 5. A heavy avalanche rolled down the slope of the mountain. 6. Communicate to me what you have heard. 7. Who are you, and where do you come from? 8. Let us go in before they come out. 9. When do you get up in summer?—At half-past seven; and I go to bed at a quarter-past eleven. 10. Turn that brawler out at once. 11. Do not go there, rather come here. 12. Several swallows flew out of the window. 13. He spends a great deal of money; if he continues to live in that style, it will soon be over with him. 14. We heard the guests come up-stairs.

*C.* 1. Ich sage Ihnen herzlich Dank dafür, daß Sie mich nicht im Stiche gelassen haben. 2. Der Fuchs sagte zum Wolf: „Vor dem Menschen hält Keiner Stand.“ 3. Das vom Sturm verschlagene Schiff ging mit Mann und Maus zu Grunde. 4. Dieses Unternehmen nimmt alle meine Kräfte in Anspruch, und ich werde Alles ins Werk setzen um es schleunigst zu Stande zu bringen. 5. Der unerschrockene Tell bot dem tyrannischen Landvogt Trotz. 6. Des Lebens ungemischte Freude ward keinem Irdischen zu Theil. 7. Morgen steh ich euch Rede. 8. Baumgarten, der haushält zu Allzellen, hat dem Landvogt das Bad gesegnet. 9. Der Hund thut dir nichts zu Leide.

*D.* 1. We ought to take care. 2. Do not leave me in the lurch. 3. A great favour has fallen to my share. 4. Our troops kept their ground valiantly. 5. We thanked him for taking part in our misfortune. 6. This spendthrift ruined himself with gambling. 7. You will have to put up with bread and cheese. 8. Call him to account. 9. The conjugation of these Compound Verbs absorbs all my time. 10. I will not harm you, if you will answer me.

**EXERCISE XXVII. C. Prefixes SEPARABLE or INSEPARABLE, pp. 80, 81.**

The Prefixes *durch-*, *über-*, *unter-*, *um-*, may be either *separable* or *inseparable*, according as the Compound Verb is used—

(a) in a *literal* or *concrete* sense; the prefix (*accented*, and hence *separable*) is only incidentally tacked before the Verb, and detached from it when the laws of construction allow it.\*

*N.B.*—If *separable*, these Compound Verbs, may be *transitive* or *intransitive* like the Simple Verbs with which they are compounded:—

*Infin.* *über-setzen*, to set (put) over.

*Part. P.* *über-gesetzt*, set (put) over:—

(1) *Intransitive*, or (2) *Transitive*:—

(1) Der Soldat *setzt über* den Fluß.  
The soldier *sets over* (crosses) the river.

Er hat *über den Fluß gesetzt*.  
Es ist ihm gelungen *über* den Fluß zu *sehen*.

(2) Der Führmann *setzt* (puts) den Soldaten *über* den Fluß.

\* The fact is, the *normal place* of the *separable prefix* is *after* the Verb; but the prefix is dislodged from this place by the peculiarity of German construction, which requires the *Infin.* or *P. Part.* to stand *last* in principal clauses, and the *finite Verb* to stand *last* in dependent clauses. Hence—

*Pres.* Man *streicht* die Stelle *durch*. *Infin.*:— Ich will sie *durch-streichen*.

*Pret.* Man *strich* die Stelle *durch*. *P.P.*:— Ich habe sie *durch-gestrichen*.

*Imper.* *Streiche* die Stelle *durch*. *Dep. Clause*:— Die Stelle, die ich *durch-streiche*.

*Obs.* It will be seen—

(1) that the *separable* Compound Verb, if *transitive*, has its *Dir. Obj.* independently of the prefix, which stands in *adverbial relation*—

*Dir. Obj.*      *Advl. compl. of place.*

Ich pflanze die Bäume *um*' (adv.).

I transplant the trees.

Ich pflanze die Bäume *um* (prop.) *die Quelle*. I plant the trees round the well.

(b) in a *derived* or *abstract* sense; the prefix (*unaccented*, and hence *inseparable*) is indissolubly rivetted to the Verb (and, as it were, rolled into one with it).

*N.B.*—If *inseparable*, these Compound Verbs are *always transitive*, no matter whether the Simple Verbs be themselves *transit.* or *intrans.*:—

*über-setz'en*, to translate.

*über-setzt'*, translated:—

*Transitive only*:—

Boß *über-setzte* den Homer.  
Voss translated Homer.

Boß hat die Ilias *über-setzt*.  
Es gelang ihm sie zu *über-setzen*.

(2) that the *inseparable* Compound Verb (always *transitive* with these prefixes), has a different object (the *acc.* of the *recipient*, as in the case of the inseparable prefix *be-*, see pp. 146, 147):—

| <i>Dir. Obj.</i><br>( <i>recipient</i> ).   | <i>Adel. compl. of instrument.</i>                                   |
|---|--|
| Sch <i>unpflanzte</i> die Quelle  | mit Bäumen.  |
| Compare further—  |  |
| <i>Inf.</i> un'ter-schreiben, to write<br>under.  | unterschr'eiben, to subscribe,<br>sign.                              |
| <i>P.P.</i> un'ter-geschrieben, written<br>under.   | unterschr'i'ben, signed.   |
| Er schreibt seinen Namen,<br>unter die Bittschrift.   | Er unterschreibt' den Brief.   |
| He writes his name under<br>the petition.   | He signs the letter.   |
| <i>Inf.</i> durch'-streichen, to line<br>through.   | durchstrei'chen, to scour.   |
| <i>P.P.</i> durch'-gestrichen, lined<br>through.  | durchstrich'en, scoured.   |
| Der Lehrer streicht die Fehler<br>durch'. The master<br>runs his pen through<br>the mistakes. | Der Feind durchstreich't' das Land.<br>The enemy scours the country. |
| <i>Inf.</i> ü'ber-gehen, to go over.  | überge'hen, to skip.   |
| <i>P.P.</i> ü'bergegangen, gone over.   | übergan'gen, skipped.  |
| Ein ganzes Regiment ging zum<br>Feinde über. (— ist zum<br>Feinde übergegangen.)              | Er überg'ing' die Stelle.<br>Er hat die Stelle übergangen.           |

A. 1. Er hat die ganze Nacht durchwacht, und sich mit Lesen unterhalten. 2. Unterlaß' nicht mir alles mitzutheilen was dir wiederfahren ist. 3. Der Spion hat die Nachricht hin-terbracht, daß der Feind die Stadt umringt habe. 4. Wieder-hole diese schöne Stelle!—Ich habe sie schon dreimal wieder-holt. 5. Uebersetzest du gerne vom Englischen ins Lateinische? —Nein, lieber übersetze ich vom Lateinischen ins Englische. 6. Er reißt hier durch'.—Er durchreiß't' das Land. 7. Jeder-mann geht gern mit pünktlichen Menschen um'. 8. Der Feind umging den Paß. 9. Auf meinen Reisen habe ich manchen Wald durchwandelt, manch Gebirg überstiegen, manche Höhle durchtrocken, und oft unter freiem Himmel über-nachtet.

*B.* 1. Have you read Tennyson's new poem?—I have not yet had time to read it attentively, I have only run over it. 2. You have undertaken a very difficult task. 3. When you reach Treib, you will do well to ask the ferryman to put you over the lake. 4. He has moved his quarters to Dresden. 5. Have you amused yourself well? 6. Idleness goes slowly before; poverty soon overtakes it. 7. Let us know (= communicate to us) what has happened to him. 8. One day when Robinson Crusoe roamed through his island, he discovered human footprints. 9. At this sight his hair stood on end, and the blood curdled in his veins. 10. You must handle this pistol very carefully; I am told it is loaded.

### THE SUBSTANTIVE.

#### EXERCISE XXVIII. A. THE GENDERS OF SUBSTANTIVES, § 9, pp. 6-9.

1. Put the *definite* Article before the following Nouns, and give the several rules:—

Unsterblichkeit, immortality; Frühling, spring; Kranz, garland; Kupfer, copper; Elbe; Landschaft, landscape; Erlaubnis, permission; Götze, din; April; Geographie; Essen und Trinken, eating and drinking; Fräulein, miss; Abtei, abbey; Freiheit, freedom; Ehre, honour; Fürstentum, principality; Oeffnung, opening; schöne Italien; Schwesterchen, little sister.

2. Put the *indefinite* Article before the following Nouns:—

Gebrüll, roaring; Käfig, cage; Auszeichnung, distinction; Blume, flower; Finsternis, darkness; Erbschaft, inheritance; Auge, eye; Zögling, pupil; Vogel, bird; Vög(e)lein, little bird; Dummheit, stupidity; Schicksal, fate; Haß, hatred.

3. Put a *possessive* or *demonstrative* Pronoun before the following Nouns:—

Regierung, government; Leben, life; Weib, woman; Gebirge, chain of mountains; Kuh, cow; Pferd, horse; Schlacht, battle; Sicherheit, security; Arznei, medicine; Wärme, warmth; Bistum, bishopric.

Mut, courage; Sanftmut, meekness. Teil, part; Gegenteil, contrary. Hut, hat; Gut, guard. Band, volume; Band, ribbon. Heide, heath; Heide, heathen. Mark, mark (= shilling); Mark, borderland. Schild, signboard; Schild, shield. See, sea; See, lake. Thor, gate; Thor, fool. Reis, rice; Reis, twig.



## EXERCISE XXIX. B. USE OF THE ARTICLES.

(a)—As in *English*—the *Definite Article* is used—

(1) in an *individual* sense, i.e. to single out one individual out of a whole class :—

Die rechte Hand ist geübter als die linke.      The right hand is more practised than the left.

(2) in a *comprehensive* sense, i.e. to show that the Noun is used to denote a *whole Class* :—

Der Löwe ist der König der Wüste.      The lion is the king of the desert.

(b) but—contrary to *English usage*—the *Definite Article* is also used in German—

(1) before *Concrete Nouns* in the *Plural*, representative of the whole Class, see (a) 2 :—

Die Blätter sind der Schmuck der Bäume.      Leaves are the ornaments of trees.

Thus also before *Collective Nouns* :—

Das Glas soll von den Phöniziern entdeckt worden sein.      Glass is said to have been discovered by the Phœnicians.

*Obs.* The omission of the Article before *Collective Nouns* generally implies that they are used in a *partitive sense*; compare—

Das Gold ist ein edles Metall.      Gold is a precious metal.  
Gold und Silber habe ich nicht.      Gold and silver have I not.

(2) before *Abstract Nouns* used in their *unlimited* sense :—

Das Leben ist kurz, die Kunst ist lang.      Life is short, art is long.  
Die Astronomie ist eine exacte Wissenschaft.      Astronomy is an exact science.

*Obs.* As in *English*, the Article may be omitted for the sake of brevity in *Proverbs*, *Enumerations* (especially if alliterative), and in *familiar style* :—

Gelegenheit macht Diebe.      Opportunity makes the thief.  
Schutz und Trutz.      Defence and defiance.

Here may be classed the following Nouns which are treated as *abstract* :—

der Tod, death;      die Demokratie, democracy.  
die Natur, nature;      das Schicksal, fate.  
die Monarchie, monarchy; der Zufall, chance, &c.

Also the many *Collective Nouns* :—

das Parlament, parliament; die Regierung, government, &c.

(3) before *Proper Nouns* denoting *Mountains, Streets, Seasons, Months* :—

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Der <b>Besuv</b> und der <b>Aetna</b> sind<br>Vulkane.          | Mount Vesuvius and Aetna are<br>volcanoes.                        |
| Die <b>Wilhelmsstraße</b> , die <b>Thurm-</b><br><b>gasse</b> . | William Street, Tower Lane.                                       |
| Der <b>Frühling</b> ist angenehmer als<br>der <b>Winter</b> .   | <i>Spring</i> is more pleasant than<br><i>winter</i> .            |
| Im <b>Juni</b> sind die Nächte kürzer<br>als im <b>Januar</b> . | In <i>June</i> the nights are shorter<br>than in <i>January</i> . |

Here may be classed the following names of earthly and unearthly abodes :—

|                                  |                                     |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| der <b>Himmel</b> , Heaven ;     | die <b>Erde</b> , Earth.            |
| das <b>Elysium</b> , Elysium ;   | das <b>Geg(e)feuer</b> , Purgatory. |
| das <b>Paradies</b> , Paradise ; | die <b>Hölle</b> , Hell.            |

Notice also that places of *worship, business, &c.*, as *die Kirche, die Schule, die Börse*, are generally used *without* article in English, especially if used in adverbial relation, but *with* the article in German :—

At church, *zur* (in *der*) *Kirche* ; in school, in *der Schule* ; on change, auf *der Börse*.

*Obs. 1.* As generally in English, names of *ivers, seas, and lakes*, take the Def. Art. :—

|                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| der <b>Rhein</b> , the Rhine ; | die <b>Donau</b> , the Danube.             |
| der <b>Ocean</b> , the Ocean ; | der <b>Genfersee</b> , the Lake of Geneva. |

*Obs. 2.* Names of *Countries* take the Def. Art., only—

(a) if, by exception, they are *masculine or feminine* (cf. p. 8) ; as,

Der **Rheingau**, **die Schweiz**, **die Türkei**, &c. Rheingau, Switzerland, Turkey.

(b) if qualified by an Adjective ; as,

**das wüste Arabien**. Stony Araby (Araby the desert).

*Obs. 3.* *Proper Names of Persons* take the Def. Art. only—

(a) if they are deficient in case-inflection (owing to their final stem-consonant), in which case the def. art. is used to show their case ; as,

• Die Reden **des Demosthenes**. The speeches of Demosthenes.

(b) if used *familiarly*, or *qualified* by an Adjective ; as,

Wie lange **der Johann** doch ausbleibt ! How late *Jacky* is !

Das ist **der Tell**. That is *Tell*.—Der alte **Friz**. *Old Frederick* (the Great).

*Obs. 4.* Before two or more consecutive Nouns of different gender and number the Article must, of course, be repeated before each :—

Der Vater, die Mutter, und **das Kind**. The father, mother and child.

*N.B. 1.* For the use and contraction of the Article with *zu* depending on *factive* Verbs, see Ex. XLI.

2. For the use of the *Def. Article* in German instead of a *Possess. Adj.* in English, see Ex. XLVI.

A. 1. Der Löwe ist das Sinnbild der Stärke, der Fuchs das der List. 2. Gleich dem Gold und den Diamanten, verdankt das Lob seinen Wert nur seiner Seltenheit. 3. Die Dichtkunst und die Musik haben ihren Grund in der Natur des Menschen, und gehören allen Nationen und allen Zeiten an. 4. Die Erfahrung des Mangels erhöht den Wert des Ueberflusses. 5. Nichts verkürzt die Zeit so sehr wie die Arbeit. 6. Der Prinz Eugen und der Herzog von Marlborough lieferten den Franzosen unter dem Marschall Tallard am 13ten August, 1704, eine Schlacht. 7. Der Adam und die Eva des verlorenen Paradieses sind schöne Schöpfungen der dichterischen Phantasie.

B. 1. Youth is the spring-time of life. 2. Swallows are the heralds of spring. 3. Sleep is the image of death. 4. Necessity is the mother of invention. 5. Envy is to man what rust is to iron. 6. The desert is the realm of the lion. 7. The Jura mountains divide France from Switzerland, and the Alps divide Switzerland from Italy. 8. The voice of conscience is the voice of a judge. 9. He devoted himself with great zeal to the study of astronomy and chemistry. 10. We have been reading the tragedies of Aeschylus and Sophocles. 11. Who sows the wind, will reap the whirlwind. 12. Idleness is the beginning of all vices. 13. In winter we live in town, in summer *in* (= *on*) the country. 14. Pericles was a disciple of Anaxagoras. 15. February has only twenty-eight days; in leap-years twenty-nine. 16. What a contrast between foggy England and sunny Italy! 17. Is he at school?—No, he is at church.

**EXERCISE XXX.** Summary of *Phrases* in which German and English differ in the use of the *Articles* :—

(a) *Indef. Article* in English :— *Definite Article* in German :—

|   |   |
|---|---|
| He has <i>a right</i> to...               | Er hat <b>das Recht</b> zu...             |
| He is in <i>a condition</i> to...         | Er ist in <b>der Lage</b> zu...           |
| With <i>a desire</i> (an intention) to... | Mit <b>dem Wunsch</b> (der Absicht) zu... |

|  |                                |
|--|--------------------------------|
| Twice <i>a year</i> , &c.                | Zweimal <b>des Jahres</b> .    |
| Ten shillings <i>a yard</i> , &c.        | Zehn Mark <b>die Elle</b> .    |
| A shilling <i>a pound</i> , &c.          | Eine Mark <b>das Pfund</b> .   |
| A few ( <i>a great many</i> ) books, &c. | Einige (viele) <b>Bücher</b> . |

(b) *Indefinite Article* in English : *No Article* in German :—

(1) with a Noun used as a *predicate-complement* to *sein* or *werden*, or after *als* :—

|                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| She is <i>a mother</i> .           | Sie ist <b>Mutter</b> .                |
| He became <i>a sailor</i> .        | Er wurde <b>Matrose</b> .              |
| He treated me <i>as a friend</i> . | Er behandelte mich <b>als Freund</b> . |

(2) in a certain number of *standing phrases* :—

|                                |                                     |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| To have <i>a mind</i> .        | Lust haben.                         |
| To take <i>a fancy</i> for...  | Geschmack finden an...              |
| To fly into <i>a passion</i> . | In Zorn (Wuth) gerathen.            |
| To have <i>a head-ache</i> .   | Kopf schmerzen (Kopfschmerz) haben. |
| To have <i>a talent</i> for... | Anlage haben zu...                  |
| To have <i>a share</i> in...   | Antheil haben an...                 |

|                     |               |
|---------------------|---------------|
| Many <i>a man</i> . | Mancher Mann. |
|---------------------|---------------|

(c) *No Article* in English : *Definite Article* in German :—

|                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| To lose <i>sight</i> of some one. | Jemanden aus <b>dem Gesicht</b> verlieren.   |
| To take up <i>arms</i> .          | <b>Die Waffen</b> ergreifen.                 |
| To cast (weigh) <i>anchor</i> .   | <b>Den</b> (die, <i>pl.</i> ) Anker sichten. |
| To suffer <i>death</i> .          | <b>Den Tod</b> erleiden.                     |
| To be <i>at stake</i> .           | Auf <b>dem Spiele</b> stehen.                |
| To go <i>to sea</i> .             | <b>Zur See</b> gehen.                        |
| To come <i>to light</i> .         | <b>Aus Licht</b> kommen.                     |
| To put <i>to flight</i> .         | <b>In die Flucht</b> schlagen.               |
| To be <i>of opinion</i> .         | <b>Der Meinung</b> sein, &c.                 |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| To elect (appoint) president, &c.<br>(see Ex. XL). | Zum (zu-dem) <b>Präsidenten</b> erwählen, &c. |
|--|---|

(d) *Possess. Adj.* in English :—  
(see Exs. XXXIX. and XLVI.)

*Def. Art.* (with or without *Pers. Pron.*) in German :—

Go out of *my* way !

Geh *mir* aus *dem* Wege !

(Otez-vous *du* chemin !)

Give me *your* hand.

Gib mir *die* Hand.

(Donne-moi *la* main !)

*The place of the Article in German is different from English in the following and similar cases :—*

**Die beiden Schüler.**

*Both the pupils.*

**Der doppelte Preis.**

*Double the price.*

**Ein solcher** (or—ein solcher) Mann.

*Such a man.*

**Was für eine kurze Zeit !**

*How short a time !*

**Ein halbes Dutzend.**

*Half a dozen.*

**Eine zu kleine Belohnung.**

*Too small a reward.*

**Ein rechter Esel.**

*Quite an ass.*

**Ein so reicher Mann.**

*So rich a man.*

**Die ganze Stadt.**

*All the (= the whole) town.*

A. 1. Our professor of ancient history lectures twice a week. 2. Big Tom has become a soldier. 3. Have you a mind to take a share in this concern?—No, I am not in a condition to invest money. 4. Honour is at stake. 5. Both the partners have absconded. 6. He is quite a blockhead. 7. What do you want, wine or beer?—I want half a bottle of wine. 8. I am of opinion that such a rich man as he is ought to pay double the price. 9. The peasants took up arms and put the invaders to flight. 10. That is too heavy a burden for such a small pack-horse. 11. Hell is paved with good intentions. 12. Hypocrisy is a sort of homage that vice pays to virtue. 13. When father heard that I had gone to sea, he flew into a passion. 14. The cruelty of tigers has become a proverb. 15. The play is at an end. 16. Eggs *are* (= *cost*) a mark and a half a dozen.—Well, I will take half a dozen.

## C. DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

## Synoptic Table of German Declensions.

|  | Strong.  |  |   | Mixed.   | Weak.  |  |
|--|--|--|---|--|--|--|
|  | 1.   | 2.   | 3.  |  | 1.   | 2.   |
| MASCULINE :—<br>Sing. {<br><i>Nom.</i><br><i>Acc.</i><br><i>Gen.</i><br><i>Dat.</i><br>Plur. {<br><i>N. &amp; A.</i><br><i>Gen.</i><br><i>Dat.</i> | der <i>Zeit</i> ,<br>den — <i>es</i> ,<br>deß — <i>e</i> ,<br>dem — <i>e</i> ,<br>die <i>Zeit-e</i> ,<br>der — <i>e</i> ,<br>den — <i>en</i> . | <i>Zeit</i> ,<br>— <i>es</i> ,<br>— <i>e</i> ,<br><i>Zeith-er</i> ,<br>— <i>er</i> ,<br>— <i>ern</i> . | <i>Zeimer</i> ,<br>— <i>s</i> ,<br>— <i>s</i> ,<br><i>Zeimer</i> ,<br>— <i>s</i> ,<br>— <i>n</i> .            | <i>Zeit</i> ,<br>— <i>es</i> ,<br>— <i>e</i> ,<br><i>Zeiten-en</i> ,<br>— <i>en</i> ,<br>— <i>en</i> . | <i>Zeit</i> ,<br>— <i>n</i> ,<br>— <i>n</i> ,<br>— <i>n</i> ,<br><i>Zeiten-n</i> ,<br>— <i>n</i> ,<br>— <i>n</i> . | <i>Zeit</i> ,<br>— <i>n</i> ,<br>— <i>n</i> ,<br>— <i>n</i> ,<br><i>Zeiten-n</i> ,<br>— <i>n</i> ,<br>— <i>n</i> . |
| NEUTER :—<br>Sing. {<br><i>N. &amp; A.</i><br><i>Gen.</i><br><i>Dat.</i><br>Plur. {<br><i>N. &amp; A.</i><br><i>Gen.</i><br><i>Dat.</i>            | das <i>Jahr</i> ,<br>deß — <i>es</i> ,<br>dem — <i>e</i> ,<br>die <i>Jahr-e</i> ,<br>der — <i>e</i> ,<br>den — <i>en</i> .                     | <i>Jahr</i> ,<br>— <i>es</i> ,<br>— <i>e</i> ,<br><i>Jahrb-er</i> ,<br>— <i>er</i> ,<br>— <i>ern</i> . | <i>Jeuer</i> ,<br>— <i>s</i> ,<br>— <i>s</i> ,<br><i>Jeuer</i> ,<br>— <i>s</i> ,<br>— <i>n</i> .              | <i>Jhr</i> ,<br>— <i>es</i> ,<br>— <i>e</i> ,<br><i>Jhre-en</i> ,<br>— <i>en</i> ,<br>— <i>en</i> .    | <i>None</i> .  | <i>None</i> .  |
| FEMININE :—<br>Sing. {<br><i>N. &amp; A.</i><br><i>G. &amp; D.</i><br>Plur. {<br><i>N. &amp; A.</i><br><i>Gen.</i><br><i>Dat.</i>                  | die <i>Stadt</i> ,<br>der — <i>e</i> ,<br>die <i>Städt-e</i> ,<br>der — <i>e</i> ,<br>den — <i>en</i> .  | <i>None</i> .  | <i>None</i> .<br><i>pl. exceptionally</i><br>{ <i>Die Stätter</i> ,<br>{ <i>Die Stätter</i> ,<br>— <i>n</i> . | <i>None</i> .  | <i>Stene</i> ,<br>— <i>e</i> ,<br><i>Stene-n</i> ,<br>— <i>n</i> ,<br>— <i>n</i> .                                 | <i>Stene</i> ,<br>— <i>e</i> ,<br><i>Stene-n</i> ,<br>— <i>n</i> ,<br>— <i>n</i> .                                 |

EXERCISE XXXI. *Strong Declension*, §§ 11-13, pp. 12-15.

A. 1. The Arabs call the camel the ship of the desert. 2. Greece is the cradle of fine arts. 3. How long have you [now] been residing in those countries? 4. "The power of song" is the title of a poem by Schiller. 5. These castles and palaces are said to belong to the king. 6. There are too many errors in these dictionaries. 7. If you had allowed these apples and nuts to ripen on the trees, they would have a better flavour. 8. The eagle is the king of birds. 9. The snow-clad summits of the mountains were glowing in the light of the sun. 10. The dogs kept such good watch that the wolves tried in vain to penetrate into the stables. 11. The sport of the cats is the death of the mice. 12. Young gamblers, old beggars.

EXERCISE XXXII. *Mixed Declension*. See § 14, p. 16.

A. 1. Bitte, wie heißen Sie?—Erinnern Sie sich denn meines Namens nicht mehr? 2. Wo haben Sie Ihre erste Studien gemacht?—In den Gymnasien von Berlin und Dresden. 3. Von welchen Kaufleuten ist die Rede?—Von den Kaufleuten von Venedig. 4. Liegt Ihnen das am Herzen?—Ja freilich, es ist mir eine Herzensangelegenheit. 5. Weshalb wurden die Waldenser verfolgt?—Um ihres Glaubens willen. 6. Welche Hauptwörter bilden ihren Genitiv auf -ens?—

Buchstabe, Friede, Funke, Fels und Name,  
Gedanke, Glaube, Haufe, Wille, Schade, Same.

B. 1. Bees are very interesting insects, are they not?—So they are (= that are they). 2. Walls have ears, says the proverb. 3. Our ancestors were subjects of tyrants. 4. We grow these plants only for the sake of the seed. 5. Many petty states of Greece were governed by tyrants. 6. The peasants have suffered great damage. 7. The messengers of peace are as the rays of the sun after a thunderstorm. 8. The stings of the wasps cause great pain (*plur.*). 9. There are thousands of insects which escape our eyes. 10. Three times a day did Daniel invoke the name of the Lord.

EXERCISE XXXIII. *Weak Declension*, § 15, pp. 18, 19.

1. All men are more or less the slaves of their passions. 2. Philosophers say that vices are the diseases of the soul. 3. Where do dates grow?—Only in hot climes. 4. Fish live in seas, lakes, rivers, brooks, and ponds. 5. Wolves, foxes, bears, wild boars, are tenants of forests. 6. If these grapes were ripe, I should buy half a pound of them. 7. Voltaire relates that Peter the Great established colleges, academies, printing-offices, and libraries. 8. England has more colonies than all the other countries of Europe put together. 9. The ancient Greeks and Romans worshipped many gods. 10. Hope is the anchor of the soul. 11. Deeds were done, quite worthy of the heroes of antiquity. 12. The nights are as long in December as the days in June. 13. Philosophers tell us that riches do not make us happy; but many a man thinks that they are not to be despised. 14. There are no roses without thorns.

EXERCISE XXXIV. *Different forms of the Plural of Nouns.*  
Appendix, §§ 70, 71, pp. 96.

1. These words are not to be found in any dictionaries. 2. *At* (= *by*) these words the hostages turned pale. 3. What pretty red ribbons there are in these shops. 4. This edition of Schiller's works consists of twelve volumes. 5. The Maid of Orleans is said to have had visions. 6. What faces these monkeys are cutting! 7. The failure of these banks has ruined several respectable merchants. 8. We are quite sick of these everlasting quarrels. 9. These precautions will prevent many vexations. 10. The newspapers are teeming with reports of contentions, frauds, robberies, and deaths. 11. In the mountains of the Engadine the herdsmen, when they spy a bear, keep up great fires during the night (see Ex. XXXVII.). 12. I have ordered twelve bottles \* [of] wine.

\* *Masculine and Neuter names of measure, weight, &c., remain unchanged in the Plural:—*

Der Leich ist sieben Fuß (m.) tief.  
Vierzig Buch (n.) Papier machen  
zwei Ries (n.).  
So also with—Mann, man (soldier)—  
But, *feminine*—Sehn Ellen Tuch.

The pond is seven feet deep.  
Forty quires of paper make two  
reams.  
Zwanzig Mann Einquartierung.  
Ten yards of cloth.



## EXERCISE XXXV. DECLENSION OF PROPER NOUNS.

See § 16, p. 23.

A. 1. Was für ein Buch lesen Sie da?—Es ist: „Der Staat Friedrichs des Großen.“ 2. Haben Sie das Leben des Kaisers Alexander gelesen?—Nein, aber des berühmten Goethe's Werke habe ich gelesen. 3. Wem gehören diese prächtigen Forsten?—Sie sind das Besizthum des Grafen von Goetz. 4. Welches ist die größte Stadt von Deutschland?—Berlin, die Hauptstadt des Königreichs Preußen. 5. Wer war Otto der Große?—Er war ein Sohn Heinrichs des Vogelfellers.

B. 1. Whose son was Charlemagne?—He was a son of Pepin the Short. 2. By whom was the great German reformer protected?—By Frederick the Wise. 3. In the battle of Rossbach the French were defeated by Frederick the Great. 4. Have you ever read the life of Henry the Fourth, King of France?—Yes, that I have. 5. Whose house is that?—It is the house of the Prince of Salm. 6. The code which bears the name of the Emperor Justinian was composed by the most celebrated jurists of his time. 7. The songs of Theodore Körner, the bard of the German wars of independence, are full of truly patriotic enthusiasm. 8. The death of the Emperor Augustus occurred in the year 14 A.D.

## D. CASES OF NOUNS.

## EXERCISE XXXVI. THE NOMINATIVE AND THE ACCUSATIVE.

I. The *Nominative* stands either as the *Subject* of a Clause, or as a *Predicate-Complement* of the Verbs *sein*, *werden*, *scheinen*, *bleiben*, *heißen*, *nennen*, &c.: as,

Ein böser Nachbar ist ein tägliches Unglück.

Mein Freund wird Soldat.

Er bleibt mein Freund.

Er heißt Karl.

Bist du es?—Ja, ich bin es.

A bad neighbour is a daily misfortune.

My friend is becoming a soldier.

He remains my friend.

He is called (his name is) Charles.

Is it you?—Yes, it is I (I am he).

A Noun in apposition is, as a rule, put in the same case as the Noun it qualifies:—

Zum Kampf der Wagen und Gefänge zog Jbhus, der Götterfreund.

II. The *Accusative* stands—(a) as the *Direct* (or, nearer) *Object* of a *transitive Verb*: as,

Ich schreibe einen Brief.

I am writing a letter.

Wen hast du gesehen, ihn oder sie?

Whom did you see, him or her?

Belustigst du dich? \*

Do you amuse yourself?

\* *Reflexive Verbs* govern either—

- (1) the *Accusative* + the *Genitive*; or (2) the *Dative* + the *Accusative*.  
 (of the person) (of the thing) (of the pers.) (of the thing)

Ich erinnere mich dessen.

Du hast dir die Hand verletz.

*Obs. 1.* Although, on the whole, German Transitive Verbs correspond to English Transitive Verbs, there are not a few which do not govern the same case in the two languages: as,

With *Accusative*; with *Dative*.

to imitate, nachahmen.  
 to meet, begegnen.  
 to help, assist, helfen, beistehen.  
 to believe, glauben.  
 to thank, to owe, danken.

With *Accusative*; with *Dative*.

to obey, gehorchen.  
 to follow, folgen.  
 to please, gefallen.  
 to threaten, drohen.  
 to serve, dienen, &c.

This is all the more important to remember because, as has been explained in Ex. XX., p. 140, only Verbs which govern the *accusative* may be used in the *personal Passive Voice* in German:—

*Active*: They pursue me. Man setzt mir nach.*Passive*: I am pursued. Mir wird nachgesetzt (not—ich werde nachgesetzt).

For those Verbs which, *vice versa*, govern the *Acc.* in German, but the *Dat.* in English, see Ex. XXXIX.

*Obs. 2.* Many *intransitive Verbs* become *transitive* by being compounded with the inseparable prefixes *be-* (see p. 147), *durch-*, *hinter-*, *über-* *um-* (see p. 154).

(b) as the *Predicative Complement* of a *Direct Object* (*Double Accusative*), especially after Verbs of *teaching* (lehren), *calling* (heißen), *naming* (nennen), *asking* (fragen): as,

Wer hat dich das gelehrt?

Who has taught you that?

Man heißt den Löwen oft den

The lion is often called the

König der Wüste.

king of the desert.

Was hast du ihn gefragt?

What have you asked him?

*Obs.* This rule does not apply to Verbs of *electing*, *appointing*, *creating*, *making*, for which see Ex. XL.

(c) as the *Cognate Object* of an originally *intransitive Verb* ("by a stretch of the conception, especially in poetry and animated language."—ROBY, *Lat. Gr.*, § 469).

Er schläft den Schlaf eines Gerechten.

He sleeps the sleep of the just.

Kämpfe den guten Kampf.

Fight the good fight.

Er starb den Heldentod.

He died the death of a hero.

(d) as the *logical Subject of an Impersonal Verb* (the *impers. Pron. es* standing generally by way of introducing the Verb, see Ex. XXII.): as,

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Es hungert mich, or Mich hungert.<br>(i.e. ich bin hungrig.) | (= <i>Obsol. Engl.</i> : It hungers me.)<br>I am ( <i>feel</i> ) hungry. |
| Es dünkt mich, or Mich dünkt.                                | Methinks.  |
| Dieses Jahr gibt es einen guten Wein.                        | There will be good wine this year (i.e. good wine will grow this year).  |

(e) as an *Adverbial Complement*—

(1) of *definite time*—answering the questions *when? how long?* : as,

|                               |                             |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Montag, den dritten April.    | Monday, the third of April. |
| Ich arbeitete den ganzen Tag. | I worked the whole day.     |

(2) of *space or measure*—answering the questions *how far? how great? how high? how old? how much?* &c., especially with the *Adjectives*—weit, groß, hoch, alt, wert, &c., and the *Verbs*—kosten, wiegen, gelten, &c. : as,

|  |                                       |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| Der Ballen wiegt einen Zentner.        | } The bale weighs a hundred-weight.   |
| Der Ballen ist einen Zentner schwer.   |                                       |
| Der Turm ist drei hundert Fuß hoch.    | The tower is three hundred feet high. |
| Wie alt ist das Kind?—Nur einen Monat. | How old is the baby?—Only one month.  |

(3) of *attendant circumstance* (accusative absolute) :—

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Den Tornister auf dem Rücken,<br>wanderte er über Berg und Thal. | With the knapsack on his shoulders, he wandered over hill and dale. |
|--|---|

(f) as the *Complement of a Preposition* governing the Accusative—see §§ 63, 65 ; and Exs. LI., LIII.

For the rendering of the English *Acc.* with *Infinit.* by a finite Verb in German, see Ex. VI.

A. 1. Betrachten Sie ihn als Ihren Freund?—Ja, er ist und bleibt mein Freund. 2. Wie tief ist das Meer hier?—Nur einen Faden. 3. Gehen Sie den Berg hinauf?—Ja, diesen Abend gehen wir bergauf. 4. Was that Dornröschen im verzauberten Schlosse?—Sie schlief den Zauber-

schlaf. 5. Wie viel kostet Sie dieses Buch?—Es kostet mich nur einen Thaler. 6. Warum haben Sie mich einen Narren gescholten?—Ich bitte Sie um Verzeihung. 7. Er hat den Nagel auf dem Kopf getroffen. 8. Laß mich dich bitten nur einen Augenblick Geduld zu haben. 9. Der arme Kerl jammert mich!—Warum jammert er dich?—Weil (es) ihn hungert und friert. 10. Ein Esel schilt den andern einen Langohren (Prov.).

11. Ueb' immer Treu und Redlichkeit,  
 Bis an dein kühles Grab;  
 Und weiche keinen Finger breit  
 Von Gottes Wegen ab!—HÖLTY.

12. Wer nie sein Brot in Thränen aß,  
 Wer nie die langen kummervollen Nächte  
 Auf seinem Bette weinend saß,  
 Der kennt euch nicht, ihr himmlischen Mächte.

GOETHE.

B. 1. The writers of the middle ages called Attila the scourge of God. 2. We fought a hot battle. 3. What does he teach you?—He teaches me singing. 4. The lily is called the emblem of innocence. 5. Leonidas, with his three hundred Spartans, died a glorious death. 6. How old is your youngest sister?—She is only one day old. 7. How do you sell these grapes?—I sell them half a dollar a pound. 8. The first of January. 9. He is ashamed of his conduct. 10. Is it he?—No, it is she.

C. 1. Let me ask you only *one more* (= noch eine) question. 2. Are you hungry?—No, I am thirsty.—Then I pity you. 3. This old book is not worth a red farthing. 4. There are insects which only live one day. 5. We met him the other day. 6. Help me!—Help thyself, *and* (say —so) Heaven will help thee. 7. That does not please me at all! 8. What does not please you, if I may ask?—Your getting up so late. 9. I thank you sincerely for your good advice. 10. Will you obey me or not?—I shall do as I please (= *what pleases me*).—But I will be obeyed. 11. He has been thanked for the services he has rendered. 12. Consider a flatterer as your enemy. 13. Practice makes perfect (= *the master*).

EXERCISE XXXVII. *The GENITIVE depending on a NOUN.*

*N.B.* For practical purposes it will be convenient to sub-divide the uses of the Genitive into the *Subjective* and *Objective*—a distinction which an example or two will suffice to make plain :—

| <i>Subject.</i>                  | <i>Object.</i> | <i>Subj. Genit.</i>  | <i>Objective Genit.</i>         |
|----------------------------------|----------------|----------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>Alexander</i> despised        | <i>danger</i>  | = <i>Alexander's</i> | contempt of <i>danger</i> .     |
| <i>Alexander</i> betrachtete die | <i>Gefahr</i>  | = <i>Alexanders</i>  | Betrachtung der <i>Gefahr</i> . |

I. The *Subjective Genitive* is used to denote relations of—

|   |                                 |
|---|---------------------------------|
| (a) <i>possession, origin, extraction, quality, definition, &amp;c.</i> : as, |                                 |
| Das Heer des Kaisers, or—   | The army of the emperor ; or,   |
| Des Kaisers Heer.   | The emperor's army.             |
| Schillers Werke. Die Werke  | Schiller's works. The works     |
| des Dichters.   | of the poet.                    |
| Das Sinnbild der Unschuld.  | The symbol of innocence.        |
| Nürnberger (gen. pl.) Waaren.   | Nuremberg wares.                |
| Ein Gasthof ersten Ranges.  | A first-class hotel.            |
| (or—von erstem Range.)  | An hotel of the first rank.     |
| Ein Schüler Namens Karl.  | A pupil of the name of Charles. |

|   |                                   |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| (b) <i>a part or fraction to the whole (Partitive Genitive)</i> : as, |                                   |
| Der größte Theil des Adels.   | The greater part of the nobility. |
| Ein Centner des feinsten Schieß-                                      | A hundredweight of the finest     |
| pulvers.*   | gunpowder.                        |

\* As a rule, a Collective Noun is put in the Genitive only if qualified by an Adjective or an Adjectival Clause ; see II.

*Obs.* After *genug, wenig, viel, mehrere*, and *cardinal numbers*, the Genitive is not unusual :—

Der Worte sind genug gewechselt. A truce to the contention !

**Caution.**—Relations of *possession, origin, quality, &c.*, are rendered by the prep. *von*, with the *Dative* in the case of Nouns used without a determinative adjunct (article, adjective, or pronoun), indicating the Genitive relation ; especially—

(1) if the Noun itself is *altogether devoid of case-inflections* (Proper Nouns ending in a sibilant being indeclinable, p. 23) : as,

Die Bevölkerung von Paris.

(2) if the Noun is in the *Genitive Plural*, the inflection of which does not distinguish it from the *Nom.* or *Acc.* : as,

Ein Mann von dreißig Jahren (The *Gen. pl.* *dreißig Jahre* would not convey a distinctive Genitive relation—*dreißig* being *indeclinable*, and *Jahre* having the same ending as in the *Nom.* and *Acc.*).

This important rule applies particularly to—

(a) *Proper names of Countries and Places*: as,

Das **Obst von Nantes**. Die **Eroberung von Cadix**.

Even with Proper Names with a case-inflection, *von* is preferred—

Die **Königin von England** (England's Königin, only in poetic diction).

Das **Erdbeben von Lissabon**. The earthquake of *Lisbon*.

*Obs.* This does not apply to *Feminine Names of Countries* (which *must* be used with the Def. Art.) nor to Proper Names of *Persons*: as, die **Berge der Schweiz**; die **Schulen der Türkei**; die **Weisheit des Sokrates**.

(b) Nouns denoting *material, quality, definition, &c.*, which (being used *partitively* or *adjectively*) take no *def. article*: as,

Ein **Ring von Gold**. A ring of *gold*.

Ein **Mann von Talent** (von A man of *talent* (of heart).

**Herz**).

Eine **Familie von hohem Ansehen**. A family of *high* *repute*.

(c) Nouns qualified by *cardinal numbers*, which are devoid of case-inflections: as,

Ein **Zeitraum von sechs Wochen**. A period of *six* *weeks*.

(d) *Pronouns, Numerals, Adjectives in the Superlative degree*, used *Substantively*: as,

Wer **von euch**? Who *among you*?

Welcher **von beiden**? Which of *the two*?

Der **Reichste von Allen**. The *richest of all*.

Sieben **von (unter) ihnen**. Seven of *them*.

Here the Genitive, though not ungrammatical, is hardly ever used.

## II. THE PARTITIVE RELATION IN APPPOSITION.

An Attribute used *partitively* after a Noun denoting—*measure, weight, number, &c.*, is, as a rule, simply put in *apposition* (without case-inflection or preposition): as,

Ein **Glas Wein**. A glass of *wine*.

Ein **Buch Papier**. A quire of *paper*.

Zehn **Pfund Zucker**. Ten pounds of *sugar*.

Sechs **Duzend Eier**. Six dozen *eggs*.

Eine **Menge Leute**. A quantity of *people*.

Ein **Stück Brot und Käse**. A piece of *bread and cheese*.

Thus also after Nouns denoting *definition*: as,

Das **Königreich Preußen**. The kingdom of *Prussia*.

Die **Stadt (Univerſität) Bonn**. The town (university) of *Bonn*.

Der **Monat März**. The month of *March*.

Eine **Art Insekten**. A kind of *insects*.

\* So also—Ende Februar, Mitte Januar, Anfang Mai, and after *Ordinal Numbers*:—Den ersten April. The first of *April*.

III. The *Objective Genitive* stands as the Object of Verbal Nouns, the verbal force of which still makes itself felt; cf.—

*Subjective* :—

*Objective* :—

**Edisons Erfindungen.** Die Erfindung **des Schießpulvers.**

*Obs.* The *obj. relation* of one Noun to another may also be rendered—

(1) by a *Compound Noun* : as.

Die **Todesverachtung**, instead of—Die Verachtung **des Todes.**

Die **Freiheitsliebe** „ Die Liebe zur (der) Freiheit.

Der **Tyrannenhaß** „ Der Haß gegen die Tyrannen.

(2) by a *Preposition*—generally, the same *Preposition* as would be used after the Verb from which the Noun is derived :—

Sch freue mich **über** } den Erfolg. I rejoice **at** } the success.  
Die Freude **über** }  
The rejoicing **at** }

Sch hoffe auf } Ihren I hope **for** }  
Meine Hoffnung **auf** } Beistand. My hope **for** } your assistance.

The Appositive is put in the same case as the Noun qualified : as,  
Die Thaten **Alexanders des Großen.** (See, however, p. 23.)

A. 1. Ist Ihr Freund ein Mann von Stande?—Ja freilich, und ein Mann von Ehre dazu. 2. Welche von diesen Schülern haben Ihre Aufgaben nicht gemacht?—Das brauchen Sie kaum zu fragen: Die Trägen. 3. Hat Niemand von ihnen Lust mich zu begleiten?—Doch, mehrere von ihnen möchten Sie gerne begleiten. 4. Was stellt diese Bildsäule vor?—Den Kolos von Rhodus. 5. Was lasen Sie in dem ersten Buche von Livius?—Die Sage von der Gründung der Stadt Rom. 6. Die Furcht Gottes ist der Weisheit Anfang.

B. 1. The town of Berne is now the capital of Switzerland. 2. Is this foreigner a man of position?—Yes, of very high position. 3. This poor man is [the] father of six children. 4. The University of Leipzig is frequented by more than three thousand students. 5. In the month of May we shall visit the city of Paris. 6. Which of these students deserve a reward?—Not one of them. 7. Has any one of you a mind to drink a glass of this old wine?—Yes, all of us (say—we all). 8. Have you read the description of the siege of Antwerp in Schiller's *History of the Thirty Years' War*? 9. I have ordered a pair of shoes and two pairs of boots to be made in Paris. 10. The temples of Athens were masterpieces of architecture. 11. Every Greek learnt a part of the poems of Homer by heart.

EXERCISE XXXVIII. *The GENITIVE depending on a VERB or ADJECTIVE.*

A. The *Genitive* stands as an *Indirect Object*—

- (a)—along with the accusative of the Person—after *Transitive* (especially *reflexive*) *Verbs* which denote—

(1) *recollecting, becoming aware of; reminding, accusing, &c., and their contraries—forgetting, excusing, &c.*

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Ich erinnere mich mit Freuden<br>meiner Jugend. | I remember <i>my</i> youth with<br>pleasure. |
| Er ist sich dessen nicht bewußt.                | He is not conscious <i>of it</i> .           |
| Bedenke dich eines Bessern.                     | Think <i>better of it</i> .                  |
| Man hat ihn des Diebstahls<br>angeklagt.        | He has been accused <i>of theft</i> .        |
| Vergiß mein (meiner) nicht.                     | Forget <i>me</i> not.                        |

(2) *participating, presuming, attending, &c. and their contraries—wanting, depriving, exempting: as,*

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Er nahm sich des armen Kindes an.                       | He befriended <i>the poor child</i> .            |
| Die Jünger konnten sich des<br>Schlafes nicht erwehren. | The disciples could not resist<br><i>sleep</i> . |

(3) *feeling: i.e. rejoicing, boasting, repenting, pitying, mocking: as,*

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Gott erbarme sich des Landes!                | May God have mercy <i>on our</i><br><i>country!</i>         |
| Du darfst dich deiner Wahl nicht<br>schämen. | You need not be ashamed <i>of</i><br><i>your choice</i> .   |
| Du rühmst dich deines sichern<br>Blicks.     | You pride yourself <i>on your</i><br><i>steady glance</i> . |

(b) with *Intransitive Verbs* and with *Adjectives* of a similar meaning: as,

|   |  |
|---|--|
| (1) Mein Lebenlang werde ich<br>des Tages gedenken.<br>Ich bin dessen stets eingedenk.<br>Er ist eines abscheulichen<br>Verbrechens schuldig. | All my life-time I shall <i>re-</i><br><i>member the day</i> .<br>I am ever <i>mindful of it</i> .<br>He is guilty <i>of an</i> abominable<br>crime. |
| (2) Es bedarf nicht vieler Worte.<br>Er pflegt seiner Gesundheit.<br>Meiner Bande ward ich los.   | It does not require <i>many words</i> .<br>He takes care <i>of his health</i> .<br>I got rid <i>of my bonds</i> (fettters).                          |
| (3) Sie spotteten seiner.<br>Er ist des Wartens über-<br>drüssig.   | They mocked <i>him</i> .<br>He is tired <i>of waiting</i> .  |



B. The *Predicative Genitive* (generally of the *possessor*) is often used with *sein*, *werden* (expressed or understood): as,  
**Gebet dem Kaiser was des Kaisers ist.** Give unto Cæsar what is Cæsar's.

**Er ist gutes Mutes (guter Dinge).** He is of good cheer.  
**Eelig sind die reinen Herzens sind.** Blessed are those who are pure in heart.  
**Thue was deines Amtes ist.** Do your duty.

C. An *Adverbial Genitive* of *time* (indefinite) *place*, *manner* or *cause*, occurs in many standing phrases—  
**Des Morgens; des Abends; ic.** In the (of a) morning, evening, &c.  
**Seines Weges gehen.** To go one's way.  
**Meines Wissens. Hungers sterben.** To my knowledge. To die of hunger.

For *Prepositions* which govern the Genitive, see p. 90 and Ex. LIV.

A. 1. Ist dieser Schüler einer Belohnung würdig?—Ja, er befließt sich der Wissenschaft. 2. Sind Sie Ihrer Sache sicher?—Keinesweges. 3. Man behauptet er sei des Verbrechens schuldig!—Diese Behauptung ermangelt aller Wahrscheinlichkeit. 4. Hat er sich Ihrer Angelegenheit angenommen?—Im Gegentheil, er ist derselben ganz überdrüssig. 5. Warum wurde Themistocles des Landes verwiesen?—Weil man ihn ehrgeiziger Pläne beschuldigte. 6. Genieße des Guten (or das Gute) was du hast, und lerne dessen (or das) entbehren, dessen (or das) du nicht bedarfst. 7. Wir beklagen uns oft, daß der guten Tage so wenig sind, und der schlimmen so viel, und meist mit Unrecht. 8. Eid und Schwur der einmal worthrücklich Erfundenen haben keine Kraft der Ueberzeugung. 9. Er hat mich eines Bessern belehrt. 10. Entschlage dich dieser trüben Gedanken!

B. 1. This does not require any proof. 2. The minister assured me of his benevolence. 3. *Such* (= a *such*) conduct is unworthy of his high rank. 4. Do you remember me?—No, I cannot remember you. 5. He died (of) a sudden death. 6. We no longer require your assistance. 7. You are now rid of a very unpleasant neighbour. 8. The Italian brigands took possession of all our money and of our watches. 9. It was hardly worth while to remind him of (an) it. 10. There is only one nobility which is essential among all nations—the nobility of the heart and of merit. 11. We thought better of it. 12. Spare me! 13. He consoled himself with the hope of better days.

The general tendency in Modern German is, however, to use the *Accusative* or a *Preposition*, in preference to the *Genitive* which in many cases now only obtains in *standing phrases*, and in *poetic diction*. As no definite rule can be given on this head for the guidance of Students, a brief classified list of Verbs and Adjectives which govern either the *Genitive* or the *Accusative*, or a *Preposition*, is subjoined here for the sake of reference.

(1) *Transitive Verbs* which (along with the *Acc. of the Person*) may be used with either the *Genitive*, or *von* with the *Dative* (of the thing):—

|  |                               |
|--|-------------------------------|
| entbinden, to release from ;           | loßsprechen, to acquit from ; |
| entlassen, } to dismiss, depose from ; | überführen, to convict of ;   |
| entsetzen, }                           | überzeugen, to convince of ;  |
| entmöhnen, to sever from ;             | versichern, to assure of.     |

(2) *Reflexive Verbs* which (along with the *Acc. of the Person*) may be used with either the *Genitive*—or a *Preposition* with the *Acc.* of the thing:—

|  |
|--|
| sich freuen über, to rejoice at (an accomplished fact).                        |
| sich freuen (erfreuen) an (or with Genit.), to rejoice at (something present). |
| sich freuen auf, to rejoice (in anticipation).                                 |
| sich erbarmen über ; sich schämen über ; sich wundern über.                    |
| to have pity on ; to be ashamed of ; to wonder at.                             |

(3) *Intransitive Verbs* which may be used either with the *Genitive*—or, (a) with the *Accusative*:—

|                            |                            |                       |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------|
| achten, to heed, esteem.   | entbehren, to do without.  | schonen, to spare.    |
| bedürfen, to need.         | erwähnen, to mention.      | versehlen, to miss.   |
| begehren, to desire, want. | genießen, to enjoy.        | vergeßsen, to forget. |
| brauchen, to want, use.    | pfelegen, to take care of. | wahrnehmen, to mind.  |

or, (b) with a *Preposition* followed by the *Accusative*:—

Denken an mich, think of me : thus also—

achten (Acht haben) auf, to heed, attend to ; harren auf, to wait for.  
lachen über, to laugh at ; spotten über, to mock at.

(4) *Adjectives* which may be used either with the *Genitive*—or, (a) the *Accusative*:—

|  |                    |                      |
|--|--------------------|----------------------|
| ansichtig (werden), (to get) sight of. | los, free, rid of. | voll (von), full of. |
| gewahr, aware of.                      | müde, tired of.    | wert (Gen.), worthy. |
| gewohnt, accustomed to.                | fatt, sick of.     | wert (Acc.), worth.  |

or, (b) a *Preposition*:—

gewohnt an (Acc.), used (accustomed) to.  
leer von (Dat.), empty ; voll von (Dat.), full of ; frei von (Dat.), free from.  
froh über (see [2] freuen), glad of ; fähig zu (Dat.), capable of.

EXERCISE XXXIX. THE DATIVE.

The *Dative* is the case of *Indirect (Remoter) Object*.\*

It is used with—

(a) *Transitive Verbs*—along with the *Accusative* of the *thing*—

(1)—as in English—in answer to the questions *to whom?* for *whom?* with Verbs of *giving, adding, and the like*: as,

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Er schrieb mir einen Brief.†                                     | He wrote a letter to me.                            |
| Ich will dir vergeben, wenn du mir versprichst ihm zu gehorchen. | I will forgive you, if you promise me to obey him.‡ |
| Gott verlieh dem Menschen Sprache und Vernunft.†                 | God bestowed speech and reason on man.              |

*Obs.* A few Verbs which govern the *Dat.* in English, are construed with a Preposition in German: as,

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| to accustom to, gewöhnen an; | to listen to, hören auf (or zuhören);  |
| to apply to, sich wenden an; | to agree (consent) to, einwilligen in; |
| to attend to, achten auf;    | to bow to, sich verneigen vor.         |

(2)—contrary to *English*, but in analogy with Latin and French—in answer to the question *from whom?* with Verbs of *taking away, removing, preventing, depriving*: as,

|                                   |                                     |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Man nahm mir Alles was ich hatte. | They took from me everything I had. |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Der Fuchs entging der Schlinge.                      | The fox escaped from the snare.          |
| Der Betrüger hat ihm (lui) hundert Pfund abgewonnen. | The cheat won a hundred pounds from him. |
| Kaufen Sie mir doch was ab!                          | Do buy something of me!                  |

*Caution.*—Bear in mind that, with many Verbs, the sign of the *dative to* is often omitted in English, especially if put before the *accusative of the thing*: compare—

|   |                    |
|---|--------------------|
| { The air had given everybody an appetite.    |                    |
| { The air had given an appetite to everybody. |                    |
| { Give me that book.                          | Gib mir dies Buch. |
| { Give that book to me.                       |                    |

\* Among *Compound Verbs*, it is especially those compounded with—

an-, ab-, auf-, aus-, bei-, mit-, nach-, vor-, zu-; be-, ent-, er-, ver-, that govern the *Dative*.

† As a rule, the *Dative* of the *person* is put before the *Acc.* of the *thing*.

‡ For Verbs which govern the *Dat.* in German, and the *Acc.* in English, see Ex. XXVI.

(b) The *Dative* stands after *intransitive Verbs*—

(1) in answer to the questions—*for whom? to whom? for whose good (advantage)? towards what? &c.* : as,  
 So was ist mir noch nie begegnet. Such a thing never happened  
 to me yet.

So gefällst du mir!

Thus thou pleasest me.

Was fehlt dir?

What ails you?

Sie gehen einem gewissen Tod entgegen.

They go to meet a certain death.

Wie geht es dir?—Mir geht es gut.

How are you getting on?—I am very well.

*Obs.* Here may be classed the *Dat. of the person concerned (ethic Dat.)* : as,  
 Du bist mir ein sauberer Bursche! A fine fellow you are, to be  
 sure!

Das war auch ein Spaß!

That was fun, I can assure you!

(2) answering to the English *Possessive Case* or *Possessive Pronoun*—especially with reference to Nouns denoting *part of the body*, or a *mental faculty* : as,

Er klopfte ihm auf die Finger.

He rapped his fingers.

Die Katze sprang dem Räuber in das Gesicht.

The cat flew into the robber's face.

Thränen erleichtern mir das Herz.

Tears relieve my heart.

Geh mir aus dem Wege!

Go out of my way!

Geh diesem Kerl aus dem Weg!

Get out of this man's way!

(c) The *Dative* stands as a *logical (real) Subject*,—generally along with the *grammatical Subject es*,—

(1) with *Impersonal Verbs* : as,

Es thut mir wirklich leid.

I am really sorry for it.

Es liegt dir daran, daß es ihm gelinge.

You are concerned in his being successful.

Mir schaudert's, wenn ich daran denke.

I shudder at the mere thought of it.

Es eckelt ihr vor diesem Gerichte.

She loathes this dish.

(2) with a *Transitive Verb in the Passive Voice*, see Ex. XIX.

Es war mir } nicht vergönnt sie

I was not allowed to see her.

Mir war } zu sehen.

(d) with *Adjectives* denoting *proximity, similarity, fitness, pleasure, friendliness, &c.*, and their contraries : as,

Was dem Einen recht ist, ist dem Andern billig.

What is sauce for the goose, is sauce for the gander.

Deine Kleidung sei deinem Stande angemessen.

Let your dress be in accordance with your station.

Mir wäre besser, ich wäre nie geboren.

It would be better for me, had I never been born.

For the *Dat.* after *Prepositions*, see pp. 87-90, and Exs. LII., LIII.

*Obs.* Bear in mind that the *Apposition* must stand in the same case as the Noun it qualifies:—

Ergeben der Gebieterin, der Gräfin von Savern.

Devoted to his mistress, the Countess of Saverne.

A. 1. Hat er Ihnen sein Vergehen eingestanden?—Ja, und er versprach mir Gehorsam. 2. Wie gefällt es dir auf dem Lande?—Sehr gut, ich lobe mir (*ethic Dat.*) das Land-leben. 3. Was hat dir der Bär ins Ohr geraunt?—Man solle die Bärenhaut nicht verkaufen, ehe man den Bären erlegt habe. 4. Hier bringe ich dir ein kleines Geschenk!—Ich danke dir. 5. Er scheint mir sehr zugethan zu sein.—Traue dem nicht der dir schmeichelt. 6. Wollen Sie mir diese Gefälligkeit erweisen?—Es kann mir nur erwünscht sein Ihnen dienen zu können. 7. Kinder, gehorcht euren Aeltern, denn das ist dem Herrn gefällig. 8. David schlug dem Goliath das Haupt ab. 9. Ich getraue mir nicht Ihnen auf diese schwindlige Höhe zu folgen; sie kommt mir sehr gefährlich vor. 10. Geben Sie mir Recht?—Ei, bewahre! ich gebe Ihnen Unrecht. 11. Er hat es sich sehr sauer werden lassen. 12. Schiller spricht von der Weltgeschichte als einem Weltgerichte. 13. Dem sei wie ihm wolle; mir ahnt ein schweres Unglück. 14. Ich seh' es dir an den Augen an, daß du mir nicht hold bist.

B. 1. This young man resembles his brother very strikingly. 2. Trust him who tells you the truth. 3. The enemy cut off our retreat, and we succumbed to their superior numbers. 4. They advised us not to follow him. 5. Do you think he will do us this kindness?—He will anticipate your wishes. 6. They have escaped a great danger. 7. This white hat does not fit you at all. 8. Were you not present at the show?—Yes, but it was very distasteful to me. 9. We are aware that we are going to meet a certain death. 10. "You will soon get accustomed to our climate," said an Eskimo to our North Pole expedition. 11. Have you met your tailor?—No, what does he want? 12. I cannot advise you to trust him; he is given to drinking. 13. The dog bit his hand. 14. He shook hands with me. 15. I am not conscious of having wronged you.

EXERCISE XL. VERBS WHICH REQUIRE A DIFFERENT CASE OR A DIFFERENT PREPOSITION IN THE TWO LANGUAGES.

A. Most *factitive* Verbs (*i.e.* Verbs denoting—to *make, to appoint, to elect, to consider, to take to be, &c.*) are in English (*as in Latin and French*) construed with a *double Accusative*—*i.e.* an *acc. of the person* appointed, &c., and a *predicative acc.*, denoting the *office or appointment*; in *German* the latter is construed with a *Preposition* (*zu, für*), or with *als*.

The English *Predicative Accusative* is rendered in German

(1) by *zu* with the *Dative*, after the Verbs—

to make, machen; to appoint, ernennen, bestimmen, einsetzen, bestellen.  
to elect, choose, erwählen; to ordain, weihen, &c.

He has been elected *president* Er ist zum Präsidenten erwählt  
(see Ex. XXXIX.) worden.

The prisoners of war were made *slaves*. Die Kriegsgefangenen wurden zu  
Sklaven gemacht.

(2) by *für* with the *Accusative*, after the Verbs—

to take (for), halten; to deem, achten.

to declare, erklären; to pretend to be,\* sich ausgeben, &c.: as,

Do you deem him your friend? Halten Sie ihn für Ihren Freund?

(3) by *als* with the *Accusative*, after the Verbs—

to consider, ansehen, betrachten; to know to be, kennen, &c.: as,

You know me to be\* a man of honour. Sie kennen mich ja als einen  
Ehrenmann.

\* Notice, in English, the use of the *Infinitive* in the sense of *für* or *als*.

*Obs.* A few verbs of this class are also in English construed with *for* or *as*, answering to the German *zu, für*, or *als*:—

A tub served Diogenes *for* a dwelling. Ein Faß diente dem Diogenes zur  
Wohnung.

He passes *for* a prophet. Er gilt für einen Propheten.

A. 1. He was appointed captain on the battle-field.  
2. Man is mortal; he turns to dust. 3. We consider it a  
great honour. 4. Who made you a judge between us?  
5. This deed redounds to his honour. 6. He sets up for a  
scholar. 7. Napoleon first got himself elected consul;  
soon after he made himself emperor. 8. The child becomes  
a man. 9. This warlike character made Rome finally the  
centre of the known world. 10. An empty bottle serves  
him for a candlestick. 11. I deem it my duty to tell you  
the plain truth.

EXERCISE XLI. B. VERBS AND ADJECTIVES REQUIRING  
DIFFERENT PREPOSITIONS (*continued*).

*N.B.*—Only a few representative Cases, illustrating the chief differences between English and German in the use of *Prepositions* after *Verbs* and *Adjectives*, can be given here.

**of :**

As a rule (1) = the *Genitive* ; or = *von*, with *Dat.*, Ex. XXXVII.

- (2) = the *Accus.* :—to approve of, *billigen* ; to admit of, *zulassen*.  
 (3) = *an*, with *Accusative* :— = *an*, with *Dative* :—  
     to think of, *denken an* ;      to doubt of, *zweifeln an*.  
     to remind of, *erinnern an* ;      to be in want of, *mangeln an*.  
 (4) = *auf*, with *Accusative* :— = *auf*, with *Dative* :—  
     proud of, *stolz auf* ;      blind of, *blind auf*.  
 (5) = *aus*, with *Dative* :—  
     to consist of, *bestehen aus* ; to become of, *werden aus*.  
 (6) = *über*, with *Accusative* :—  
     to complain of, *sich beschweren (sich beklagen) über*.  
 (7) = *nach*, with *Dative* :—to smell of, *riechen nach*.  
 (8) = *vor*, with *Dative* :—to be afraid of, *sich fürchten vor*.

**at :**

- (1) = *Accusative* :—to play at, *spielen*.  
 (2) = *über*, with *Accusative* :—  
     to rejoice at, *sich freuen über* ; to grieve at, *sich grämen über*.  
     to laugh at, *lachen über* (to laugh at some one, *auslachen*, with *Acc.*).  
 (3) = *nach*, with *Dative* :—  
     to aim at, *streben nach* ; to throw at, *werfen nach*.

**from :**

- (1) = *Dative*, after Verbs of *depriving*, see Ex. XXXIX., p. 176.  
 (2) = *von*, with *Dative*, see p. 88.  
 (3) = *aus*, with *Dative* :—  
     to arise from, *entstehen aus* ; to expel from, *vertreiben aus*.  
 (4) = *vor*, with *Dative* :—  
     to preserve from, *bewahren vor* ; to secure from, *sichern vor*.  
 (5) = *an*, with *Dative* :—to hinder from, *hindern an*.

**for :**

- (1) = *Accusative* :—to wish for, *wünschen, wollen*.  
 (2) = *für*, with *Accusative*, see p. 86.  
 (3) = *nach*, with *Dative* :—  
     to long for, *sich sehnen nach* ; to send for, *schicken nach*.  
 (4) = *um*, with *Accusative* :—to ask (beg) for, *bitten um*.  
 (5) = *auf*, with *Accusative* :—to wait for, *warten auf*.

**in :**

- (1) = **in**, with *Accusative* or *Dative*, see p. 89.  
 (2) = **an**, with *Dative* :—  
 to believe in, glauben an ; to take part in, teilnehmen an.

**on, upon :**

- (1) = **auf**, with *Acc.* or *Dat.*, see p. 89 :—  
 to depend on, sich verlassen auf (*acc.*).  
 (2) = **über**, with *Accusative* :—to meditate on, nachdenken über.  
 (3) = **von**, with *Dative* :—to depend on, abhängen von.  
 (4) = **mit**, with *Dative* :—to have pity on, Mitleid haben mit.

**to :**

- (1) = *Dative*, see Ex. XXXIX., p. 175.  
 (2) = **zu**, with *Dative*, see p. 88  
 (3) = **auf**, with *Accusative* :—  
 to answer (reply) to, antworten auf ; to listen to, hören (hörchen) auf.  
 (4) = **an**, with *Accusative* :—to accustom to, gewöhnen an.  
 (5) = **nach**, with *Dative* :—to conform to, sich richten nach.

**with :**

- (1) = **mit**, with *Dative*, see p. 87  
 (2) = **auf**, = **über**, with *Accusative* :—to be angry with, zürnen auf ; to be displeased with something, sich ärgern über.  
 (For further details, the Student is referred to the Syntax of Prepositions, Exercs. LI.—LIV., and to the Dictionary.)

A. 1. Glauben Sie an Gespenster?—Nein, so albern bin ich denn doch nicht. 2. Worüber beklagen Sie sich?—Ich beklage mich über seine Trägheit. 3. Verzichten Sie endlich auf Ihre Ansprüche?—Ja, ich verzichte darauf. 4. Haben Sie vor, Ihr Unternehmen durchzuführen?—Nein, dazu mangelt es mir sowohl an Geld als an Geduld.

B. 1. Are you afraid of him?—I am afraid of no one. 2. I long for rest, and you long for your fatherland. 3. Will he be appointed to the post?—No, he is too much wanting in discretion. 4. Do you doubt of the truth of this story?—Yes, but I could not help laughing at it. 5. The master complains of the bad conduct of the boys of this class. 6. Pay attention to his explanation. 7. What are you thinking of?—I am thinking of my promise. 8. I asked him for his advice, and he advised me to apply to the judge. 9. He will not reply to my letter. 10. We rejoice at his advancement. 11. What will become of me in this foggy island? 12. How I long for my beautiful fatherland, sunny Italy !



## EXERCISE XLII. DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

See §§ 17-19; pp. 24-27.

A. 1. Ist Ihre junge Nichte hübsch?—Ja, sie hat eine sehr schöne Stirn, eine wohlgebildete Nase und große blaue Augen. 2. Ist dieser reiche Herr mildbthätig?—Er erweist den Armen viel Gutes. 3. Hat die Natur nicht schon etwas herbftliches?—Leider verwandelt sich das frische Grün der Blätter schon in ein rötliches Braun. 4. Der alte wohlbekannte Nettelbeck war ein deutscher Bürgermann von ächtem Schrot und Korn. 5. Wissen Sie etwas Neues?—Ja, aber nichts Erfreuliches. 6. Haben Sie von dem gestrigen Vorfälle gehört?—Soeben habe ich ihn in der heutigen Zeitung gelesen.

7. Das rechte Wort, die rechte That

Am rechten Ort, schafft rechten Rat.

8. Auf Künftiges rechne nicht, und zähl' nicht auf Bersprochenes;

Klag' um Verlorneß nicht, und denk' nicht an Zerbrochneß.

RÜCKERT.

B. 1. True friendship is only possible between good men. 2. The Roman Emperor Hadrian had such a good memory that he knew the names of all his soldiers. 3. The blind have a quick (fine) ear and a very sensitive touch. 4. Is the harvest of this year as plentiful as last year's?—No, the continual rain has done it great harm. 5. Our unexpected good fortune was too great to be of long duration. 6. Many a brave soldier has fallen in this sanguinary battle. 7. What did the old landlord bring?—A large bottle filled with red wine. 8. Be of good cheer, my dear old friend. 9. Several bold natural philosophers examined the crater of Mount Aetna; some [of them] let themselves down on long strong ropes, and descended in the depth several other craters, mighty blocks of lava, large columns of sulphur, and dense clouds of smoke steaming up. 10. What is required for a pleasant holiday trip?—Fine weather, hard cash, a mind free from cares, and a congenial travelling companion. 11. *In the kingdom of* (say—among, unter, with *Dat.*) the blind, the one-eyed is king. 12. New brooms sweep *clean* (= good).

## EXERCISE XLIII. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

See §§ 20, 21, pp. 28-29.

A. 1. Das Ei will klüger sein als die Henne. 2. Je höher wir stiegen, desto klarer und reiner wurde die Luft. 3. Cäsar war am größten,\* wenn Gefahr und Unglück drohten. 4. Cäsar war der größte\* von allen Feldherren, die je die römischen Legionen in die Schlacht geführt haben. 5. Wir sind am reichsten,\* wenn wir am zufriedensten sind. 6. Ist diese hübsche Dame liebenswürdig?—Sie ist mehr liebenswürdig als hübsch. 7. Bist du der oberste in deiner Klasse?—Nein, leider bin ich der unterste. 8. Ich will dich eines Bessern belehren. 9. Das Beste an der Sache ist, daß der Betrüger sich selbst betrogen hat. 10. Plinius der Jüngere, der Nefte Plinius des Ältern, war der glänzendste und geistreichste Schriftsteller, und der beste Redner seiner Zeit. 11. „Das kann ich auch,“ sagte die Kaze, als sie das Kamel sah,—und machte einen großen Buckel.

\* The *adjectival* form of the Superlative is used, when the person or thing denoted by the Noun or Pronoun qualified is compared with *another* of the same kind.

The *adverbial* form of the Superlative must be used when the Noun or Pronoun is compared with *itself*, but under altered circumstances (at different times, places, &c.) ; see p. 28, Obs. 5.

B. 1. The richest people are not always the most liberal. 2. The destructive fire broke out, just as the storm was the most violent. 3. We are highly incensed at his behaviour. 4. The presentment of a better future life lies in the *innermost depth of the* (say—*deepest*) heart of man. 5. A healthy peasant is happier than a sick emperor. 6. The straight way is the best. 7. Are these merchants prudent?—They are rather more cunning than prudent. 8. Primroses are most abundant in April. 9. It is in California that the trees are highest. 10. The straighter the way, the shorter the distance. 11. Quick is the sound, quicker the lightning, quickest the thought. 12. The best part of the joke was that the impostor got the worst of it. 13. I advise him most earnestly to think better of it. 14. The sooner you come the better.

## EXERCISE XLIV. NUMERALS. See §§ 22-23.

A. 1. Können Sie mir sagen wann der erste Zug nach Köln geht?—Des Morgens um drei Viertel auf sechs. 2. Was sagte Karl der Fünfte in seiner letzten Rede?—„Von meinem siebenten Jahre an, habe ich alle meine Gedanken dem öffentlichen Wole zugewendet; ich habe Deutschland neunmal, Spanien sechsmal, die Niederlande zehnmal besucht, und bin verschiedene Male in Lebensgefahr gewesen.“ 3. Wann beginnen Ihre Ferien?—Heute über sechs Wochen. 4. Liegt Ihnen sein Schicksal am Herzen?—Ja, was Sie dem Armen Gutes erweisen, werde ich zehnfach belohnen. 5. Ist das ein ergiebiger Boden?—Freilich, in guten Jahren trägt er achtzigfältig, ja sogar hundertfältig. 6. Ein Regiment bezimieren, heißt je den zehnten Mann tödten lassen. 7. Er ist schon seit anderthalb Jahren verreist.

B. 1. I have read in yesterday's paper of the heroic action of a boy fifteen years of age. 2. Pope Gregory the Thirteenth corrected the Julian calendar, and introduced the Gregorian in 1582. 3. I have not seen your two sisters for a year and a half. 4. What is the origin of the German suffix *tel* in fractional numbers?—It is derived from the Substantive *Teil*, which signifies *part*. 5. Pray, wait only ten minutes longer, and I shall be ready.—I have already waited three-quarters of an hour. 6. When will you pay me?—To-day fortnight. 7. The pupils walked two by two in the procession. 8. In a month and a half we hope to reach the third and last stage of our journey. 9. Every third man of the first regiment fell in this sanguinary fight. 10. Have I not told you *so* (= *it*) a hundred, nay a thousand, times?

*Recapitulation:*

1. We are proud of having done it. 2. What ails her? 3. Go out of his way! 4. He laughed into my face. 5. We know him to be a man of honour. 6. I trust you will not take it amiss, if I remind you of your promise. 7. You must accustom yourself to go early to bed, and to rise early. 8. Have pity on me, poor pilgrim!

EXERCISE XLV. PERSONAL PRONOUNS. See §§ 24, 25.

(a) *Place of Personal Pronouns used as Objects :*

(1) A Personal *Pron.-Obj.* is, as a rule, put before the *Noun-Object* : as,

Ich sage ihm die Wahrheit.  
Er schämt sich seiner Armut.

I tell him the truth.  
He is ashamed of his poverty.

(2) If both Objects are Pers. Pronouns, the *Direct Object* (*Acc.*) is generally put before the *Indirect* (*Dat. or Gen.*) : as,

Ich empfehle ihn dir.  
Wir verhehlen es Ihnen nicht.

I recommend him to you.  
We do not conceal it from you.

Obs. 1. The *Neutral es* is, however, often used *enclitically* : as,  
Sage es mir, or mir's. Tell it to me (me it).

(3) *Personal* Pronouns are put before *Demonstrative* Pronouns : as,

Ich sage Ihnen das zur Warnung. I tell you that as a warning.

(4) *Reflexive* Pronouns are generally put before other Pronouns : as,

Ich empfehle mich Ihnen. My best respects to you.

Obs. 2. The adverbial particle *selbst* (*selber*),—unlike its English cognate and equivalent *self, selves*—is *indeclinable*, and *separate* from the Reflexive Pronoun it qualifies : as,

ich selbst, I myself ; sie selbst, she herself ; wir selbst, we ourselves ;  
du selbst, thou thyself ; es selbst, itself ; ihr selbst, you yourselves ;  
er selbst, he himself ; man...selbst, one's self ; sie selbst, they themselves.

It is used—

(a) *standing alone* (i.e. *without Reflex. Pron.*), if the Verb is not reflexive : compare—

With a *non-reflexive* Verb :—

Ich werde es selbst thun.  
I shall do it myself.

Wer hat es gethan?—Wir selbst.  
Who has done it?—We ourselves.

Sie ist die Güte selbst.  
She is goodness *itself* (in person).

With a *reflexive* Verb :—

Ich werde mich waschen.  
I shall wash myself.

Wir verteidigen uns.  
We defend ourselves.

(β) as an emphatic *expletive* to a Reflexive Pronoun, to express *exclusiveness* : compare—

Ich kleide mich an.  
I dress myself.

Du schmeichelst dir.  
You flatter yourself.

Ich kleide mich selbst an.  
I dress myself (unassisted).

Gib dir selbst (selber) !  
Help yourself (i.e. by your own exertion).

A. 1. Ist das eine Giftpflanze?—Ja, ich bin dessen gewiß. 2. Bitte, erzählen Sie uns eine hübsche Geschichte!—Sehr gerne; es war einmal ein König, derselbe hatte keine Kinder. 3. Kannst du das thun?—Nein, ich kann es nicht. 4. Bist du es, Heinrich?—Ja, ich bin's. 5. Was hast du für diese goldene Kette gegeben?—Ich habe fünf und sechzig Mark dafür (French *en*) gegeben. 6. Willigen Sie in meinen Vorschlag ein?—Ja, ich willige dazu (French *y*) ein. 7. Diese Unternehmung hat mir (mir) schwere Opfer gekostet!—Ich glaube es dir. 8. Machen Sie ihm meine Empfehlungen. 9. Ist Ihre Frau Mutter selbst gekommen?—Nein, sie hat sich entschuldigen lassen. 10. Ich habe mir vorgenommen auszuwandern; haben Sie etwas dagegen einzuwenden?—Ei bewahre! ich erkläre mich damit ganz einverstanden. 11. Haben Sie Geld genug bei sich?—Ja wol, meine Börse ist gut gespickt. 12. Was steht Ihnen zu Diensten? 13. Fallen Sie mir nicht immer ins Wort!

B. 1. Are you writing to your cousin?—Yes.—Then *give* (= *make*) my compliments to him. 2. Can they translate that?—Yes, they can. 3. What do you say to it?—I have nothing to say to it. 4. Lend me this fishing-rod!—I cannot lend it to you, because it does not belong to me. 5. Are you grateful to him?—Yes, for it is to him that we are indebted for everything. 6. How many churches are there in this little town?—There are no less than five of them. 7. The English soldiers attacked the town, and made themselves masters of it. 8. Who is this man?—It is he to whom I was recommended. 9. You are proud, and so am I. 10. Did they come themselves? 11. Have the children washed themselves? 12. Bestir yourself, else you will have yourself to thank if everything goes wrong. 13. When shall we see each other again? 14. See how they love one another! 15. Is it really you?—Yes, it is myself, whom you had thought dead and buried! 16. You, who are so clever, tell me how to set about it. 17. He had no change about him. 18. Cæsar not only fought battles, but he wrote an account of them too.

## EXERCISE XLVI. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS. See §§ 26, 27.

A. 1. Warum begaben Sie sich in die Nähe des Besuchs? —Um dessen Ausbruch (or den Ausbruch desselben) besser zu beobachten. 2. Weißt du auch, daß ich mein ganzes Vermögen verloren habe?—Nun, das ist wol nicht meine, sondern deine, Schuld. 3. Leihen Sie mir doch Ihre Brille! —Wo haben Sie denn die Ihrige? 4. Ich habe meine (die meinige) verloren.—Nun, meinethwegen, da haben Sie die meine. 5. Haben Sie Ihre Pflicht gethan?—Ja, ich habe das Meinige gethan, thun Sie das Ihrige. 6. Wie befindet sich Ihre Fräulein Schwester? 7. Als die zwei Schwestern hörten, daß sie auch bei dem Fest erscheinen sollten, riefen sie Aschenputtel und sprachen „Rämm' uns die Haare,bürste uns die Schuhe und mache uns die Schnallen fest.“ 8. Als Cyrus den Crösus fragte, wer ihn überredet habe als sein Feind aufzutreten, erwiderte dieser: das habe ich gethan dir zum Glück und mir zum Schaden; und die Schuld davon trägt der Gott der Griechen. 9. Des Landvogts Reiter sind ihm auf den Fersen. 10. Er kam mir zur Hilfe.

B. 1. Please show me your pictures?—My pictures? You mean my father's.—Well, I thought they were yours. 2. This country is ours, for our forefathers have conquered it. 3. [Give] to every one his own. 4. He is thy neighbour who needs thy help. 5. Defend our cause, and we will defend yours. 6. Give me your hand. 7. How did you spend your time?—I spent the day in the circle of my (own) friends. 8. Every man has his hobby; you have yours, just as I have mine. 9. Hercules threw the messengers of King Erginos down (= to ground), tied their hands together on their backs, and cut off their noses and ears. 10. The poor prisoners fell down at his feet. 11. They stared into his face and trod on his toes. 12. Is he a friend of hers?—That is no business of yours.—I beg your pardon. 13. Every language has its beauties, its difficulties and its defects. 14. It is better to live in one's own house than in the antechambers of the great. 15. The queen had a crown on her head and a sceptre in her hand. 16. You are not to stand so, with your hands in your pockets!

## EXERCISE XLVII. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS. See §§ 29, 30

A. 1. Was für Bäume sind das?—Dieser Baum hier ist eine Eiche, und der da eine Buche. 2. Welche Thiere haben keine Stimme?—Diejenigen, welche keine Lunge haben. 3. Wem hilft das Glück?—Denen, die sich selbst helfen. 4. Wer ist wirklich reich?—Derjenige, der zufrieden ist. 5. Welcher Jahreszeit geben Sie den Vorzug, dem Frühling, oder dem Herbst?—Der Frühling und der Herbst haben beide ihre Vorzüge: dieser gibt Früchte, jener Blüthen. 6. Ist dieser Wein gut?—Ja, ich kann Ihnen denselben empfehlen. 7. Der Königssohn befahl man sollte Aschenputtel herausschicken, die Mutter aber antwortete „Ach nein, das ist viel zu schmutzig, das darf sich nicht sehen lassen.“

B. 1. The works of Schiller are better known than those of Lessing. 2. These are German works, those are French. 3. I really cannot consent to such a deed. 4. I remember that distinctly. 5. She thanked me for warning her. 6. We are not at all astonished at that. 7. This book is not for you, take that which lies on my new desk. 8. Is that the truth?—I don't know; he who told you (that) is responsible for it. 9. We are all of the same opinion. 10. He has not paid us a visit these three months. 11. Who (has) made that noise?—He (there) in the blue jacket. 12. Such as have plenty of gold will never be in want of friends. 13. The best woman, Socrates said, is she of whom people talk least. 14. Our best friend is he who tells us the truth, and yet we are quick to hate him who offends our self-love.

## EXERCISE XLVIII. INTERROGATIVE AND RELATIVE PRONOUNS. See §§ 31, 33.

A. 1. Mit was für einem Buche soll ich anfangen?—Mit einem Lesebuch. 2. An was denkst du, Heinrich?—Ich denke an etwas, das man mir so eben gesagt hat. 3. Wer hat Ihnen das aufgebunden?—Wilhelm!—Welch ein Aufschneider! 4. An wen denken Sie, mein Fräulein?—Ich denke an den jungen Offizier, dessen Geistesgegenwart die Schlacht entschieden hat. 5. Auf wen war das gemünzt?—

Höchst wahrscheinlich auf Sie. 6. Diejenigen, auf deren Hilfe du am meisten rechnest, werden vielleicht die ersten sein, welche dich im Unglück verlassen werden. 7. Den wievielten haben wir heute?—Den ein und dreißigsten. 8. Die Schuld der Maria Stuart ist ein Punkt, worüber die Geschichtsschreiber nicht einig sind.

B. 1. Those are enemies, from whom we have nothing to fear. 2. With what kind of pens do you write, (with) steel-pens or quills?—It is all the same to me. 3. I do not reckon those amongst (unter) my friends, whose fidelity I have not tested. 4. That is something of which you know nothing. 5. There are words which one cannot easily explain, and of which one nevertheless makes frequent use. 6. Whose handwriting is this?—It is evidently a handwriting which cannot be easily imitated. 7. What kind of newspaper are you reading there?—It is a French newspaper, the leader of which I greatly admire. 8. Tell me whom you live with, and I will tell you who you are. 9. What on earth is he thinking of?—Of nothing in particular. 10. What is the matter? 11. He likes reading, which I am glad to hear. 12. A shot from the fort killed one of the soldiers, whereupon all *the rest* (= *the others*) ran away. 13. Those are things that you do not pay sufficient attention to. 14. Vulgarity is a medal the reverse of which is insolence. 15. The golden age was that in which gold was not supreme.

EXERCISE XLIX. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS. See § 33, G.

A. 1. Wird in Ihrem Lande viel geraucht?—Ja, bei uns raucht fast Jedermann. 2. Trinken Sie gern Wein?—Nein, nie, von welcher Sorte er auch sei. 3. Freuen Sie sich auf dieses Wiedersehen?—Ja, man ist froh, wenn man seine alten Freunde wieder trifft. 4. Hat nicht Jemand geklopft?—Nein, Niemand hat geklopft. 5. Fehlt Ihnen Etwas?—Nein, mir fehlt gar nichts. 6. Hat nicht Jeder seine Fehler?—Nenne mir irgend einen Menschen, der ohne Fehler ist (sei). 7. All unser Wissen ist Stückwerk!—Allerdings, denn je mehr man weiß, desto mehr sieht man wie wenig man weiß. 8. Man sucht Niemanden hinter der Thür, wenn man nicht selbst dahinter gesteckt hat.



*B.* 1. That is not everybody's business. 2. Do you know any of these gentlemen?—No, I do not know one of them. 3. One cannot always be on one's (his) guard. 4. One must love his neighbour as himself. 5. He is said to be ill. 6. Is it true that he was found dead on the battle-field?—Some one told me so (it). 7. Discontented people are a burden to themselves and to others. 8. People often say what they do not believe. 9. Where do they make the best cheese in England?—Some say in Cheshire, others maintain that Stilton deserves the preference. 10. That is something quite unheard of.

EXERCISE L. ADVERBS. See §§ 59-62.

*A.* 1. Ist es angenehm draußen?—Ja, viel angenehmer als drinnen. 2. Trinken Sie gern frisches Bier?—Ja, aber am liebsten trinke ich alten Rotwein.—Ei, was Sie nicht sagen! 3. Waren Sie nicht höchst erstaunt dies zu hören?—Freilich hat mich diese Nachricht auf's angenehmste überrascht. 4. Warum kommst du schon zurück?—Ich wollte ins Theater gehen, aber es waren schon so viele Leute da, daß Niemand mehr hinein kommen konnte. 5. Hat der Schüler seine Uebersetzung nicht höchst wortgetreu gemacht?—Ja, er hatte sich auf's beste vorbereitet. 6. Sie scheinen ärgerlich zu sein?—Das bin ich auch. 7. Das schlechteste Rad am Wagen knarrt am meisten. 8. Ehrlich währt am längsten. 9. Das Geschäft des Bergmanns ist eins der gefährlichsten; er fährt hinab in die Schächten um das Erz herauszuschaffen, und weiß nicht ob er selbst wieder heraufkommen wird.

*B.* 1. He fulfils his duties most conscientiously. 2. Is it very windy out of doors?—Yes, but it is more pleasant than indoors. 3. I should like to play at chess with you this evening!—With all my heart. 4. We were welcomed in a most friendly manner. 5. Be sure to come. 6. You have promised it twice, you know! 7. You can translate that, I suppose! 8. I daresay you will pay me before long. 9. Which language do you like best?—Italian. 10. Give me some of it, be it ever so little. 11. Do not fear death; think often of it, and be always prepared for it. 12. Do you know where they are?—Yes, but we do not know

where they come from, nor where they are going to.  
 13. The diver plunged down into the sea to fetch up pearls.  
 14. If you wish for joy, come out into the country! 15. It is not late, is it?—It is half-past twelve.

C. Many German *Adverbs* are often best rendered in English by *Verbs* or *Verbal phrases*: as,

|                                |                                  |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Sie schwatzt gern.             | She is fond of chatting.         |
| Ich möchte gern wissen.        | I should like to know.           |
| Wir trinken lieber Wein.       | We prefer drinking wine.         |
| Am liebsten ginge ich selbst.  | I should like best to go myself. |
| Ich habe es nicht gern gethan. | I am sorry for (doing) it.       |
| Ich thue es ungern.            | I don't like doing it.           |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Sie kommen doch (hoffentlich)!             | You will come, <i>I hope!</i>                           |
| Führe mich doch dahin!                     | <i>Pray</i> , do take me thither.                       |
| Du kannst mir doch helfen?                 | You can assist me, <i>I suppose?</i>                    |
| Kennst du ihn nicht? — Doch<br>(= Fr. si). | Don't you know him?— <i>I do.</i>                       |
| Du kannst es ja nicht sehen! —<br>Doch!    | <i>Why</i> , you cannot see it!— <i>I can</i> , though! |
| Sie sind wol damit einverstanden.          | <i>I presume</i> you agree to it.                       |

|                             |                                  |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Ich will es schon besorgen. | I will take care to see it done. |
| Er wird schon kommen.       | <i>I daresay</i> he will come.   |
| Er ist ja gekommen!         | He has come, <i>you know.</i>    |

|               |                        |
|---------------|------------------------|
| Sehen Sie ja! | <i>Be sure</i> you go! |
|---------------|------------------------|

|                             |                                  |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Thun Sie es möglichst bald! | Do it as soon as can be.         |
| Ich muß leider bekennen...  | I am sorry to admit (confess)... |
| Ich glaube fast...          | I am inclined to think...        |
| Er ging immer weiter.       | He kept walking on.              |
| Zuletzt sagte er mir.       | He ended by telling me.          |
| Ich traf ihn zufällig.      | I happened to meet him.          |

|                           |                           |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| Trinken Sie einmal.       | Do drink a little.        |
| Ich kann nichts dafür.    | I cannot help it.         |
| Das ist mir gerade recht. | That is just what I want. |

Notice especially the *invariable* nicht wahr (= French *n'est-ce pas?*), answering to the English—have you?...have you not?...do you?...do you not? &c.:—

|                                  |                                 |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Er ist fleißig, nicht wahr?      | He is diligent, is he not?      |
| Du hast es nicht gethan, } nicht | You have not done it, have you? |
| Du hast es gethan, } wahr?       | You have done it, have you not? |

## EXERCISE LI. PREPOSITIONS. A. With the Accusative.

A. In the following sentences supply the omitted prepositions and case-inflections :—

1. Die Magnetnadel weist — Norden. 2. Der durstig-Wanderer bittet — ein-Trunk. 3. — Schaden wird man flug. 4. Wenn die Sonne — vier Uhr aufgeht, so geht sie — acht Uhr unter. 5. Ich kann nicht steuern — Sturm und Wellen. 6. Die Planeten kreisen — die Sonne. 7. Wer d— Schaden hat, braucht — d— Spott nicht — forgen.

B. 1. Have you ever seen *Macbeth* performed?—Yes, I saw the witches dancing round the cauldron. 2. You make much ado about nothing. 3. If you are not for us, you are against us. 4. Have you any objection to it? 5. The hungry pilgrim asked us for a night's lodging. 6. Please tell me whether these beautiful oranges are for sale!—They are.—What do you want for them? 7. Goethe was born about the middle of the eighteenth century. 8. The Israelites marched through the Red Sea. 9. An eye for an eye, a tooth for a tooth. 10. Compared with the Alps, the Black Forest is but a dwarf.

EXERCISE LII. PREPOSITIONS. B. With the Dative.  
See §§ 63–65.

A. 1. Wann gehen Sie mit Ihrem Freunde nach Hamburg?—Er bleibt zu Hause; deshalb werde ich ohne ihn verreisen müssen. 2. Sind Sie ihm nicht auf halbem Wege begegnet?—Ja, er kam mir freundlich entgegen. 3. Hat er Ihrem Befehle gemäß gehandelt?—Nein, im Gegentheil, er hat meinem ausdrücklichen Befehle zuwider gehandelt. 4. „Nehmet zum Dank für das was ihr für uns gethan, mich zum Gemahl an,“ sagte der Storch zu der Gule. 5. Gehe zur Ameise, du Fauler!—Zur Arbeit, nicht zum Müßiggang, schuf Gott den Mensch auf Erden!—Sezen Sie nur das Komma nach nicht, statt nach Arbeit, so bin ich ganz mit Ihnen einverstanden. 6. Die Nachtdiebe sprangen zum Fenster hinaus, und machten sich aus dem Staube.

*B.* 1. The frogs did not approve of the stork being made their king. 2. Have you a knife about you? 3. That is not the custom among us. 4. Baumgarten was pursued; the Governor's troopers were at his heels. 5. I met him a few days ago at the house of my friend. 6. I am going to the country for a few days. 7. He has set out for the Cape of Good Hope. 8. Your work smells of the lamp. 9. They are very proud of their children. 10. I shall remind you of it. 11. You must not come on a Sunday. 12. Have patience till next week; by that time I can help you. 13. Shall you go on foot or on horseback? 14. I have known this excellent actor these many years.

EXERCISE LIII. PREPOSITIONS. C. With *Dative* or *Accusative*.

*A.* 1. Worin besteht der wesentlichste Vorzug des Menschen vor dem Thiere?—Darin daß er über die Gegenstände, die ihn umgeben nachdenken kann. 2. Wie gefällt es Ihnen in jenem Lande?—Es gefiele mir schon gut, wenn ich mich nur an das Klima gewöhnen könnte. 3. Der heiße Erdgürtel (die heiße Zone) liegt zwischen den Wendekreisen. 4. Wer im Born handelt, geht im Sturm unter Segel. 5. Wie heißt Wasser auf französisch?—Eau!—O?

6. In den Ocean schiffte mit tausend Masten der Jüngling;  
 Still, auf gerettetem Boot, treibt in den Hafen der  
 Greis.

SCHILLER.

*B.* 1. Does he think of his promise?—He does. 2. Shall you resign yourself to your fate?—I shall have to resign myself to it, whether I like or not. 3. You don't say so? 4. Is he there?—No, but he is just going there. 5. Apollo was angry *because* (= *over-it that*) the companions of Ulysses had stolen his cattle. 6. He who wants to travel from France to England, must cross over the sea. 7. In the torrid zone the sun stands over our heads. 8. You ought to be ashamed to fall asleep during the sermon. 9. Will you wait for me?—Yes, if you promise me to be back in half an hour. 10. He did not attempt it, for fear of punishment. 11. Thanks to the circumspection and energy of Cicero, the conspiracy of Catiline was detected in time. 12. The owl lives on high towers, in hollow trees, and *other* (= *sonst an*) lonely places.

EXERCISE LIV. PREPOSITIONS. D. With *Genitive*. See § 66.

A. 1. Sind Sie längs des Flusses spazieren gegangen? —Ja, trotz des schlechten Wetters. 2. Wo liegt die Stadt Lausanne?—Unfern des Genfer See's. 3. Kraft welchen Amtes thun Sie das?—Kraft meines königlichen Amtes. 4. Wo liegt die Festung Ehrenbreitstein?—Oberhalb der Stadt Coblenz. 5. Steht die Kirche innerhalb der Stadtmauern?—Nein, sie steht außerhalb derselben. 6. Der Eilwagen fuhr trotz der schlechten Wege ab, mußte aber des tiefen Schnees wegen, im abscheulichsten Wetter, beim Dorf Halt machen.

B. 1. During the summer I live in the country. 2. We shall leave for London in spite of his objections. 3. By virtue of the law. 4. For heaven's sake, get out of my way! 5. He is going to reside in Italy for the sake of his health. 6. He praised me, instead of blaming me. 7. He will come in place of his brother. 8. Our new villa stands not far from the toll-gate. 9. During this cruel war, we had to pay heavy taxes. 10. I was sorry I could not help you on account of my long absence. 11. Inside the town the air is not so pure as out of it. 12. Do it for my sake, if you will not do it for your own. 13. England lies on this side of the Channel, France on the other side of it. 14. Egypt extends along the Nile. 15. Remain within these limits.

EXERCISE LV. CO-ORDINATE CONJUNCTIONS. See § 67, 68.

A. 1. Er muß krank sein, sonst wäre er ja gekommen. 2. Es hat seit mehreren Tagen anhaltend geregnet, daher sind die Straßen kaum gangbar. 3. Das Wetter war zu schlecht, darum (deshalb) blieb ich zu Hause. 4. Der Trank schmeckt bitter, doch will ich ihn nehmen. 5. Hätt' ich doch das nur gewußt!

6. Und mit sinnendem Haupt saß der Kaiser da,  
Als dächt' er vergangener Zeiten.

7. Es reden und träumen die Menschen viel  
Von bessern künftigen Tagen;  
Nach einem glücklichen goldenen Ziel  
Sieht man sie rennen und jagen.

*B.* 1. You have betrayed me, therefore I do not trust you. 2. He is a very fickle man; sometimes he wants one thing, sometimes another. 3. This morning the trees are covered with rime; consequently it must have been very cold last night. 4. Would I had done it! 5. The vine requires a warm climate; therefore it does not thrive in northern latitudes. 6. This boy is idle and inattentive; besides (auch), he is disobedient. 7. It seems to me *that I have* (= *as if I had*) seen you before.

#### EXERCISE LVI. SUB-ORDINATE CONSTRUCTION.

See pp. 92-93; 101-2.

*A.* 1. Sage mir, wer bei dir war.—Wer bei mir war, brauchst du nicht zu wissen. 2. Man weiß nicht, woher sie kommt (or Woher sie kommt, weiß man nicht). 3. Ich weiß, daß er bei dir war (or Daß er bei dir war, weiß ich). 4. Ich zweifle ob er bei Sinnen ist (or Ob er bei Sinnen ist, zweifle ich). 5. Man hat mir gesagt, daß er abgereist ist (or ... er sei abgereist). 6. Wer ein Meister werden will, (der) übt sich früh. (or Früh übt sich, wer ein Meister werden will). 7. Man war im Zweifel über die Art, wie der Krieg geführt werden sollte. 8. Ich fand ihn, wo ich ihn suchte. 9. Gehe, wohin die Pflicht dich ruft.

10. Auf Pfeilern und auf Bogen schwer,  
Aus Quadersteinen von unten auf,  
Lag eine Brücke drüber her,  
Und mitten stand ein Häuschen drauf.

11. Und hurre, hurre! vorwärts ging's,  
Feld ein und =aus, bergab und =an.—BÜRGER.

*B.* 1. He set off, as soon as the sun had risen. 2. We used to rejoice, when you came home. 3. You are right, if I understand you correctly. 4. He is almost always ill, because he does not live temperately. 5. Being ill, he will not be able to come. 6. He looks as if he were sad. 7. Your reconciliation was too sudden *to be sincere* (= than that it could have been sincere). 8. Even if he had not been out, he could hardly have come. 9. Pray, tell me who was here just now. 10. No one knew where he came from. 11. I am doubtful as to how this is to be done.

EXERCISE LVII. CONJUNCTIONS. *Recapitulation.*

Nur die Sprache hat den Menschen menschlich gemacht, indem sie die ungeheure Flut seiner Affecte in Dämme einschloß, und ihr durch Worte vernünftige Denkmale setzte. Nicht die Leier Amphions hat Städte errichtet, keine Zauberruthe hat Wüsten in Gärten verwandelt; die Sprache hat es gethan, sie, die große Gesellerin der Menschen; durch sie vereinigten sie sich und schlossen (sie) den Bund der Liebe. Gesetze stiftete sie und verband Geschlechter; nur durch sie ward eine Geschichte der Menschheit möglich. Noch jezt seh' ich die Helden Homer's und fühle Ossian's Klagen, obgleich die Schatten der Sänger und ihrer Helden schon lange der Erde entflohen sind. Ein bewegter Hauch des Mundes hat sie unsterblich gemacht und bringt ihre Gestalten vor mich. Was je der Geist des Menschen aussann, was die Weisen der Vorzeit dachten, kommt, wenn es mir die Vorsehung vergönnt hat, allein durch die Sprache zu mir. Durch sie ist meine denkende Seele an die Seele des ersten und vielleicht des letzten denkenden Menschen geknüpft; kurz, die Sprache ist der Charakter unserer Vernunft, durch welchen sie allein Gestalt gewinnt und sich fortpflanzt.

HERDER.

*Account for the position of the Verbs in the above passage.*

## SHORT STORIES FOR COMPOSITION.

*The Clever Starling.*

A thirsty starling *wanted to* (= *would*) drink. Before him stood a bottle with some water in it; yet he could not reach it with his short beak. He would have broken the glass, but it was too thick. Then he tried to upset the bottle; but for that he was too weak. At last, by dint of thinking, he hit (came) upon a happy idea. He gathered little stones, and threw them into the bottle. By this means the water rose so high that he could reach it with his beak and quench his thirst.

*The Influence of Religion.*

As the Caliph Hussain, a son of the great Ali, once sat at table, one of his slaves *dropped* (= *let fall*) a basin of boiling rice on his head. Angrily the caliph looked at the slave, and the latter, trembling and quivering, threw himself down at his feet and spake the following words *from* (= *out of*) the Koran: "(The) Paradise is prepared for those who restrain their anger and control it." Calmly Hussain answered: "I am not angry." The slave continued in the same verse: "and who pardon those who have offended them." Hussain, without looking at him, *said* (= *spoke*): "I forgive you (*Sing.*)." The slave went on: "And God loves those above all who requite evil with good." Hussain kindly stretched out his hand to him: "Well then, rise! I give you *your* (= *the*) liberty, and four hundred drachmas." Deeply touched, the slave embraced his feet: "Oh my lord," he exclaimed, "thou art like the noble tree; it lends its shadow, it lavishes its fruit even on him who with (an) audacious arm throws stones against it."

*The Slanderer.*

Sultan Mahmud was very angry with an officer of his guard for a trifling cause. He ordered him to be seized and to be led to (the) death without delay. The condemned [man], whom this inconsiderate severity made indignant, on going away, called the Sultan a tyrant and a savage. Mahmud, who did not understand him, asked the bystanders what he had said. One of the viziers who pitied the condemned [man] and wished to spare the Sultan a sorrow, began to speak, and alleged that the officer had (Ex. VI.) said: "God loves those who can moderate their anger and pardon unpremeditated offences." The Sultan repented and said: "Well, then, go and tell the guard that I remit (him) his punishment."

One of the bystanding courtiers, however, who was an enemy of the vizier, turned to the Sultan and said: "A servant must not deceive his master, nor conceal the truth. The condemned [man] has abused my Lord, the Sultan, and uttered culpable words against him." Mahmud looked angrily at the informant: "The vizier's good-natured untruth pleases me better than thy malicious truth."



*The Poodle.*

Owing to his good memory, his patience, good-nature, and obedience, the poodle is very docile. He can learn to beat the drum, fire pistols, climb up ladders, and to play comedies with companions. He *likes* to imitate (§ 62, *Obs.* 3) his masters, and is rather proud of it. Continually he looks up to his master and does what he sees him do. If his master looks out of the window, he jumps to his side, puts both paws on the sill, and peeps forth likewise at the beautiful prospect. If his master digs up a plant anywhere, he also begins to scratch with his paws; if his master looks for stones the poodle does the same. Because he sees his master bear a cane, and the cook (*f.*) a basket, he also wants to bear one. He carries it cautiously, goes from one person to the other in order to show how clever he is (*Ex.* VI.); he complacently wags his tail, and at the same time looks contemptuously at (the) other dogs as good-for-nothing fellows.

*Perseverance of Demosthenes.*

1. Demosthenes was not descended from the noble families of Athens, from which Cimon, Pericles, and Alcibiades had sprung; his father was the owner of a remunerative manufactory of arms. Early he had lost his father, and his patrimony was squandered by selfish guardians. He was a weak and sickly lad, and was therefore not strictly trained in athletic sports. On that account he became the laughing-stock of his schoolfellows, and received from them all kinds of galling nicknames. In his sixteenth year he heard Callistratus, who had a great reputation, speak in public on the occasion of a quarrel between Athens and Thebes. He was astonished at the power of eloquence, and when at the conclusion he heard the general applause and [saw] how the orator was loaded with praises, when he saw the people escort the popular man as in triumph to his home, then in the mind of the youth the resolution was confirmed to compete for the same palm. Now he had no other thought than this, no occupation but to elaborate speeches. With the greatest zeal he studied the works of the great Greek authors, he became an auditor of Plato, and a pupil of Isaeus in oratory.

2. Thus prepared, he ventured to appear before the people, but he was hissed and derided. A second attempt did not succeed better. With covered face he ran home to hide his shame. He was followed by his friend Satyrus, an actor. Demosthenes complained of the people, who listened with pleasure to brutal and ignorant men, whilst he, who had almost sacrificed his health to oratory, could win no applause. "You are right," said Satyrus, "but I will remedy the evil, which is the cause of it, if you will recite to me a passage from Sophocles or Euripides." Demosthenes did so immediately, and now the actor repeated the same passage with such a power of action and such vivid expression that Demosthenes *thought he heard* (= *believed to hear*) quite different verses. He understood that he was as yet quite deficient in voice and elocution, and that he must commence an altogether new practice.

3. Demosthenes was short of breath and had a weak voice; like Alcibiades he could not pronounce the letter *r*. All these defects he endeavoured to remedy by uninterrupted exertions. He went to the sea-shore, where the breakers roared the strongest, and endeavoured here to outcry the bluster of the billows. He put pebbles into his mouth and tried to speak distinctly in spite of these obstacles; he went up steep mountains *reciting* (= *and recited at the same time*) long speeches to accustom his breath to greater power of endurance; he at last took a room below the ground in which, secluded from all intercourse, he incessantly practised himself before a looking-glass in action, declamation, and play of countenance. Nay, Plutarch relates that Demosthenes, in order to make it impossible for him to go out, had shaved his head bald on one side. Thus he was fettered for months to his subterranean room, in which he incessantly busied himself with meditations on, and practice in, his art; from which he at last emerged as an accomplished orator to enrapture and govern at his pleasure the very people that had hitherto mocked him. His speeches have excited the admiration of all times. All great orators after Demosthenes have emulated him, but no one has equalled him.

# VOCABULARY.

**Introduction.**— In order to understand the relationship between English and German words, it is necessary to master the phonetic law which regulates the mutation of consonants in the two languages. This law is called *Grimm's Law* after the great German Scholar, Jacob Grimm, who discovered it.

"When a word, as, for instance, *three*, is found in similar forms in different languages, it is natural to account for the differences by saying that the several forms suited the several nations. „*Drei*,“ we might say, was easier of pronunciation for the Germans, *tres* for the Latins, *three* for the English. This theory has been justified by the collection of a large number of instances of changes differing similarly in the different languages.

In the example just now mentioned, *t*, *d*, and *th*, which are all consonants pronounced by the action of the tongue on the teeth, are interchanged; and this might suggest that the national preference, when rejecting a consonant, replaces it by some consonant uttered by the same organs as the first. This suggestion is warranted by fact. It has been shown by Grimm that the same words, when found in (1) *Sanscrit*, *Greek*, or *Latin*, (2) *Low German* (which may be represented by English), (3) *High German*, exhibit *three* systematically varying forms, in which three different consonants of the same organ are regularly found.

## *Classification of Consonants.*

I. Consonants can be arranged according to the organs by which they are pronounced: as,

(1) *Labials*; (2) *dentals* or *palatals*; (3) *gutturals*.

II. They can also be arranged according to the nature of the exit of the sound. The air may be entirely stopped as in (1) *checks*; or, some may be allowed to escape, as in (2) *breathings*; or the air may pass through the nose, as in (3) *nasals*. To these three classes are added (4) *the aspirates*, and (5) *r* and *l*, which are called *trills*.

III. Again, of consonants uttered by the same organ, as—*p* and *b*; *t* and *d*, one is harder than the other; and this introduces another distinction:—

(1) *hard*, (2) *soft*.

The following Table will be sufficient to illustrate Grimm's law :—

|                     | Hard.       | Aspirate. | Soft. |
|---------------------|-------------|-----------|-------|
| DENTALS . . . . .   | t           | th        | d     |
| LABIALS . . . . .   | p           | ph        | b     |
| GUTTURALS . . . . . | k, c (hard) | ch        | g     |

**Grimm's Law** is that—

**Hard** Consonants in (1) *Sanscrit, Greek, or Latin*, become the corresponding—

**Aspirates** in (2) *Gothic, Low German (English)*, and the corresponding—

**Soft** Consonants in (3) *High (Literary) German* ;  
and that **Aspirates** and **Softs** in (1) are modified in a corresponding manner. The law may be exhibited thus :—

|                                | (1) Sanscrit, Greek, Latin . | Hard     | Aspirate                       | Soft      |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|----------|--------------------------------|-----------|
|                                | (2) Gothic Low Grm. (Engl.). | Aspirate | Soft                           | Hard      |
|                                | (3) High (Literary) Germ. .  | Soft     | Hard                           | Aspirate  |
| DENTALS {                      | Sans., Gr., or Lat.          | Tres     | Thugater                       | Duo       |
|                                | English. . . . .             | Three    | Daughter                       | Two       |
|                                | High German. .               | Drei     | Tochter                        | Zwei      |
| LABIALS {                      | Sans., Gr., or Lat.          | Hepta    | Frater                         | Labi      |
|                                | English. . . . .             | Seven    | Brother                        | Slip      |
|                                | High German. .               | Sieben   | ( <i>Prüder</i> <sup>1</sup> ) | Schleifen |
| GUT-<br>TURALS. <sup>2</sup> { | Sans., Gr., or Lat.          | Cor      | Hortus                         | Amelgein  |
|                                | English. . . . .             | Heart    | Garden                         | Milk      |
|                                | High German. .               | Herz     | ( <i>Karten</i> <sup>1</sup> ) | Milch     |

<sup>1</sup> Old forms.

<sup>2</sup> (a) The scarcity of aspirated consonants causes many exceptions. Other causes of irregularity are (b) the degree to which the High Germans have assimilated their language to that of the Low Germans; (c) the combination of consonants, as *st, sp, &c.*, where the *s* protects the *t* and *p* from the change."—ABBOTT and SEELEY's *English Lessons*.

## ABBREVIATIONS.

|                              |                               |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>acc.</i> accusative       | <i>n.</i> neuter              |
| <i>adj.</i> adjective        | <i>pers.</i> { person, or—    |
| <i>adv.</i> adverb           | { personal                    |
| <i>conj.</i> conjunction     | <i>pl.</i> plural             |
| <i>dat.</i> dative           | <i>prep.</i> preposition      |
| <i>dem.</i> demonstrative    | <i>pr.</i> { pronoun          |
| <i>f.</i> feminine           | <i>pron.</i> {                |
| <i>gen.</i> genitive         | <i>refl.</i> reflexive        |
| <i>indecl.</i> indeclinable  | <i>rel.</i> relative          |
| <i>indef.</i> indefinite     | <i>s.</i> singular            |
| <i>interj.</i> interjection  | <i>trans.</i> transitive      |
| <i>interr.</i> interrogative | * strong or anomalous (Verb)  |
| <i>intrans.</i> intransitive | " modification (softening) of |
| <i>m.</i> masculine          | <i>stem-vowel</i>             |

*N.B.*—(1) *Verbs* marked with an asterisk (\*) are *strong* or *anomalous*. For their *Principal Parts* cf. pp. 59-71 ; for reference in alphabetical order, see *Index*.

(2) *Compound Verbs*, the prefixes of which are divided from the stem by a hyphen (-), are *separable* ; as,

*Infin.* ab-bilden ; *Pret.* bildete ab ; *P.P.* abgebildet.

If *not* thus divided, the prefix is *inseparable* ; as,

*Infin.* begleiten ; *Pret.* begleitete ; *P.P.* begleitet ; cf. pp. 76-81.

(3) The *Genitive Singular* and *Nominative Plural* of *Nouns* are only given—

(a) in *exceptional* cases ; as,

Buchstabe (-ns, pl. -n) ; i.e. *gen. s.* Buchstaben<sup>s</sup> ; *nom. pl.* Buchstaben.

(b) if the application of the *Rules* for the Declension of *Nouns* (pp. 12-19) is *doubtful*, on account of numerous exceptions ; as,

Banf (pl. "e, or -en), &c.

(4) The sign " indicates that the *stem-vowel* (but no other vowel) is modified (softened) in the Plural ; as,

Daß (-es ; "er) = *gen. s.* Daßes ; *pl.* Däßer.

Apfel (-s ; ") = *gen. s.* Apfels ; *pl.* Äpfel.

But—

Arm (-es ; -e) = *gen. s.* Armes ; *pl.* Arme.

# VOCABULARY.

## GERMAN-ENGLISH.

According to the plan adopted by Professor Whitney in his new German-English Dictionary—English words or parts of words which are historically the same as, or akin with, the German words defined by them, are printed in **full-faced black letter**; thus—

**Better, weather; etwas, somewhat.**

**Aachen, Aix-la-Chapelle**

**ab, adv. and pref. off; away from;**  
down. *betg* =, down hill

**ab-brüden**, to let off, to set loose

**Abend, m. (pl. =e), evening**

**Abends, adv. in the evening**

**aber, conj. but, however**

**ab-fahren,\* to set out, start**

**ab-nehmen,\* (1) trans. to take off; to**  
diminish. (2) *intrans.* to decrease,

diminish; to wane, fail, shorten

**ab-reisen**, to set out, depart

**abscheulich, adj. abominable, detest-**  
able

**Ab-schieb, m. parting; discharge; sen-**  
tence (law); farewell; leave

**ab-schlagen,\* (1) trans. to knock down**  
(**off**); to repulse; to refuse. (2)  
*intrans.* to fall off, diminish (in  
price)

**ab-schreiben,\* to copy, transcribe; to**  
write out

**Ab-sicht, f. (pl. =en) purpose, intention;**  
design, aim, object

**ab-steigen,\* to alight, dismount; to**  
take up one's quarters

**ab-weichen,\* to depart from; to devi-**  
ate, swerve

**Ach! interj. ah! oh!**

**acht, eight. — Tage, a week. gestern**  
vor — *Tagen*, yesterday week. *heute*  
hier — *Tage*, to-day week

**Acht, f. care, attention. — geben, to**  
pay attention. *sich in* — *nehmen*,  
to take care (of); to mind; to look  
sharp

**echt, adj. genuine, real**

**achten, to consider, deem; esteem,**  
value. — *auf*, to heed, pay atten-  
tion to. *beffen ungeachtet*, regard-  
less of this

**achtzig, adj. eighty; — fältig, eighty**  
fold

**Act, m. act (of a play)**

**Adel, m. nobility, nobleness**

**Adler, m. eagle**

**Aechte, see ächt**

**Ältern, Ältern, parents**

**Affe, m. ape, monkey**

**Affect, emotion, sensation**

**Ähn, m. (pl. =en) ancestor, forefather**

**ahn-en (with dat. of pers.) to have a**  
presentiment (foreboding) of. *es*

*ahnet mir*, my mind misgives me

**albern, adj. silly, absurd. =es Zeug,**  
silly stuff, tomfoolery.

**all**, *adj.* **all**, every. *se* beibe, both of them. *se* drei Tage every third day

**allein**, (1) *adj.* (indecl.) **alone**, solitary. (2) *adv.* only. (3) *conj.* but, only

**aller** = (*gen. pl.* of **all**, in *comp.*), of all offerings, *adv.* to be sure, undoubtedly

**allgemein**, (1) *adj.* general, universal. (2) *adv.* generally, universally

**Allggen**, a village in Switzerland  
**allzu** = (*adv.* in *comp.*), over, too much

**Almosen**, *n.* **alms**

**Alpen**, *f.* **Alps**. = *gipfeln*, glowing of the Alps

**als**, (1) *conj.* **as**; than; but; when; like. (2) *adv.* in the character (capacity) of

**also** (1) *adv.* so, thus. (2) *conj.* therefore, consequently

**alt**, *adj.* **old**; ancient

**Altar**, *m.* (=8; *pl.* *Altäre*) **altar**

**Älter**, *n.* age; old age

**Ältern**, *pl.* parents

**Ältertum**, *n.* antiquity

**am** (contraction of *an dem*, see *an*).  
— *besten*, best

**Ameise**, *f.* **ant**, **emmet**

**Amt**, *n.* (=8; "er) office; charge; functions; office; duty

**an**, *prep.* with *acc.* or *dat.* **at**, **on**; upon; in; by; of; as far as, up to. *das liegt — dir*, that is your concern (business). *die Reihe ist — mir*, it is my turn

**ander** = *er*, *m.* = *e*, *f.* = *es*, *adj.* **other**.  
*den — n* Tag, the next day

**anders**, *adv.* otherwise; differently; else. *nietmand* —, nobody else

**anderthalb**, *adj.* one and a half

**Anfang**, *m.* (=8; *pl.* "e) beginning, commencement

**an-fangen**, \* to begin, commence

**an-gehen**, \* to concern. *das geht mich nichts an*, that is no concern of mine

**an-gehören**, to belong to; to be related to

**angelegen**, *adj.* *sich* — *sein lassen*, to take to heart

**Angelegenheit**, *f.* affair, concern, matter

**angenehm**, *adj.* agreeable, pleasant

**angenommen**, *adj.* taken for granted, supposing (see *annehmen*)

**Angriff**, *m.* (*pl.* "e) attack, assault

**an-halten**, \* to stop, halt; to continue

**anhaltend**, *adj.* or *adv.* uninterrupted, continually

**an-tommen**, \* to arrive; to get on. *es darauf* — *lassen*, to take the chance. *es kommt darauf an...*, the question is whether...

**an-maßen**, *refl.* to presume; to arrogate to oneself; to appropriate

**an-nehmen**, \* to accept; to assume; adopt; *refl.* (with *gen.*) to take an interest in; to befriend, espouse.

**angenommen daß...**, supposing that...

**Anregung**, *f.* stimulant; incitation, inducement

**an-richten**, *reflex.* to prepare, to make arrangements for; to set about

**Ansehen**, *n.* respectability

**an-sehen** \* (*sich*), to look at; to regard; to consider (as). *man sieht es ihm an*, he looks like it; it is easy to see (from his looks)

**Anspruch**, *m.* (*pl.* "e) claim, pretension. — *machen auf*, to lay claim (to); absorb

**anstatt**, *prep.* with *gen.* instead of

**an-treffen**, \* to meet (fall in) with

**Antwort**, *f.* (*pl.* "en) **answer**, reply  
**antworten**, to **answer**, reply (with *dat.* of *pers.*, and *auf* with *acc.* of the *thing*)

**an-wesen**, *adj.* present

**Apfel**, *m.* (*pl.* "e) **apple**

**April**, *m.* (=8) **April**

**Arbeit**, *f.* (*pl.* "en) work; labour

**arbeiten**, to work; to labour, toil

**arbeitsam**, *adj.* and *adv.* assiduous, diligent, laborious, industrious

**Ärger**, *m.* vexation, annoyance, anger, spite

**ärgerlich**, *adj.* and *adv.* (1) annoying, vexing, provoking; (2) annoyed, put out, vexed

**arm**, *adj.* and *adv.* poor; scanty

**Arm**, *m.* (*pl.* "e) **arm**

**Armee**, *f.* **army**

**Art**, *f.* (*pl.* "en) kind, sort, species; method, way; manners; breed

**Arg(e)nei**, *f.* (*pl.* "en) medicine, physic



Arzt, *m.* (pl. "e) physician, medical man

Asche, *f.* sing. **ashes**

Aischenputtel (Aischenbröbel), *n.* Cinderella

aß, \* pret. of essen

Athem, *m.* (=s) breath

auch, *conj.* also, too; moreover; besides; even; in comp. with so = ever. wo —, wherever.

auf, *prep.* with *dat.* or *acc.* (see § 65)

(1) **up**, on, upon; (2) in; (3) at; (4) to

auf-binden, \* lit. to tie (fasten) on; fig. to impose on; to tell a fib

auf-führen, to represent, perform, execute; to erect, build up

Aufführung, *f.* performance, representation (of a play)

Aufgabe, *f.* task; home lesson, problem

auf-geben, \* to give up; to abandon; to set (a task)

auf-gehen, \* to arise; rise; open. auf- und ab-gehen, \* to walk (pace) up and down

auf-halten, \* to delay, detain; *refl.* to remain, reside, stay

auf-heben, \* to raise (lift) up; to pick up; to suppress; to put by

auf-machen, to open; to be stirring; *refl.* to set out (on a journey)

auf-schieben, \* to postpone, delay. aufgeschoben ist nicht aufgehoben, forbearance is not acquittance

auf-schlagen, \* (1) *trans.* to open (the eyes, a book); to pitch. (2) *intrans.* to rise in price

Aufschneider, *m.* swaggerer; wag

auf-stehen, \* to **stand up**, get up

auf-steigen, \* to ascend; mount; to rise

auf-treten, \* to appear; to come forward

auf-wachen, to **wake up**

Auge, *n.* (=s; =n) **eye**; sight

Augenblick, *m.* (pl. =e), twinkling; moment; instant

August, *m.* (month of) August; Augustus

aus, *prep.* with *dat.* (see § 64) **out** of; from; by

aus-brechen, \* to **break out**

Ausbruch, *m.* (=s; pl. "e) **outbreak**; eruption; explosion

ausdrücklich, *adj.* and *adv.* **express**; explicit

aus-geben, \* to **give out**, distribute; to spend, disburse; to issue

ausgegangen, \* P.P. of ausgehen

aus-gehen, \* to **go out**; to come to an end

auslegen, (1) to **lay out**; expend; (2) to explain, expound, interpret

aus-reißen, \* to **tear out**; to bolt; to desert

aus-reiten, \* to go for a **ride**

aus-richten, to execute (orders); to deliver (a message); to accomplish

aus-sehen, \* *trans.* to see (look) out; *intrans.* to look, appear

außen, *adv.* **outside**; out of doors

außer, *prep.* with *dat.* out of; beside

außerhalb, *prep.* with *gen.* **outside**

äußer, *adj.* outward; external; exterior, **outer**

aus-setzen, to **set** (put) **out**, launch, to expose; to post

Aussicht, *f.* (pl. =en) view, prospect, expectation

aus-sinnen, \* to imagine, conceive, contrive

aus-wandern, to emigrate

auswendig, *adj.* and *adv.* **outside**; — lernen, to learn by rote, by heart

Bab, *n.* (pl. "er) **bath**; watering-place; waters

balb, *adv.* soon, directly, shortly. so — als, as soon as

Balken, *m.* (**baulk**); beam; joist

Band, *n.* (1) (pl. "er) **band**; ribbon. (2) *m.* (pl. "e) volume (of a work)

bang(e), *adj.* or *adv.* **anxious**, uneasy. es ist mir —, I am uneasy

Bank, *f.* (pl. "e) **bench**, form; (pl. =en) **bank**

Bär, *m.* (=en) **bear**. —enhaut, *f.* bearskin

bauen, to build, till; to cultivate

Bauer, *m.* (=s; pl. =n) peasant; (boor); (at chess) pawn

Baum, *m.* (=s; pl. "e) tree; **beam**

Baumgarten, *m.* orchard, nursery ground

**Baumgarten**, proper name of an old Swiss, contemporary of William Tell (A.D. 1307)

**bedenken**,\* to consider, reflect, ponder. *refl.* to reflect, consider; to

**bethinken** one's self. *sich eines Besseren* —, to think better of it

**bedeuten**, to signify, mean, denote

**bedürfen**,\* (with *gen.* or *acc.*) to require, want, be in need of

**befallen**,\* to befall, happen to

**Befehl**, *m.* (=es; =e) command, order

**befehlen**,\* to order, command; to commend. *Gott befehlen!* God be with you!

**besinden**,\* to find, deem. *refl.* to find one's self, to be (in health); to feel

**beseßigen**,\* or **beseßigen**, (with *gen.*) *refl.* to devote one's self; to apply, study

**begeben**,\* *refl.* to betake one's self; to get (run) into

**begegnen**, (with *dat.* of pers.) to meet; to fall in with; to befall

**beginnen**,\* to **begin**, commence

**begleiten**, to accompany; to escort

**begreifen**,\* to comprehend, understand; to conceive. *begriffen sein*, to be engaged, occupied (in)

**Begriff**, *m.* (pl. *e*) idea, notion, conception; comprehension. *im =e zu...* on the point (of), about to, in the act (of)

**behaupten**, to assert; to maintain, uphold

**Behauptung**, *f.* assertion; statement

**beherrschen**, to control, to rule over

**bei**, *prep.* with *dat.*: (1) about (one's self); (2) amongst; (3) at;

(4) **by** (near); (5) in; (6) of: *die Schlacht* —, the battle of; (7) with: — uns, with us

**beide**, *adj.* **both** (see p. 161). *alle* —, both one and the other.

*Keiner von beiden*, neither one nor the other

**Beil**, *n.* (=es; =e) hatchet, axe

**beim**, contraction of *bei dem*, at (by) the

**Bein**, *n.* (=es; =e) leg; **bone**

**beinahe**, *adv.* nearly, almost

**Beispiel**, *n.* (=es; =e) example. *zum* —, for example

**beißen**,\* to **bite**; to sting; to itch

**Beistand**, *m.* support, help, assistance

*bei-**stehen***,\* (with *dat.*) to **stand by**, assist

**bekannt**, *adj.* known, well-known, acquainted

**bekennen**,\* to confess, admit

**beklagen**, to lament, bewail, deplore; *refl.* to complain

**belehren**, to instruct; *eines Besseren* —, to set to rights, disabuse, undeceive

**belohnen**, to reward, recompense

**Belohnung**, *f.* recompense, reward

**bemerten**, to **remark**, perceive; to make an observation; to note down

**benutzen**, to make use of, profit by, utilise

**beobachten**, to observe, pay attention to

**Berg**, *m.* (=es; =e) mountain, hill

**bergab**, *adv.* down-hill

**bergan**, *adv.* up-hill

**bergauf**, *adv.* up-hill

**Bergmann**, *m.* miner

**berichten**, to report

**Beruf**, *m.* calling, vocation, profession

**berühmt**, *adj.* famous, celebrated

**bescheiden**, *adj.* modest

**beschießen**,\* to bombard; to shell

**beschuldigen**, to accuse

**Besen**, *m.* **broom**, broom

**befichtigen**, to view, visit, inspect, examine

**bestegen**, to conquer, vanquish, overcome

**bestimmen**,\* to recall to mind; to reflect, consider

**Besitz**, *m.* possession

**besitzen**,\* to possess; to have

**Besitzum**, *n.* (pl. *-er*) property, estate

**besorgen**, to take care of, attend to, carry out

**besser**, *adj.* and *adv.* (comp. of *gut*) **better**. *eines =n belehren*, see *belehren*. *sich eines =n bedenken*, to think better of it.

**bessern**, to better, improve upon

**best**, *adj.* and *adv.* (sup. of *gut*) **best**; see p. 85. *zum =en haben*, to hoax, make a joke of one

**bestehen**,\* *auf*, to insist upon; — *auf*, to consist (of); — *in*, to consist (in)

bestellen, to settle, bespeak, order;  
to appoint to; to deliver (a mes-  
sage); to engage (places, &c.)

Befstellung, *f.* delivery (of a message)

befrafen, to punish

befreben, *refl.* to strive, endeavour;  
to exert one's self

Befuch, *m.* (=s; =e) visit

befuchen, to visit, frequent, haunt

beten, to pray. — um, to pray for

betrachten, to contemplate, consider,  
regard

betrog(en),\* see betrügen

betrügen,\* to deceive, cheat, defraud

Betrüger, *m.* deceiver, cheat, impos-  
tor

Bett, *n.* (=s; =en) bed

Bettler, *m.* beggar

bewahren, (vor) to guard against,  
forefend; to beware of. Gott  
bewahre! God forbid! Ei, —! by  
no means! nothing of the kind!

bewegen, (1) to move; to excite; to  
touch. sich —, to stir, get in motion.

(2)\* to induce

Beweis, *m.* (pl. =e) proof, demonstra-  
tion

beweisen,\* to prove, show, exhibit;  
to manifest

bezahlen, to pay

Biene, *f.* bee

Bier, *n.* beer

bieten,\* to offer; to make a bid; to  
bid. feil —, to offer for sale

Bild, *n.* (=s; =er) (1) image, figure,  
picture, portrait; (2) idea, repre-  
sentation

bilden, to form, shape; to educate

Bildsäule, *f.* statue

billig, *adj.* reasonable, fair; cheap

bin, bist, Pres. Indic. of sein

bis, *adv.* of place, as far as, up to.  
*adv.* of time, until, till

Bitte, *f.* request, entreaty

bitten,\* (um) to ask (for), beg, en-  
treat; to invite

bitter, *adj.* bitter; *adv.* bitterly

Blatt, *n.* (=s; pl. =er) (1) leaf,  
blade (of grass); (2) newspaper

blau, *adj.* blue; azure

bleiben,\* to remain, stay. stehen —,  
to stop

blenden, to dazzle

blid, *m.* (=e) glance; glimpse; look;  
gaze

blind, *adj.* blind

Blume, *f.* flower (bloom)

Blut, *n.* blood

Blüte, *f.* bloom, blossom; prime

Boden, *m.* (pl. —, or ") ground;  
soil; bottom; floor; garret,  
loft

Bogen, *m.* bow, curve, arc; arch;  
sheet (of paper)

Boot, *n.* (=s; =e), boat

Börse, *f.* purse; Exchange. auf die  
(or der) —, on 'change

bös(e), *adj.* or *adv.* bad; evil;  
wicked; malicious; cross, ill-  
tempered; angry

bot,\* Pret. of bieten

brach,\* Pret. of brechen

brauchen, to use, make use of; to  
want, require; to need

brauen, to brew

braun, *adj.* brown

brausen, to storm, rage, roar; to  
bluster

brav, *adj.* or *adv.* excellent; gallant;  
brave; worthy. *interj.* bravo!  
well done!

brechen,\* to break

breit, *adj.* broad, wide

Bremen, Bremen

brennen,\* to burn

Brief, *m.* (=s; =e) letter, epistle

Brille, *f.* (pl. =n) spectacles; eye-  
glass

bringen,\* (1) to bring, to convey;  
(2) to reduce

Brot, *n.* bread

Brüde, *f.* (pl. =n) bridge

Bruder, *m.* (pl. ") brother; friar

brüllen, to bellow, roar; low

Bruß, *f.* (pl. =e) breast; chest;  
bosom

Buch, *n.* (=s; pl. =er) book; quire  
(of paper)

Buche, *f.* beech (tree)

Buchstabe, *m.* (=n; =n) letter (of al-  
phabet). größer —, capital letter

Buckel, *m.* hump of a camel; hump-  
back; back. ein — machen, to  
set up one's back

Bund, *m.* (=s; =e) bond, band, tie;  
alliance, confederacy, confederation;  
covenant

bunt, *adj.* variegated; gaudy, bright;  
motley, varied

Bürde, *f.* burden, load

Burg, *f.* (pl. -en) stronghold; castle; fort

Bürger, *m.* citizen, townsman; free-man (**burgher**); civilian

Bürgerstamm, *m.* citizen

bürsten, to brush

Busen, *m.* **bosom**

Butter, *f.* butter

Cäsar, (=s; -en) Cäsar

Charakter, *m.* (=s; -e) **character**, mark; characteristic (salient) feature, type

Chauten, an old German tribe settled in Friesland

da, (1) *adv.* **there**; where. (2) *conj.* as inasmuch as; whereas

dabei, *adv.* **thereby**, near; present

Daß, *n.* (=s; pl. -er) roof

daßte (daßte),\* *Pret.* of denken

dadurch, *adv.* thereby, by this means

daßst, *adv.* for it, therefore. — daß, for (with Gerund). ich kann nicht —, I cannot help it

dagegen, *adv.* against it. nichts —

haben, to have no objection

daheim, *adv.* at home

daher, *adv.* and *prefix*, thence; hence, for that reason, therefore

dahin, *adv.* thither, thitherwards.

-bringen, spend, pass

dahinter, *adv.* behind

Dame, *f.* (pl. -n) lady; **dame**; queen (at cards, chess)

damit, (1) *adv.* **therewith**; (2) *conj.* in order that. — nicht, lest

Damm, *m.* (=s; -e) **dam**; dyke; embankment; weir

Dampf, *m.* (=s; -e) vapour; steam

Dampfboot, *n.* steamboat, steamer

danach, *adv.* (see darnach)

daneben, *adv.* close by, beside

Dank, *m.* (pl. see § 70) **thanks**. — sagen, to give thanks

danke(n, with *dat.*) to **thank**, return thanks; to refuse with thanks

dann, *adv.* **then**

daran, *adv.* **thereon**, on, upon (it)

darauf, *adv.* thereon, **thereupon**, on that; at that, thereat

daraus, *adv.* **thereout**, thence; out of that

dar-bieten,\* to present; to offer

dar-bringen,\* to present, offer

darein, *adv.* **therein**; to it. sich — finden, to reconcile one's self to. sich — ergeben (schiden), to resign one's self to

darf, see dürfen

darin (contr. brin) *adv.* **therein**; in it; there

darinnen, *adv.* within, inside, indoors

darnach, *adv.* after (that); accordingly

darüber, *adv.* **over** (beyond) it

darum, *adv.* about it; **therefore**

darunter, *adv.* **thereunder**; under (below) it; amongst, among

daß, (1) *dem. pron.* **that**; (2) *relat. pron.* that, which, who; (3) *def. art.* the

daß, *conj.* **that**. bis —, until

Dauer, *f.* duration

davon, *adv.* from thence, **therefrom**; thereof; some of. — laufen,\* to run away

davor, *adv.* before; from, that

dazu, *adv.* (1) **thereto**; (2) in addition, to boot

den, *dat.* of her. — sei wie ihm wolle, however that may be

denen, *dem. pron.* (see her)

Denkmal, *n.* (=s; -er or -e), monument; memorial

denken,\* (an) to think (of)

denn, *adv.* then; *conj.* for; than; unless. es sei denn daß, unless

der, *m.* die, *f.* das, *n.* (1) *dem. pr.* this, that. (2) *rel. pr.* who, which, that.

(3) *pers. pr.* he, she, it. (4) *def. art.* the

deren, *dem. and relat. pron., gen.* of her

der-jenige, *m.* die-, *f.* das-, *n.* that, the one, he, she, it (followed by a *relat. pron.*)

der-selbe, *pron.* die-, *f.* das-, *n.* the same; he

deß, see dessen

deßhalb, *adv.* therefore, on that account

dessen, *gen. of rel. and dem. pron.* der

desto, *adv.* so much. — besser, so much the better. je...desto, the... the...

**deutlich**, *adj.* German; Germanic;  
**Teutonic**

Deutschland, *n.* Germany

Dezember, *m.* (=s) **December**

dezmieren, to decimate

Diamant', *m.* (pl. =en) **diamond**

du, *pers. pron.* (acc. of du), **thee**, you

Dichter, *m.* poet

dichteriſch, *adj.* poetical

Dichtkunſt, *f.* art of poetry

dicke, *adj.* thick; stout, fat

die, see *der*. diejenige, see *derjenige*

Dieb, *m.* (=s; =e) **thief**

dienen, (with *dat.*) to serve; to attend upon, wait on; to be of use to. zu —, at your service

Diener, *m.* servant, attendant

Dienſt, *m.* (pl. =e) service. waſ ſieſt

Ihnen zu =en? what may I serve you to?

Dienſtag, *m.* **Tuesday**

dieſe, *dem. pron.* (see *dieſeſ*)

dieſelbe, *f.* the same (see *derſelbe*)

dieſer, *m.* dieſe, *f.* dieſeſ, *n.* (1) **this**,  
pl. **these**; (2) the latter

dir, *pers. pron.* (*dat.* of du) to thee

doch, *adv.* (1) yet, however; (2) for emphasis: **though** (see Ex. 50)

Donner, *m.* **thunder**. donnern, to thunder, fulminate.

Donnerſtag, *m.* Thursday

Dorf (=s; =er) *n.* village (**-thorpe**)

Dorn, *m.* (=s; =en) (see § 70)  
**thorn**, spine

Dornröſchen, *n.* little briar-rose; the Sleeping Beauty

dort, *adv.* **there**. dahin, *adv.* thither

drauf, see *darauf*

drauſen, *adv.* without, out of doors

drei, **three**

drein, see *herein*

dreifaſch, *adj.* threefold, triple, treble

dreißig, **thirty**

dreizehn, *adj.* **thirteen**

bring=en, \* to press (forward), penetrate; with **throng**, to crowd; auf —, to insist on

bringend, *adj.* urgent, pressing

brinnen, see *darinnen*

britte, *adj.* **third**

broſen (with *dat.*) to **threaten**, to menace

drüber, *adv.* darüber

drücken, to press, pinch; oppress

du, *pers. pron.* **thou**, you

dunkel, *adj.* dark; gloomy; dim; obscure

dünken, to seem; to think. mich

dünkt, methinks

dünn, *adj.* **thin**

durch, *prep.* with *acc.* **through**, by means of

durch=führen, to accomplish, carry out

durchſtrichen, \* to creep through

durchreiſen, to travel through

durchwachen, to pass waking, to watch

durchwandeln, to walk through

dürfen, \* to be allowed; to dare; see p. 70 and Ex. 17

dürr, *adj.* dry; withered

Durſt, *m.* thirst

dürſtig, *adj.* **thirsty**

Duſend, *n.* (pl. =e) **dozen**

eben, *adj.* **even**, plain; level. *adv.* just, precisely. ſo eben, just now

echt, *adj.* genuine; real

edel, *adj.* noble, precious

eh(e), *adv.* and *conj.* before; **ere**

eher, *adv.* sooner, rather

eheſtens, *adv.* as soon as possible, shortly

Ehe, *f.* (pl. =n) marriage, matrimony

Ehre, *f.* honour. eſ gereicht dir zur — it redounds to thy honour

ehren, to honour

ehrgeizig, *adj.* ambitious

ehrlich, *adj.* honest

Ei! *interj.* oh! ay! indeed

Ei, *n.* (pl. =er) **egg**

Eiche, *f.* **oak**, oak-tree

Eid, *m.* (pl. =e), **oath**. einen — leiſten (ſchwören), to take an oath

eigen, *adj.* (1) **own**, proper; peculiar, special; (3) strange

Eigenheit, *f.* peculiarity

eigentlich, *adj.* or *adv.* proper; properly; really

Eile, *f.* haste, speed; hurry. eſ hat keine —, there is no hurry about it

eilen, to hasten, to make haste. hurry. eile mit Weile, slow and steady wins the race

Eilwagen, *m.* stage-coach

ein, *m.*, eine, *f.*, ein, *n.* (1) *indef. art.* a, an; (2) *num. adj.* one; (3) *adv.* in, into; (4) *ein- sep. prefix.* in, into

einander, *pron. indecl.* each other, one another

ein-bilden, *refl.* to imagine, fancy; flatter one's self. eingebildet, conceited

ein-brechen, \* to break in; to break (down); to break open; to draw on, approach (night); to set in

einerlei, *adv.* all the same

ein-fangen, \* to seize, to catch

ein-ge-ſtehen, \* to confess, acknowledge; to admit, concede

Einhalt, *m.* check. — thun, to check, to put a stop to

einig, *adj.* and *adv.* agreed; united; at one; of one mind

einmal, *adv.* once, once on a time (see Ex. 50). auf —, all at once.

noch — so, twice as; once more. nicht —, not even

eins, *adj.* or *adv.* one; agreed, of one mind

ein-schlafen, \* to fall asleep

ein-schlagen, \* (1) *trans.* to drive (break) in; (2) *intrans.* to strike (in)

ein-schließen, \* to lock in (up); include; enclose

ein-ſehen, \* to see (mentally); to comprehend, see clearly; (cf. **insight**)

ein-ſteden, to pocket; to lock up

ein-steigen, \* to get into a carriage

ein-ſteilen, *adv.* for the present

ein-treffen, \* to come in, arrive; to come true; to be realised

ein-treten, \* to enter (step) in; to set in; (tide) to set inwards

ein-ver-ſtanden, *adj.* agreed

ein-wenden, \* to remonstrate, object, take exception

ein-willigen, to consent, acquiesce

einzig, *adj.* or *adv.* single; sole; only; unique

Eis, *n.* ice

Eiſen, *n.* iron; horseshoe; *pl.* fetters, irons

Eltern, *pl.* parents

empfehlen, \* to recommend. ſich —, to take leave; to present one's compliments

Empfehlung, *f.* (1) recommendation, introduction; (2) compliments  
empor, *adv.* or *prefix.* upwards, on high, aloft

Ende, *n.* (=s; =n) end

enden, to end, terminate

enblich, *adv.* at last; finally

Engel, *m.* angel

englisch, *adj.* English

entbehren, to do without, dispense with, feel the want of

entdecken, to discover, find out, disclose, reveal (a secret, &c.), detect

entfallen, \* to fall out of (from); to drop from, escape (from memory)

entfliehen, \* to flee away; escape

entgegen, *prep.* with *dat.* against; towards. =gehen, \* to go to meet; to face. =kommen, \* to advance to meet; to meet

entlaſſen, \* to dismiss, discharge, disband

entlaufen, \* to run away; escape

entſcheiden, \* to decide. ſich —, to determine, make up one's mind

entſchieden, *adj.* decided, positive

entſchlagen, *refl.* with *gen.* to get rid of, free from; to cast (shake) off

entſchuldig, to excuse. ſich —, to apologise. ſich — laſſen, to beg to be excused

entwurzeln, to uproot, eradicate

entziehen, \* to withdraw (abstract) from; to deprive of

erbarmen, (with *gen.* of *pers.*) to excite to compassion; to raise pity in. daß Gott erbarme! Lord help us!

erblühen, to bloom, blow

Erde, *f.* (in comp. Erden) earth; soil, clay. auf Erden, on earth; here below

Erdbürtel, *m.* zone

Erdbügel, *m.* mound

erfahren, \* to experience; to undergo

Erfahrung, *f.* experience

erfinden, \* to invent, devise, frame. er hat das Pulver nicht erfunden, he is no sorcerer

Erfinder, *m.* inventor

Erfindung, *f.* invention

Erfolg, *m.* (pl. =e) result, consequence; success

erfreuen, to rejoice, delight, gladden

erfreulich, *adj.* gratifying; satisfactory  
 erfüllen, to **fill**; to fulfil, accomplish, realise  
 erfinden, \* P.P. of *erfinden*  
 ergeben, \* *refl.* to surrender, yield up; to submit, resign one's self  
 ergiebig, *adj.* productive, fertile  
 ergötzen (ergetzen), to delight. *sich* — an, to take delight in  
 erhöhen, to raise, heighten, enhance, increase  
 erinnern, to remind, admonish; *refl.* remember; to recall to mind, recollect  
 erkennen, \* to recognise, discern, know; to acknowledge, admit  
 erklären, to explain; to declare. *sich* —, to declare one's self  
 erkundigen, *refl.* to make inquiries; to inquire  
 erlauben, (with *dat. of pers.*) to allow, permit  
 erlegen, to slay, kill (game), &c.  
 ermangeln, (with *gen.*) to fall short of; to be wanting; to be devoid of  
 ermüden, to fatigue, weary, tire  
 Ernst, *m.* earnest; seriousness, gravity. *ist das dein — ?* are you in earnest?  
 Ernte, *f.* harvest  
 erobern, to conquer  
 erproben, to put to the test, to try  
 erreichen, to reach; to gain  
 erretten, to save, rescue; to redeem  
 errichten, to erect, raise up, set up, establish  
 erscheinen, \* to appear  
 erschießen, \* to shoot; to shoot dead  
 ersetzen, to supply; to replace; to make good  
 erst, *adj.* (*superl.* of *erster*) foremost, **first** of all. *adv.* first, firstly; only; not until  
 erstens, *adv.* firstly, in the first place  
 erstaunen, to wonder, be astonished  
 ertragen, \* to endure, undergo, bear; to submit to, put up with  
 erwarten, to expect, await  
 Erwartung, *f.* expectation  
 erweisen, \* to prove, demonstrate; to evince; show (a favour)  
 erwi(e)bern, to rejoin, reply, answer

erwünscht, *adj.* desirable. *es ist mir* —, the very thing I want  
 Erz, *n.* ore; brass  
 erzählen, to tell, relate  
 es, *pers. pron. it*; there  
 Esel, *m.* ass, donkey, jackass  
 essen, \* to eat, dine  
 etwa, *adv.* about, nearly  
 etwas, (1) *adj.* any, some. (2) *pron.* something, somewhat. (3) *adv.* somewhat; in some degree  
 euch, *pers. pron., dat. and acc. of ihr, you*  
 euer, (1) *gen. of ihr, of you.* (2) *poss. pron. your*  
 Eugen, Eugene  
 Eule, *f.* owl  
 Eva, *f.* Eve  
 ewig, *adj. or adv.* eternal, everlasting  
 existiren, to exist; to be

Faden, *m.* (pl. " ) thread; (pl. —), **fathom**  
 fahren, \* to drive; to convey  
 Fall, (pl. "e) (1) **fall**, downfall; (2) case, circumstance. *auf jeden —, jedenfall*, in any case; by all means  
 fallen, \* to fall; to get a fall; decrease; go down  
 falsch, **false**; wrong; forged  
 fangen, \* to catch, capture, seize  
 fast, *adv.* almost, nearly  
 faul, *adj.* (1) rotten, putrid; (2) lazy, idle  
 Faulenzer, *m.* sluggard, sloth, idler  
 Feder, *f.* feather; pen; plume  
 Fee, *f.* (pl. =n) fairy, **fay**  
 fehlen, to fail; to miss; to be deficient, wanting in. *impers.* (with *dat. of pers.*) to be wanting; to ail. *es fehlt mir an —, I need —. es fehlt etwas, something is missing. was fehlt dir? what ails you?*  
 Fehler, *m.* fault; defect; error, mistake  
 Feind, *m.* (=es; =e) enemy, foe; (**fiend**)  
 feindlich, *adj.* hostile, inimical  
 Feld, *n.* (=es; =er) **field**  
 feldein und (felde)aus, *adv.* across the fields, across country

**Heibherr, m.** general, commander-in-chief  
**Heiß, m.** (=en; =en), **Heisen, m.** (=s) rock, cliff (p. 16)  
**Heister, n.** window  
**Herien, pl.** vacation, holidays  
**fern(e), adj.** or **adv.** far, distant, remote; far, distantly, remotely.  
 das sei —! far be it from!  
**Heise, f.** heel  
**fertig, adj.** ready; finished, done  
**fest, adj.** firm; steady, fixed; **fast.**  
 fest machen, to fasten  
**Fest, n.** (=es; =e) **feast**  
**Festung, f.** fortress  
**Feuer, n.** fire; ardour; mettle  
**Fieber, n.** fever  
**finden,\* to find;** deem; to think;  
**Finger, m.** finger  
**finster, adj.** dark; dim  
**Fisch, m.** (pl. =e) **fish**  
**fischen, to fish**  
**Flamme, f.** flame, blaze  
**Flasche, f.** bottle; **flask**  
**flechten,\* to plait;** to wreath  
**fleisch, n.** flesh, meat  
**Fließ, m.** industry; assiduity; application  
**fleichen,\* to flee;** to run away; to shun  
**fließen,\* to flow,** stream  
**flucht, f.** flight  
**flüchten, refl. (sich) to flee,** take refuge  
**Flug, m.** flight; swarm  
**Flügel, m.** wing; (mus.) grand piano  
**Fluß, m.** (=es; pl. Flüsse) river  
**Flut, f.** (pl. =en) **flood;** high-tide (— water)  
**folgen, (with dat.) to follow.** — auf, to succeed to  
**Form, f.** form; shape; mood  
**Forst, m.** (=es; =en) **forest;** wood  
**fort, (1) adv. (forth), away;** off; gone. (2) **pref.** in compos. with verbs, to express (a) continuance: =arbeiten, to work on; (2) **rid-dance:** =schaffen, to carry off (away)  
**fort-pflanzen, to propagate,** spread.  
**refl. sich —, to spread**  
**Fortschritt, m.** (=s; =e) progress  
**fort-setzen, to continue;** to pursue  
**fragen, to ask.** — nach, to enquire about (after)

**Franzose(-en), Frenchman**  
**französisch, adj.** French  
**Frau, f.** (pl. =en) woman; wife; lady; Mrs.  
**Fräulein, n.** miss; young lady  
**frech, adj.** impudent, saucy  
**frei, adj.** or **adv.** free; open; freely;  
 gratis. es steht dir —, you are free to do it  
**Freiheit, f.** liberty, freedom; privilege  
**freilich, adv.** indeed, certainly; to be sure  
**fremd, adj.** foreign; strange; other people's  
**fressen,\* to devour,** eat ravenously  
**Freude, f.** joy, pleasure, delight  
**freuen, to rejoice;** to give pleasure.  
 sich —, to be glad. sich — auf, to look forward to with delight. sich — über, to be glad of  
**Freund, m.** (pl. =e) **friend**  
**freundlich, adj.** friendly, kind. **adv.** kindly, pleasantly  
**Friede, m.** or **Frieden, peace** (see p. 16)  
**Friedrich, Frederick**  
**frieren,\* (1) to freeze;** to feel cold;  
 (2) es friert mich, I feel cold  
**friß, adj.** and **adv.** fresh; cool; brisk  
**Friseur, m.** (=s; =e) hairdresser  
**fröh, adj.** glad, cheerful; joyful.  
 — werden (with gen.) to enjoy  
**Frosch, m.** (=es; pl. Frösche) **frog**  
**Frost, m.** (=es; pl. Fröste) **frost;** chill  
**Frucht, f.** (pl. =e) **fruit**  
**früh(e), adj.** and **adv.** early, betimes  
**frühzeitig, adj.** and **adv.** early; premature  
**Fuchs, m.** (pl. =e) **fox;** (acad.) freshman; chestnut-horse  
**führen, (1) to lead,** to guide; to carry; to bring; to conduct; (2) to deal in; to wield; to carry on; to manage  
**füllen, to fill**  
**fünsf, five**  
**fünfte, adj.** fifth  
**fünszehn, fifteen**  
**fünszig, fifty**  
**Funke, m.** (=ns; =n) spark (p. 16)  
**für, prep. (with acc.) for** (p. 86)  
**Furcht, f.** fear; **fright.** — haben, to be afraid



**Fürst**, *m.* (=en) prince  
**Fuß**, *m.* (pl. Füße) foot; scale (of living)  
**Fußgänger**, *m.* pedestrian; foot-passenger  
**Gabe**, *f.* gift  
**Gabel**, *f.* fork  
**gab** (gäb(e)), \* Pret. of **geben**  
**gangbar**, *adj.* practicable  
**ganß**, (1) *adj.* entire; whole; all. (2) *adv.* quite; altogether; entirely. — **und gar**, totally. — **und gar nicht**, not in the least  
**gar**, *adj.* (cooked) done. *adv.* entirely; even. — **nicht**, not at all, by no means. — **nichtß**, nothing whatever  
**Garten**, *m.* garden  
**Gast**, *m.* guest  
**Gasthof**, *m.* hotel, inn  
**gebären**, \* to bear, to bring forth  
**geben**, \* to give. **Acht** —, to pay attention. **verloren** —, to give up as lost. **einem Recht** —, to do one justice; to admit some one to be right. *impers.* to be, to exist. **es giebt**, there is (are) [Fr. 'il y a']. **was giebt's?** what's the matter?  
**Gebet**, *n.* (=ß; =e) prayer  
**gebildet**, *adj.* formed; educated; well-bred  
**Gebirg(e)**, *n.* chain of mountains  
**geboren** (fr. P.P. of **gebären**), *adj.* born  
**Gebrauch**, *m.* (pl. "e) use; usage, custom  
**gebrauchen**, to use, want  
**Geburt**, *f.* (pl. =en) birth  
**Gedächtniß**, *n.* memory; recollection, remembrance  
**Gedante**, *m.* (=nß; =n) thought, idea (p. 16)  
**gedeihen**, \* to thrive  
**Geduld**, *f.* patience  
**Gefahr**, *f.* (pl. =en) danger  
**gefährlich**, *adj.* dangerous  
**gefallen**, \* (with *dat.* of *pers.*) to please. **sich etwas** — **lassen**, to put up with  
**gefällig**, *adj.* agreeable, pleasing; obliging  
**Gefälligkeit**, *f.* (1) complaisance, obligingness; kindness. (2) favour, good office

**gegeben**, P.P. of **geben** \*  
**gegen**, *prep.* (with *acc.*) (1) **against**; (2) towards, to, in the direction of; (3) about, nearly; (4) in comparison with (p. 86)  
**Gegend**, *f.* (pl. =en) country; region; part, quarter; scenery; neighbourhood  
**Gegenstand**, *m.* (=es, "e) subject; object  
**Gegenteil**, *n.* contrary, reverse. **im** —, on the contrary  
**gehen**, *refl.* to fare  
**gehen**, \* to go; to walk; to work; to run high (waves). **es geht nicht**, it will not do. **wie geht's?** how are you?  
**gehörchen**, (with *dat.*) to obey  
**gehören**, (with *dat.*) to belong, appertain (to)  
**gehörig**, *adj.* obedient  
**Gehorsam**, *m.* obedience  
**Geist**, *m.* (es; =er) spirit; ghost; intellect, mind; genius  
**Geistesgegenwart**, *f.* presence of mind  
**geistreich**, *adj.* spirited, racy, witty; talented  
**Geiz**, *m.* avarice, covetousness  
**Geld**, *n.* (pl. =er) money; cash  
**gelegen**, *adj.* situate; convenient; seasonable  
**Gelegenheit**, *f.* opportunity; occasion  
**gelingen**, \* *impers.* (with *dat.* of *pers.*) to succeed  
**gesten**, \* to be worth; to be at stake; to pass for; to be aimed at. **was gilt's?** what will you bet? **es gilt!** done!  
**Gemach**, *n.* (pl. "er) chamber; room, closet  
**Gemahl**, *m.* (=ß; =e) husband, consort. **Gemahlin**, *f.* (pl. =nen) wife, consort  
**Gemälde**, *n.* (pl. —) picture, painting. =sammlung, picture-gallery  
**gemäß**, *adj.* and *prep.* (with *dat.*) conformable to; in accordance with  
**gemein**, *adj.* common; vulgar; mean  
**Gemeine**, *f.* the commons  
**Gemüth**, *n.* (pl. =er) mind; spirits; disposition  
**genau**, (1) *adj.* exact, minute; (2) *adv.* exactly, strictly  
**General**, *m.* (=ß; "e) general

genesen,\* to recover (health)  
 Genf, Geneva; Genfer, of Geneva  
 genießen,\* (1) to enjoy, partake of;  
 to have the use of. (2) to eat or  
 drink

Genitiv, *n.* **genitive**

genug, *adv.* **enough**, sufficiently

gerecht, *adj.* just, righteous. die =en,  
 righteous

Germanisch, old German, Teutonic  
 gern(=), *adv.* willingly, gladly. gern  
 haben, to like (see p. 85 and Ex.  
 50)

Gerubium, *n.* (gram.) **gerund**

Gesandte, *m.* ambassador

Gesang, *m.* (pl. "e) (1) **song**; hymn;  
 canto. (2) singing

Geschäft, *n.* (=s; =e) **business**; call-  
 ing

geschehen,\* *impers.* to happen, to come  
 to pass. es ist um mich geschehen, it  
 is all over with me

Geschenk, *n.* (pl. =e) **present**, gift

Geschichte, *f.* history; tale, story;  
 affair

Geschichtsschreiber, *m.* historian

Geschlecht, *n.* (pl. =er) sex; gender;  
 family; race, kind

Geschmack, *m.* taste, flavour; sense of  
 taste

Gesell(e), *m.* (=en) comrade; com-  
 panion; fellow; journeyman

Gesellerin, associating spirit

Gesetz, *n.* (=s; =e) law, statute, com-  
 mandment

Gespens, *n.* (pl. =er) ghost, spectre

Gestalt, *f.* (pl. =en) form, figure,  
 shape, stature

gestehen,\* to confess, avow, admit

gestern, *adv.* **yesterday**

gestrig, *adj.* of yesterday, yester-  
 day's

gesund, *adj.* **sound**, healthy, whole-  
 some

Gesundheit, *f.* health; salubrity

Getränk, *n.* **drink**; draught

getrauen, *refl.* to venture, to presume,  
 dare

Getreide, *n.* corn

gewesen, Perf. Part. of sein

Gewinn, *m.* (=s; =e) gain, profit

gewinnen,\* to win, earn, gain, get,  
 acquire; reach

gewiß, *adj.* certain; sure. *adv.* cer-  
 tainly, surely; to be sure

Gewissen, *n.* conscience

gewohnt, *adj.* accustomed, **wont**.  
 das bin ich nicht —, I am not used  
 to this

gewöhnen (an), to accustom; *refl.* to  
 become accustomed to

Gift, *n.* (pl. =e) poison, venom

Gift-pflanze, *f.* (pl. =n) venomous  
 plant

ging,\* Pret. of gehen

Glanz, *m.* gleam; splendour; gloss;  
 brilliancy

glänzen, to shine; to glitter

glänzend, *adj.* brilliant

Glas, (pl. "er) **glass**

Glaube, *m.* (gen. =ns) **belief**; faith

glauben (an), to believe (in); to  
 suppose

gleich, (1) *adj.* (with *dat.*) **like**;  
 equal; (2) *adv.* immediately

Glocke, *f.* bell; glass shade; (public)  
**clock**

Gluck, *n.* **luck**; good fortune; suc-  
 cess; happiness

glücklich, *adj.* **lucky**; happy; fortu-  
 nate; successful

glühen, to **glow**

Gnade, *f.* grace, favour, mercy;  
 quarter

Gold, *n.* **gold**

golden, *adj.* **golden**

Gott, *m.* (=s; pl. "er) **God**

Grab, *n.* (pl. "er) **grave**

Graben, *m.* ditch; trench

graben,\* to dig, delve, engrave

Graf, *m.* (=en) count, earl

Gras, *n.* (pl. "er) **grass**

grau, *adj.* **gray**; hoary

grauen, *impers.* (with *dat.*) to shud-  
 der. mir graut vor, I tremble  
 (shudder) at

greifen,\* to seize; to grasp, **gripe**,  
 grab

Greis, *m.* old man, **graybeard**

Griech, *m.* **Greek**, Grecian

griechisch, *adj.* Greek

groß, *adj.* coarse; clumsy; rude;  
 rough

Grube, *f.* pit, mine, quarry

grün, *adj.* **green**; verdant

Grund, *m.* (pl. "e) **ground**; bottom;  
 land; foundation; reason. zu =e

gehen,\* to sink; to perish; to be  
 ruined. zu =e ridigen, to ruin

gründen, to found; to **ground**

**Gründung**, *f.* foundation; founding; establishment  
**grünen**, to grow green; to be verdant  
**gut**, *adj.* good; *adv.* well. kurz und —, one word for all, in short.  
 es ist — sagen, it's easy to say. —  
 Dinge sein, to be of good cheer.  
 (2) *adv.* well. *impers.* — stehen  
 (mit), to be all right with  
**Gymnasium**, *n.* (pl. -en) grammar-school

**Haar**, *n.* (-es; =e), hair  
**Haarſchneider**, *m.* hair-cutter  
**haben**, *aux. v.* to have (p. 52)  
**hafen**, *m.* haven, harbour; earthen vessel  
**hahn**, *m.* cock; hammer of a gun  
**haibe** (Heibe), *f.* heath  
**halb**, *adj.* and *adv.* half. — fünf, half-past four  
**hals**, *m.* (-es; "e) neck, throat  
**halt**, *m.* stopping, stop. *interj.* halt! stop!  
**halten**,\* to hold, to keep. für —, to look upon as. — auf, to lay stress upon  
**hand**, *f.* (pl. "e) hand  
**handeln**, (1) to act; to deal. (2) to bargain. es handelt ſich um, the question is  
**hase**, *m.* hare; coward  
**hass**, *m.* (gen. Haſſes) hate, hatred  
**haſſen**, to hate  
**haſt**, **hast**  
**hatte**, Pret. Indic. of haben  
**hauch**, *m.* breath, breathing; aspiration  
**hauen**,\* to hew; to chop, cut  
**haufe(n)**, *m.* heap; multitude; troop (p. 16)  
**haupt**, *n.* (pl. "er) head; chief.  
 auf's — ſchlagen, to defeat, rout  
**hauptſtadt**, *f.* capital, metropolis  
**hauptwort**, *n.* (pl. "er) noun, substantive  
**haus**, *n.* (-es; pl. Häuser) house; family; home. nach =, home (wards). zu =e, at home  
**haushalt**, *m.* household, economy  
**haus-halten**,\* *n.* to keep house  
**häuschen**, *n.* small house, cottage

**hausvater**, *m.* head of a family, paterfamilias  
**haut**, *f.* (pl. "e) hide; skin  
**heer**, *n.* (pl. =e) army; host  
**heil**, *adj.* hale; whole; safety; salvation; welfare  
**heiland**, *m.* Saviour, Redeemer  
**heilig**, *adj.* holy; saint  
**heim**, *adv.* home  
**heimat**, *f.* (pl. =en) home; birth-place  
**heim-kehren**, to return (home)  
**heinrich**, **Henry**  
**heirat**, *f.* (pl. =en) marriage. heiraten, to marry  
**heiß**, *adj.* hot; torrid  
**heißen**,\* (1) *trans.* to name, call; to tell, order, bid. (2) *intrans.* to be named, called; to mean, signify  
**heiter**, *adj.* or *adv.* clear, bright; cheerful  
**held**, *m.* (-en) hero; champion  
**helfen**,\* (with *dat.*) (1) to help, assist; (2) to avail  
**hemd**, *n.* (-es; =en) shirt; chemise  
**henn**, *f.* hen  
**her**, (1) *adv.* (of place) hither, hitherward; (2) (of time) since, ago. hin und —, to and fro  
**herab**, *adv.* down; downwards. =kommen, to come down, descend  
**heran**, *adv.* on, onwards  
**herauf**, (**here**) up, (hitherwards), up here, upwards. =kommen, to come up. =ſchiden, to send up  
**heraus**, *adv.* out. =kommen, to come out from  
**herbei**, *adv.* hither; near. =rufen, to call (in)  
**herbst**, *m.* autumn (**harvest**)  
**herbſtlich**, *adj.* autumnal  
**her-kommen**,\* to hail from.  
**herr**, *m.* (-n; pl. =en) master; lord; gentleman; Mister; Sir; Lord  
**herrſchen**, *n.* dandy  
**herum**, *adv.* round; round about.  
 =ſchlagen, *refl.* to buffet  
**herunter**, *adv.* down. Gut —! hats off!  
**hervor**, *adv.* forth; forward. =bringen, to produce; to bring forth  
**herz**, *n.* (-ens; =en) heart  
**Herzensangelegenheit**, *f.* deep concern

**Herzog**, *m.* (=es; "e) duke  
**her-ziehen**, \* to march along, progress  
**Heu**, *n.* **hay**  
**heulen**, to **howl**, yell  
**heut(e)**, *adv.* to-day. — zu Tag,  
 now-a-days. — Morgen, this morning.  
 — über ein Jahr, this day  
 next year  
**heutig**, *adj.* of this day; to-day's  
 present  
**Hexe**, *f.* witch, hag  
**Heyke**, Paul, an eminent German  
 novelist  
**hielt**, \* see halten  
**hier**, *adv.* here  
**Hilfe**, or **Hülfe**, *f.* **help**, assist-  
 ance  
**Himmel**, *m.* heaven; sky; canopy;  
 climate. unter freiem —, in the  
 open air  
**himmlisch**, *adj.* celestial; heavenly  
**hin**, *adv.* there, thither. — und her,  
 to and fro, hither and thither  
**hinab**, *adv.* down, downwards  
**hinauf**, *adv.* and prefix, up. =gehen,\*  
 to go up. =steigen,\* to ascend  
**hinaus**, *adv.* and prefix, out (of this),  
 hence  
**hinein**, *adv.* in, into (it). =fallen,\* to  
 fall into. =gehen, to go in. =lassen,\*  
 to let in  
**hin-gehen**, \* to go thither  
**hinten**, *adv.* **behind**  
**hinter**, *adv.* **behind**, backwards.  
*prep.* (with *acc.* or *dat.*) behind,  
 after  
**hinterbringen**, \* to inform, to give  
 secret information  
**Hirte**, *m.* (=n) **herdsman**  
**hoch**, *adj.* (see pp. 27 and 29) **high**,  
 tall. *adv.* highly  
**höchst**, *adj.* **highest**; utmost, ex-  
 treme. *adv.* most, extremely (see  
 p. 29)  
**Hof**, *m.* (=es; pl. Höfe) court; yard,  
 courtyard; farm  
**Höhe**, *f.* **height**; elevation; hill  
**Höhle**, *f.* cavity, cavern, cave; bur-  
 row; den  
**hold**, *adj.* propitious; gracious;  
 friendly; lovely. — sein (with  
*dat.*) to be well disposed towards  
**Hölle**, *f.* hell  
**Holz**, *n.* (pl. "er) wood; timber  
**Honig**, *m.* **honey**

**hören**, to **hear**; to listen, to pay  
 attention to. das läßt sich —,  
 there is some sense in that  
**hübsch**, (1) *adj.* pretty; nice. (2)  
*adv.* prettily  
**Huf**, *m.* (=es; "e) **hoof**  
**Hufeisen**, *n.* horse-shoe  
**Hügel**, *m.* **hill**, knoll  
**Huhn**, *n.* (pl. "er) fowl; **hen**  
**Hülfe**, *f.* **help**, assistance; succour.  
 — leisten, to render help  
**hülfe**, \* Pret. Subj. of helfen  
**Hund**, *m.* dog; **hound**  
**Hundert**, *n.* (pl. "e) a **hundred**.  
 =fältig, **hundred-fold**  
**Hunger**, *m.* **hunger**. =s sterben, to  
 die of hunger  
**hungern**, to hunger. es hungert mich,  
 I am hungry  
**hurra!** hurrah!  
**Hut**, (1) *m.* (pl. "e) **hat**; bonnet.  
 (2) *f.* guard, care, **heed**, keeping,  
 watch. auf der —, on one's guard  
**hüten**, to look after, guard, tend; to  
 keep. sich — vor (with *dat.*), to  
 beware of, to be on one's guard.  
 Gott behüte! God forbid!  
**Hütte**, *f.* hut, cot  
**ich**, *pers. pron.* **I**, myself  
**ihm**, *pers. pron.* (*dat. sing.* of er) to  
**him**  
**ihn**, *pron.* (*acc. sing.* of er) him  
**ihnen**, *pron.* (*dat. pl.* of sie) to them;  
 Ihnen, to you  
**ihr**, *I. pers. pron.* (1) 2nd p. *pl.* you;  
 (2) *dat.* of sie, *f.* to her. II. *poss.*  
*pron.* her; their. Ihr, your  
**ihrig**, *poss. pron.* (with art) hers;  
 theirs. Ihrig, yours; das Ihrige,  
 your duty  
**im**, contraction of in dem, in the  
**immer**, *adv.* always, ever; still.  
 noch —, still. — mehr, more and  
 more. continually. geh — gerade  
 aus, keep going straight on  
**in**, *prep.* (1) (with *acc.* of motion  
 towards) into, to. (2) (with *dat.*  
 of rest) in, within, at (see p. 89)  
**indem**, *conj.* while, whilst; because;  
 inasmuch as  
**Infinitiv**, *m.* (pl. "e) infinitive  
**inner**, *adj.* **inner**; inward; internal,  
 interior

innerhalb, *prep.* within  
 ins, contraction of in das, in the  
 Insekt, *n.* (=s; pl. -en) **insect**  
 Insel, *f.* island, **isle**  
 interessant, *adj.* **interesting**  
 irdisch, *adj.* earthly  
 irgend, *adv.* any  
 irgendwo, *adv.* anywhere, somewhere  
 or other  
 irren, to **err**, stray. *refl.* to mistake,  
 make a mistake  
 ist, 3rd p. s. Pres. Indic. of sein

ja, (1) *adv.* **yes**, **yea**, **aye**. (2) *em-*  
*phatic* (see Ex. 50)  
 Jagd, *f.* (pl. -en) hunting; shooting  
 jagen, to drive; to chase; to hunt  
 Jäger, *m.* hunter; sportsman; game-  
 keeper; (mil.) rifleman  
 Jahr, *n.* (pl. =e) **year**  
 Jahreszeit, *f.* season  
 Jammer, *m.* lamentation  
 jammern, (1) to lament; to wail.  
 (2) to pity. bu jammert mich, I  
 pity you  
 je, *adv.* ever. *conj.* (with a compar.)  
 je...je (best), the...the  
 jedenfalls, *adv.* at all events; by all  
 means  
 jed=er, =e, =es, *pron.* each; every  
 Jedermann, *m.* everyone, every-  
 body  
 jemals, *adv.* ever, any time  
 Jemand, *pron.* (see p. 45) some-  
 body; anybody. irgend —, some  
 one; anyone  
 jen=er, =e, =es, *dem. pron.* that, yon,  
**yonder**; the former  
 jetzt, *adv.* now; at present. bis —,  
 hitherto  
 Jetzt, *n.* the present  
 Jude, *m.* **Jew**  
 Jugend, *f.* (collect.) youth; young  
 folk  
 jung, *adj.* **young**  
 jünger, *adj.* see jung  
 Jungfer, *f.* maid; miss  
 Jungfrau, *f.* maid; virgin  
 Jüngling, *m.* youth; young man  
 Juni, *m.* **June**

Kaffee, *m.* **coffee**  
 Kaiser, *m.* emperor (**Cæsar**)

kalt, *adj.* **cold**. mir ist —, I am  
 cold  
 Kälte, *f.* cold; frost  
 Kame(e)l, *n.* (pl. =e) **camel**  
 kämmen, to comb  
 Kampf, *m.* (pl. =e) combat, fight, con-  
 flict  
 kämpfen, to combat, fight; to struggle  
 kann, pres. indic. of können  
 Karl, *m.* (=s) **Charles**  
 Kartoffel, *f.* potato  
 Käse, *m.* **cheese**  
 Katz, *f.* **cat**  
 Kauf, *m.* (pl. =e) purchase  
 Kaufmann, *m.* (pl. =leute) merchant;  
 tradesman  
 kaum, *adv.* scarcely, hardly, no  
 sooner  
 kehren, to sweep; to turn  
 kein, =e, —, (1) *adj.* no; not any;  
 not a. (2) *noun or pron.* kein=er,  
 =e, =es, no one; none; no-  
 thing  
 keinsweg(e)s, *adv.* in no wise; not at  
 all; by no means  
 kennen,\* to know; to be acquainted  
 with. — lernen, to become ac-  
 quainted with  
 Kette, *f.* (1) **chain**; (2) range (of  
 mountains)  
 kichern, to titter  
 Kind, *n.* (=es; =er) child, infant  
 Klage, *f.* (1) lamentation; lament;  
 complaint. (2) (law) action  
 klagen, to lament, bewail. — über, to  
 complain of. beklagenswerth, *adj.*  
 lamentable, deplorable  
 klar, *adj.* and *adv.* **clear**; clearly.  
 in's =e setzen, to set right  
 Klasse, *f.* **class**; form  
 Kleid, *n.* (=es; =er) dress, gown;  
 coat; **clothes**  
 klein, *adj.* little, small; tiny  
 Klima, *n.* (pl. =te) climate, **clime**  
 klopfen, to knock, rap; throb (pulse);  
 to beat  
 klug, *adj.* prudent; sensible; sa-  
 gacious  
 Knabe, *m.* (pl. =n), boy, lad  
 knacken, to crack  
 knarren, to creak  
 knecht, *m.* menial; servant; slave  
 knirschen, to gnash; grind; crash,  
 creak  
 Knoten, *m.* **knot**; tangle

**knüpfen**, to knit, **knot**, tie; to connect

**Köln** (Cöln), **Cologne**

**Koloß**, *m.* (pl. =2) **colossus**

**Komma**, *n.* **comma**

**kommen**,\* to come

**König**, *m.* (=8; =e) **king**

**Königin**, *f.* (pl. =en) **queen**

**königlich**, *adj.* royal

**Königreich**, *n.* (pl. =e) **kingdom**

**können**, *aux. v.* **can**; to be able, to know (p. 70)

**Kopf**, *m.* (pl. "e) **head**; top

**loßbar**, *adj.* costly; precious

**losten**, to **cost**

**krachen**, to **crack**, crash, roar

**Kraft**, *f.* (pl. "e) **strength**; force; power

**kräftig**, *prep.* with *gen.* in virtue of

**krank**, *adj.* sick, ill, unwell. *es ist zum -lachen*, it is enough to make one die of laughing

**kreisen**, to rotate

**Krieg**, *m.* (=8; =e) **war**

**Kuh**, *f.* (pl. "e) **cow**

**kühl**, *adj.* **cool**

**kühn**, *adj.* bold, daring

**Kummer**, *m.* **sorrow**; affliction; grief

**kummervoll**, *adj.* sorrowful

**kunbig**, *adj.* (with *gen.*) versed in

**künftig**, *adj.* future, **coming**. *adv.* for the future, henceforth

**Kunst**, *f.* (pl. "e) **art**

**Kupfer**, *n.* **copper**; copper-plate, print

**kurz**, (1) *adj.* short; brief; abrupt. (2) *adv.* in short; shortly; summarily. — *und gut*, one word for all; in a word

**lachen**, to **laugh**

**Laden**, *m.* (pl. **Läden**) **shop**; stall; (pl. **Läden**) shutter

**Land**, *n.* (=8; pl. **Länder** and **Land**) **land**, country. *zu -e*, by land. *auf dem -e*, on shore; ashore; in the country

**Landleben**, *n.* country (rural) life

**Landvogt**, *m.* governor; bailiff

**lang**, *adj.* and *adv.* **long**. *vor -er*

*Zeit*, long ago, long since

**lange**, *adv.* long; a good (while).

*schon* —, long since

**Langohr**, *m.* long-ear

**lang**, *prep.* with *gen.* along; along-side

**lassen**,\* (1) to let, leave, leave off; to desist from. (2) (with an *inf.*) to permit; to have (get) done (see Ex. 18)

**latein**, *n.* lateinisch, *adj.* **Latin**

**laufen**,\* (**leap**), to run

**Lawine**, *f.* **avalanche**

**leben**, to **live**; to be alive

**leben**, *n.* **life**; vivacity; spirit

**Lebensgefahr**, *f.* danger of life

**Leber**, *f.* **liver**

**leben**, to **lick**

**Lection**, *f.* (pl. =en) **lesson**

**leder**, *n.* **leather**

**leer**, *adj.* empty, void

**legen**, to **lay**, put, place. *refl.* to lie down

**Legion**, *f.* (pl. =en) **legion**

**lehren**, to teach, instruct

**Lehrer**, *m.* teacher; tutor; master

**Leib**, *m.* (pl. =er) **body**

**Leichnam**, *m.* (pl. =e) **corpse**

**leicht**, *adj.* or *adv.* **light**; easy, easily; slight

**leid**, *adj.* (with *sein*, *thun*, *werden*, and *dat.* of *pers.*, see p. 74). *es ist (or thut) mir* —, I am sorry for it. *zu -e thun*, to harm, injure

**leihen**, *f.* **lyre**

**leihen**,\* (1) to lend (**loan**); (2) to borrow

**lernen**, to **learn**. *kennen* —, to become acquainted with

**lesen**,\* to pick out, to gather; to read, lecture

**Lesebuch**, *n.* reading-book; reader

**lest**, *adj.* **last**, final

**Leute**, *pl.* people; men; persons; folks

**licht**, *n.* (pl. =er) **light**; (pl. =e) candle

**lieb**, *adj.* and *adv.* dear; beloved; pleasing. — *haben*, to like, love, cherish; to be fond of. *superlat.* *am -sten*, in preference to all

**Liebe**, *f.* **love**; affection; charity

**liebenswertig**, *adj.* amiable, lovely, charming

**lieber**, *adv.* rather

**Lied**, *n.* (pl. =er) song; ditty; hymn

**lieberlich**, *adj.* dissolute (**litherly**)

**liefern**, (1) to purvey, furnish, supply, deliver; (2) to give (battle)

**liegen,\*** to lie; to rest; to be stationed or situated. — lassen, to leave (behind). es liegt an mir, it depends on me. am Herzen —, (with *dat.* of *pers.*) to have at heart

**ließ,\*** see lassen

**lilie, f.** lily

**list, f.** craft; cunning; artifice, stratagem

**livius, m.** Livy

**lob, n.** praise, commendation

**Lothringen, n.** Lorraine

**lotse, m.** (-n) pilot

**lune, m.** moon

**luft, f.** air; atmosphere; breeze

**lügen, to lie,** tell a lie

**lunge, f.** lungs; lights

**lust, f.** (pl. "e) (lust) pleasure; desire. — haben, to have a mind

**lustspiel, n.** comedy

**lustig, adj.** (lusty) jovial, cheerful, jolly

**machen, to make;** to do; to cause. was macht der Vater? how is your father? sich auf den Weg —, to set out, depart

**Macht, f.** (pl. "e) might; power; force; strength

**mächtig, adj.** mighty; powerful; strong

**Mädchen, n.** maiden

**mag(n),** see mögen

**Magd, f.** (pl. "e) maid; maid-servant

**Magnet, m.** (=e; =e) loadstone, magnet

**Magnetnadel, f.** compass-needle

**mahnen (an), to put in mind (of); to remind of**

**Mär(h)chen, n.** fairy-tale

**Mai, m.** May

**Mal, n.** (=e; =e) time (= French 'fois'). ein-, once; zwei-, twice

**malen, to paint, picture, depict**

**man, indef. pron.** one; people; they; a man (cf. French 'on'). — sagt, it is said, they say

**manch-er, =e, =e, adj.** many a; (pl.) some, several

**Mangel, m.** want; poverty

**Mann, m.** (=e; pl. "er) man; husband. mit — und Frau, every living soul; with all hands

**Mantel, m.** cloak, mantle

**Märchen, n.** fairy-tale

**Mart, n.** (=e) marrow; pith; (fig.) vigour, mettle. f. (pl. "en) (1)

(coin) mark; (2) boundary

**Marsch, (1) m.** (pl. "e) march;

(2) interj. be off! march!

**Marschall, m.** (pl. "e) marshal

**Maß, n.** (pl. =e) measure, size; proportions

**mäßig, adj.** moderate

**Mäßigkeit, f.** moderation, temperance

**Mat, m.** (=e; =en) mast

**Matrose, m.** sailor; seaman, mariner

**Mauer, f.** (pl. =n) wall

**Maul, n.** (pl. "er) mouth

**Maus, f.** (pl. Mäuse) mouse. allit.

**Mann und —, every living soul**

**Meer, n.** (pl. =e) sea

**Meeresfluth, f.** high-water

**mehr (compar. of viel), adj. and adv.** more. immer —, more and more

**mehrere, several**

**mein, m. and n., =e, f. poss. pron.** my, mine (p. 34)

**meinige, (der, die, das) poss. pron.** mine. das —, my own; my duty

**meist (superl. of viel), adj.** most. am meisten, see p. 29

**Meister, m.** master

**memorieren, to commit to memory**

**Mensch, m.** (=en) man (orig. adj. derived from Mann); person; mankind

**Menschheit, f.** humanity

**menshlich, adj.** human, humane

**miß (acc. of ich), me; myself**

**Milch, f.** milk

**milb(e), adj.** mild; kind; liberal, charitable

**milbthätig, adj.** tender-hearted, charitable

**Minute, f.** minute

**mir, pers. pron. (dat. of ich) to me, for me**

**mit, prep. (with dat.) with**

**Mittag, m.** mid-day, noon; south. zu — essen, to dine

**mittags, adv.** at noon

**Mitte, f.** (mid) middle, midst

**Mittel, n.** means, way; expedient; remedy

**mitten, adv. (mid) in the midst, in the middle of**

mit-(h)eilen, (with *dat. of pers.*) to communicate, impart

mögen, \* **may**; to be able; to like, wish (see p. 70 and Ex. 17)

möglich, *adj.* possible

Mord, *m.* (=es; =e) **murder**

Morgen, *m.* (1) morning, **morn**; East; acre. des =s, in the morning. (2) *adv.* to-morrow. — früh, to-morrow morning

Mund, *m.* (=es; =e) **mouth**; (fig.) orifice, aperture

Münster, *m. or n.* **minster**

munter, *adj. and adv.* brisk, lively; wide awake; cheerful, gay

münzen, *lit.* to **mint**, coin. fig. — auf, to aim (level) at

Musik, *f.* **music**

müssen, \* **must**; to be obliged (compelled) (see p. 71 and Ex. 16). er muß fort, he must go

müßig, *adj. and adv.* idle

Müßiggang, *m.* idleness, sloth

Mut(h), *m.* courage, mettle; **mood**; spirit. guten =es sein, to be of good cheer. es ist mir zu —, I feel

Mutter, *f.* (pl. Mütter) **mother**

na(h), (1) *prep.* (with *dat.*) after; to, towards. — Hause, towards home, homewards. (2) *adv.* behind, after

Nachbar, *m.* (=s; =n) **neighbour**

nachdem, *conj.* after, according as

nach-benten, \* to meditate, reflect, ponder

nachher, *adv.* afterwards, subsequently; hereafter, by and by

Nachmittag, *m.* afternoon. *adv.* =s, in the afternoon

Nachricht, *f.* (pl. =en) account; intelligence; tidings, news

nächst, *prep.* (with *dat.*) **next**, next to

Nacht, *f.* (pl. "e) **night**; darkness

Nachtbief, *m.* burglar

nachts, *adv.* by night, in the night-time

Nachwelt, *f.* after-ages, posterity

nackt, *adj.* **naked**, bare

Nadel, *f.* **needle**

Nagel, *m.* (pl. " ) nail

na(h)e, *adj.* near, **nigh**

Nähe, *f.* nearness; proximity; neighbourhood

nähren, to feed; to nourish. sich — von, to live upon

Nahrung, *f.* nourishment, aliment

Name, *m.* (=ns; =n) **name**

Narr, *m.* (=en) fool

naß, *adj.* wet

Nation, *f.* (pl. =en) **nation**

Natur, *f.* (pl. =en) **nature**; disposition

natürlich, *adj. and adv.* **natural**(ly)

Nebel, *m.* mist, fog; haze

neben, *prep.* (with *acc. or dat.*) near, next to, beside; by the side of. close to

Neffe, *m.* (=n) **nephew**

nehmen, \* (with *dat. of pers.*) to take

Neid, *m.* (=es) envy

Neigung, *f.* inclination; incline; tendency; slope

nein, *adv.* **no**, nay

nennen, \* to **name**, call, mention

Nest, *n.* (pl. =er) nest

Nettelbed, *name* of a patriotic citizen of Kolberg (b. 1738, d. 1824)

Neu, *n.* (pl. =e) **net**

neu, *adj.* **new**; fresh, recent. *adv.* newly, recently

Neues, *n.* new(s)

neun, nine

nicht, *adv.* not

Nichte, *f.* niece

nichts, *pron. & s. n.* nothing, **nought**

nie, *adv.* never

nieder, (1) *adj.* low, under; nether. (2) *adv.* down. (3) *prefix*, down

Niederlande, (pl.) Low Countries, **Netherlands**

niedrig, *adj.* low; mean

niemals, *adv.* never

Niemand, *pron.* (**no man**) nobody, no one

Nil, *m.* Nile

nimmer, *adv.* never, no more, never again. =mehr, **never more**; by no means

nimmt, \* see nehmen

nirgend(s), *adv.* nowhere

noch, (1) *adv.* yet, as yet; still; more. — nicht, not yet. — jetzt, even now. (2) *conj.* nor.

Nord, *m.* **North**

nun, (1) *adv.* **now**; (2) *interj.* well!



*nur*, *adv.* only, solely, but

*Ruß*, *f.* (pl. *Rüsse*) **nut**

*Nutzen*, *m.* utility, advantage, profit

*ob*, *conj.* whether, if

*oben*, *adv.* above; on high, aloft; up-stairs

*ober*, *adj.* upper; superior; **over**

*oberhalb*, *adv.* above

*oberst*, *adj.* uppermost; chief, high, head

*obgleich*, *conj.* although, though, albeit

*Ocean*, *m.* **ocean**

*oder*, *conj.* or, or else

*Ofen*, *m.* (pl. ") stove; **oven**; furnace; kiln

*offen*, *adj.* and *adv.* open; frank; public

*öffentlich*, *adj.* or *adv.* public, open; publicly, in public

*Officier* (or *Offizier*), *m.* (=s; =e); **officer**

*oft*, *adv.* often, **oft**

*Oheim*, *Ohm*, *m.* (=s; =e) uncle

*ohne*, *prep.* without; but for

*Ohre*, *n.* (=s; =en) ear

*Öl* (Del), *n.* (=e) oil

*Opfer*, *n.* sacrifice; victim; **offering**

*Ort*, *m.* (pl. =e and "er) place; spot; locality

*Paar*, *n.* (pl. =e) pair; couple; a few

*Papier*, *n.* (=s; =e) paper

*Paradies*, *n.* **paradise**

*Partei*, *f.* party; faction

*Particip*, *n.* (=s; =ien) **participle**

*Paß*, *m.* (pl. "ße) mountain defile; **passport**

*Pfeil*, *m.* arrow; dart; **pile**. =schnell, *adj.* swift as an arrow

*Pfeiler*, *m.* pillar; pier

*Pferd*, *n.* (=s; =e) horse

*pflanzen*, to plant, set, hoist

*pflegen*, (1) (with *gen.* or *acc.*) to foster; to take care of; to nurse, tend; to indulge in. (2) \* to be accustomed to, be wont; to carry on (negotiations). *Rates* —, to consult

*Pflicht*, *f.* (pl. =en) duty (**plight**)

*Phantasie*, *f.* imagination, fancy, **fantasy**

*Plan*, *m.* (pl. "e) **plan**

*Planet*, *m.* (=en) **planet**

*Plinius*, Pliny

*plündern*, to **plunder**, pillage, sack

*Post*, *f.* (pl. =en) **post**, post-office; mail (stage) coach; news, intelligence

*Pracht*, *f.* splendour; magnificence  
*prächt*, *adj.* magnificent, pompous, sumptuous, superb

*Priester*, *m.* **priest**

*Prinz*, *m.* (=en) **prince**

*Prinzessin*, *f.* (pl. =en) **princess**

*Prozeß*, *m.* (=s; pl. =e) lawsuit; trial

*Punkt*, *m.* (=s; =e) **point**, dot; full-stop; item. — ein Uhr, at one o'clock precisely

*pünktlich*, *adj.* punctual, precise

*Quader*, *m.* (=s) or =stein, **squared** hewn stone

*Quelle*, *f.* spring, source

*Rabe*, *m.* **raven**

*Rad*, *n.* (=s; pl. "er) wheel

*Rand*, *m.* (pl. "er) edge; brink; brim; margin

*Rang*, *m.* **rank**; grade, degree; row (of seats), tier (of boxes)

*Rat(h)*, *m.* (pl. "e, see § 70, c) counsel, advice; council

*rat(h)en*,\* to advise, counsel; to guess, divine

*Raub*, *m.* (pl. § 70, c) **robbery**

*Räuber*, *m.* robber

*Rauch*, *m.* smoke

*rauchen*, to smoke (**reek**)

*rauh*, *adj.* rough, coarse, harsh, rude

*raunen*, to whisper

*Rechnschaft*, *f.* account, **reckoning**.

*zur* — *forberr*, to call to account  
*rechnen*, (1) to **reckon**, calculate;

(2) — *auf*, to count, depend upon

*Rechnung*, *f.* (pl. =en) reckoning, calculation; account, bill, score

*recht*, *adj.* **right**; straight

*Recht*, *n.* (=s; =e) right; privilege; law; justice. — *geben* (with *dat.*), to decide in one's favour; to do justice to, justify

Rede, *f.* speech, language; question.  
 in die — fallen, to interrupt. —  
 stehen, to give an account of one's  
 self. wovon ist die — ? what is the  
 question about?  
 reblich, *adj.* honest  
 Redlichkeit, *f.* honesty  
 Redner, *m.* orator, speaker  
 Regel, *f.* rule; regulation  
 regeln, to regulate, rule  
 Regen, *m.* rain, shower  
 Regenwasser, *n.* rain-water  
 regieren, to reign  
 Regiment, *n.* (pl. =er) regiment  
 regnen, to rain  
 reich, *adj.* rich; wealthy  
 reichlich, *adj.* or *adv.* plentiful(ly),  
 ample; amply, handsomely  
 Reichthum, *m.* riches, wealth  
 Reichswehr, *n.* pl. imperial troops  
 Reim, *m.* (=es; =e) rhyme  
 rein, *adj.* or *adv.* clean; clear; in-  
 nocent, pure; plain, simple  
 Reis, *n.* (=es; pl. =er) sprig, twig  
 Reis, *m.* rice  
 Reise, *f.* journey, voyage, travel  
 reisen, to travel, journey  
 Reisende(r), traveller  
 reissen,\* (1) to tear, split, burst,  
 rend, wrest, drag; (2) to sketch  
 reiten,\* to ride, go on horseback.  
 spazieren —, to take a ride  
 Reiter, *m.* rider, horseman; trooper,  
 cavalier  
 Reiterer, *f.* cavalry, horsemen  
 Reiz, *m.* (pl. =e) attraction; charm;  
 irritation  
 reizen, to charm, attract; to irritate,  
 provoke, stimulate, excite  
 reizend, *adj.* charming  
 rennen,\* to run, race, course  
 Rest, *m.* (=es; =e) remainder, rem-  
 nant, rest  
 retten, to save, rescue, deliver  
 Reue, *f.* repentance, penitence; re-  
 morse  
 reuen, *impers.* (with *acc.* of *pers.*) to  
 repent, regret, rue  
 Rhein, *m.* (=es) Rhine  
 Rhodus, Rhodes  
 richten, to direct, turn; to level,  
 point; to adjust; to judge  
 richtig, *adj.* right  
 Riese, *m.* giant  
 riet(h),\* see rat(h)en

Rind, *n.* (=er) horned cattle  
 Rindfleisch, *n.* beef  
 Ring, *m.* ring  
 Ritter, *m.* knight, cavalier  
 Roman', *m.* (=s; =e) novel, romance  
 Römer, *m.* Roman  
 römisch, *adj.* Roman  
 Roje, *f.* rose  
 Roß, *m.* (pl. =e) horse; charger  
 rot, or roth, *adj.* red, ruddy  
 Rottäppchen, *n.* Little Red Riding-  
 hood  
 röt(h)lich, *adj.* reddish  
 Rot(h)wein, red wine  
 Ruder, *n.* rudder; oar; helm  
 Ruf, *m.* (=es; =e) call; cry; fame;  
 repute, character  
 rufen,\* to call  
 Ruß(e), *f.* rest, repose; peace, tran-  
 quillity  
 ruhen, to rest, repose, sleep  
 ruhig, *adj.* quiet, tranquil, still  
 rühmen, to praise. *refl.* (with *gen.*)  
 to glory (in), boast (of), pride  
 one's self  
 rund, *adj.* round

Saal, *m.* (pl. =e) hall; drawing-  
 room; saloon  
 Saat, *f.* (pl. =en) seed; standing  
 corn  
 Sache, *f.* thing; affair, matter  
 (sake); case. die — verhält sich,  
 the state of things (matter)  
 stands  
 sagen, to say, tell; to speak; to  
 signify  
 Salz, *n.* (=es; =e) salt  
 Same (=ns), *m.* Samen, *m.* (=s) seed;  
 grain (p. 16)  
 Sammlung, *f.* collection; gathering  
 sämmtlich, *adj.* or *adv.* all; each  
 and all  
 Samstag, *m.* (=es; =e) Saturday  
 Sand, *m.* (=es) sand  
 sanft, *adj.* or *adv.* soft, mild,  
 gentle  
 Sänger, *m.* singer, songster; min-  
 strel, poet, bard  
 saß, see sitzen  
 sauer, *adj.* sour, acid, tart; (fig.)  
 cross, crabbed. es sich — werden  
 lassen, to toil hard  
 Säule, *f.* pillar, column

**Esaar**, *f.* (pl. *een*) host, multitude, crowd; troop

**Esach**, *n.* **chess**. — dem Könige! check to the king!

**Esacht**, *m.* (*es*; pl. *een* and *e*) shaft (of a mine); pit

**Esade**, *m.* (*as*; pl. *n*) or **Esaben**, *m.* (*s*) (p. 16) damage, harm; detriment, prejudice; loss; injury. —! a pity!

**Esaf**, *n.* (pl. *ee*) **sheep**

**Esaffen**,\* (1) to create; (2) (reg.) to do, to make, to work (**shape**); to procure, transport; to provide

**Esam**, *f.* **shame**

**Esamen**, (*sch*) to be ashamed. **Esäme** biß! for shame! fie!

**Esarf**, *adj.* **sharp**; acute

**Esatten**, *m.* **shade**, shadow

**Esat**, *m.* (pl. *e*) treasure, store

**Esägen**, to value, estimate, appreciate, esteem; to deem, consider.

**gering** —, to despise

**Esäuen**, to look, behold, see

**Esäuspiel**, *n.* (*s*; *ee*) spectacle; sight; comedy

**Esäffel**, *m.* bushel

**Esäben**,\* (1) *trans.* to divide, separate; to dissolve; to divorce. (2) *intrans.* to part; to set out; depart

**Esäin**, *m.* **shine**, light; appearance, aspect; glare, gleam; show, pretence

**Esäinen**,\* to **shine**; to appear, seem

**Esäitern**, to be wrecked, frustrated

**Esälten**,\* to **scold**, chide; to nickname

**Esänten**, to give, bestow, present; to grant; to retail

**Esäuen**, to **shun**, fear, shirk

**Esätsal**, *n.* (pl. *ee*) fate, destiny

**Esäßen**,\* to **shoot**, dart, cast

**Esäff**, *n.* (pl. *ee*) **ship**, vessel, boat

**Esäffbrud**, *m.* shipwreck

**Esäffbrüdig**, shipwrecked

**Esäffen**, to **ship**, sail, navigate

**Esälb**, *m.* and *n.* (pl. *ee*) **shield**; (pl. *eer*) scutcheon; signboard

**Esälbwach(e)**, *f.* sentinel. — **stehen**, to stand (keep) sentry; to be on duty

**Esälf**, *n.* reed, rush, bulrush

**Esälft**,\* see **Esälten**

**Esämmern**, to glimmer, twinkle; to be brilliant

**Esächt**, *f.* (pl. *een*) battle (**slaughter**)

**Esächtfeld**, *n.* (pl. *eer*) battle-field, field of battle

**Esäsf**, *m.* **sleep**

**Esäsfzimmer**, *n.* bedroom

**Esäsfen**,\* to **sleep**, be asleep

**Esäsfen**, *impers.* to feel drowsy. *es*

**Esäsfert** mich, I am sleepy

**Esäsfag**, *m.* (pl. *e*) (1) blow, stroke, hit; clap; beating (of the heart); striking (of a clock). (2) song (of a bird)

**Esäsfagen**,\* to beat, strike, hit (**slay**); to wrap

**Esäsfange**, *f.* serpent, snake

**Esäsfcht**, *adj.* bad. *adv.* badly

**Esäsfichen**,\* to sneak, creep, crawl (**sleek**)

**Esäsfien**, *n.* **Silesia**

**Esäsfenig**, *adj.* or *adv.* quick, prompt, swift, *ft*, in all haste

**Esäsfief**, pret. of **Esäsfen**

**Esäsfießen**,\* to shut, close, lock; to conclude, finish, end; to infer

**Esäsfim**, *adj.* ill, bad; wrong; hard up

**Esäsfloß**, *n.* (pl. *er*) (1) lock; (2) castle

**Esäsfug**,\* see **Esäsfagen**

**Esäsfeden**, (with *dat* of *pers.*) to taste; to relish

**Esäsfmeißeln**, (with *dat.*) to flatter

**Esäsfmerz**, *m.* (*ens* or *es*; *een*) pain

ache, **smart**; suffering

**Esäsfmetterling**, *m.* butterfly

**Esäsfmied**, **Esäsfmidt**, *m.* **smith**

**Esäsfmuß**, *m.* dirt; filth (**smut**)

**Esäsfmußig**, *adj.* dirty; (fig.) mean

**Esäsfnaße**, *f.* buckle, clasp

**Esäsfnee**, *m.* (*s*) **snow**

**Esäsfneiden**,\* to cut

**Esäsfnell**, *adj.* or *adv.* quick, fast, swift

**Esäsfon**, *adv.* already, now; even; indeed, surely, no doubt (see Ex. 50). — gut, that will do. —

lange, long ago

**Esäsfön**, *adj.* and *adv.* beautiful; handsome; fair, fine. *bante* —, many thanks

**Esäsfönheit**, *f.* beauty

**Esäsföpfung**, *f.* creation.

**Esäsfreiben**,\* to write

ſchreien, \* to scream, shriek, cry  
ſchreiten, \* to stride, step, stalk, pace;  
to proceed  
ſchrift, *f.* (pl. =en) writing; type;  
publication, works; paper, journal.  
die heilige —, Holy Writ, Scrip-  
ture  
ſchriftſteller, *m.* author, writer  
ſchritt, *m.* (=e) step, stride, pace;  
gait  
ſchrot, *n.* trunk, block; (fig.) cut,  
make, build. von altem — und  
ſorn, of the good old stock. von  
ſilber — und ſorn, of sterling  
worth  
ſchu, *m.* (=s; =e) shoe  
ſchule, *f.* school  
ſchüler, *m.* (=s) scholar, pupil;  
schoolboy, disciple  
ſchuld, *f.* (pl. =en) guilt, crime; debt;  
fault. ich bin nicht daran —, that is  
no fault of mine. er hat (trägt)  
die —, it is his fault; he is to  
blame  
ſchutz, *m.* protection, shelter; de-  
fence  
ſchütze(r) *m.* (=en), marksman; archer;  
rifleman  
ſchwach, *adj.* or *adv.* weak, feeble;  
faint  
ſchwanken, to stagger, totter, toss,  
reel, swing, rock; (fig.) to vacil-  
late, hesitate, fluctuate  
ſchweidnitz, *n.* a town in Silesia  
ſchweigen, \* to be silent; to keep si-  
lence; to cease speaking  
ſchweiß, *m.* sweat, perspiration  
ſchwer, *adj.* (1) heavy; (2) (fig.)  
difficult, hard  
ſchwert, *n.* (=s; =er) sword  
ſchwester, *f.* sister  
ſchwimmen, \* to swim, float  
ſchwindlig (ſchwindlig), *adj.* giddy,  
dizzy  
ſchwur, *m.* (pl. "e) oath, swearing;  
curse. einen — thun, to take an  
oath  
ſclave, *m.* (=n) slave  
ſechſ, *six*  
ſechzig, *sixty*  
See, (1) *m.* (=s; =n) lake. (2) *f.*  
sea  
Seefahrer, *m.* seafaring man, ma-  
riner  
Seele, *f.* soul, mind; human being

ſegel, *n.* sail. unter — gehen, to set  
sail  
ſegen, *m.* blessing; benediction;  
grace  
ſegnen, to bless  
ſehen, \* to see, perceive; to look,  
behold  
ſehen, *refl.* (nach) to long after, yearn  
towards  
ſehr, *adv.* very, very much, much  
(see p. § 60, 5 \*). bitte ſehr! pray  
don't trouble yourself  
ſein, *aux. v.* to be, exist (p. 52)  
ſein(er), *pers. pron.* (gen. of er and  
es) of him, of his, of it  
ſein (ſeine, ſein) *poss. pron.* his, its  
ſeinige, ſeine, *poss. pron.* his, its  
ſeit, *prep.* or *conj.* (ſeitdem) since.  
— wann? how long? — drei  
Tagen, these three days  
Seite, *f.* (pl. =n) side; flank; page  
ſelber, ſelbſt, *pron.* self (see Ex. 45)  
ſelig, *adj.* blessed; late  
ſelten, *adj.* or *adv.* rare, scarce,  
infrequent, seldom, rarely,  
scarcely  
ſeltenheit, *f.* rarity, scarceness  
ſetzen, (1) to set, put, place; (2)  
to stake, lay. auf's Spiel —, to  
put at stake  
ſich, (1) *refl. pron., acc.* and *dat.* him-  
self, herself, itself, one's self, *pl.*  
themselves; (2) *recipr. pron.* each  
other, one another  
ſicher, *adj.* secure, safe, sure, cer-  
tain  
ſie, *pers. pron.* (nom. and acc.)  
(1) *sing.* she, her; (2) *pl.* they,  
them. Sie, you  
ſieben, seven  
ſiebzehn, seventeen  
ſieg, *m.* (pl. =e) victory, conquest  
ſiegeszeichen, *n.* sign of victory;  
trophy  
ſilber, *n.* silver  
ſin, 3 p. pl. Pres. Indic. of ſein  
ſingen, \* to sing  
ſinken, \* to sink, give way  
ſinn, *m.* (es; =e or =en) sense; feel-  
ing; taste; mind; intention;  
meaning; thought. bei =en, in  
one's senses  
ſinnbild, *n.* (pl. =er) emblem, symbol  
ſinnen, \* to think, meditate, muse,  
reflect

**Esclave, m. slave**  
**Enneewittchen, n. little Snow-white**  
**so, adv. so, thus, in that manner, as.**  
*conj. so, so as.* *so etwas, such a thing.* *so ein, such a.* *so wie, as, such as.* *so wol als auch..., as well as...* *so bald als, as soon as*  
*soeben, or so eben, adv. just now*  
*sogleich, sofort, adv. immediately, at once, forthwith*  
**Sohn, m. (-es; pl. "e) son**  
**Soldat, m. soldier**  
**soffen, aux. v. (1) shall, ought, must, should; (2) to be obliged; (3) to be or have to; (4) to be said, reported**  
*sondern, conj. but*  
**Sonnabend, m. (gen. -es) Saturday**  
**Sonne, f. sun**  
**Sonntag, m. Sunday**  
**sonst, adv. otherwise, else; besides; in other respects; at other times, formerly.** — nichts, nothing else  
**Sorge, f. care, concern; anxiety**  
**sorgen, to care, take care (of); to attend (to), look after**  
**Sorte, f. sort, kind**  
**Spanien, n. Spain**  
**spanisch, adj. Spanish**  
**Spaß, m. (pl. "e) jest, joke; fun, lark**  
**spät, adj. late; backward**  
**spazieren (gehen), to go for a walk, take a walk.** — fahren, to take a drive. — reiten, to go out for a ride  
**Speise, f. food**  
**Sperling, m. sparrow**  
**spiden, to lard. gut gespidt, well-lined**  
**Spiel, n. (pl. -e) play, playing; sport, game**  
**spielen, to play, sport, gamble; to perform**  
**spinnen,\* to spin; to twist; to purr**  
**Spinne, f. spider**  
**Spion, m. (pl. -e) spy**  
**Spott, m. (-es) mockery, scorn; scoffing**  
**Sprache, f. language, speech, tongue, idiom**  
**sprechen,\* to speak, talk; to say**  
**spricht,\* see sprechen**  
**Sprichwort, n. (-es; "er) proverb, saying, saw**

**springen,\* to spring, leap, jump**  
**Staat, m. (-es; -en) state; parade, pomp; finery**  
**Stadt, f. (pl. "e) town; city**  
**Stadtmauer, f. (pl. -n) fortifications**  
**Stall, m. (pl. "e) stall, stable**  
**stehn,\* Pret. of stehen**  
**Stand, m. (pl. "e) stand; standing-place, position; post; class; rank.** zu se kommen,\* to take place, come off. — halten,\* to stand one's ground; to hold one's own  
**standhaft, adj. steady, steadfast; constant**  
**Standhaftigkeit, f. steadiness; constancy**  
**stark, adj. strong; stout. adv. strongly; hard**  
**Stärke, f. strength, vigour; force**  
**statt, f. place, stead**  
**statt, prep. with gen. instead of**  
**Staub, m. (-es) dust; powder.** sich aus dem se machen,\* to take to one's heels, to run away  
**Stäubchen, n. mote, atom**  
**staunen (über), to be astonished, wonder (at)**  
**Staunen, n. astonishment**  
**steden, to stick, put, place; to be concealed; to lie hidden**  
**Steg, m. (pl. -e) path, foot-bridge, foot-plank**  
**stehen,\* (1) to stand; (2) to stop, remain; (3) with dat. to suit, fit**  
**steigen,\* (1) to rise, climb, mount, ascend; (2) to descend; to advance, increase (in price)**  
**steil, adj. steep, precipitous**  
**Stein, m. (pl. -e) stone, rock**  
**Stelle, f. place, spot; position, situation; employment, office; passage (of a book). auf der —, on the spot**  
**stellen, to put, place, set up; to station, post**  
**sterben,\* to die (starve)**  
**Stern, m. (-es; -e) star**  
**stets, adv. constantly, continually, always, ever**  
**steuern, to steer, pilot**  
**Etich, m. (pl. -e) sting, prick.** im se lassen,\* to leave in the lurch  
**Stiefel, m. (pl. —) boot**

flieg,\* *Pret.* of fliegen  
 Stier, *m.* (pl. *er*) bull (**steer**)  
 Stift, *m.* (see p. 96) peg, tag  
 stiften, to institute, found, establish  
 still(e), *adj.* or *adv.* **still**, silent;  
 quiet; calm, serene. still-schweigen,\*  
 to be silent. still-*stehen*,\* to be at  
 (come to) a standstill  
 Stimme, *f.* (1) voice; tune. (2)  
 vote, suffrage  
 Stirn, *f.* brow, forehead; (fig.)  
 cheek, insolence. die — bieten,\* to  
 oppose one  
 stolz, *adj.* proud  
 Stolz, *m.* pride  
 Storch, *m.* (pl. "e) **stork**  
 Strahl, *m.* (=es; =en) beam, ray; jet  
 (of water); flash (of lightning)  
 Straße, *f.* (pl. =n) road, way; **street**  
 Strauch, *m.* (pl. "e or "er) shrub  
 Stroh, *n.* **straw**; thatch  
 Strom, *m.* (=es; pl. "e) **stream**;  
 large river; torrent  
 Stück, *n.* (=es; =e) piece  
 Stückwerk, *n.* piece (patch) work  
 Student, *m.* (=en) student  
 Studium, *n.* (pl. Studien) **study**  
 Stunde, *f.* hour; league; lesson  
 Sturm, *m.* (=es; pl. "e) **storm**,  
 charge, assault. im — nehmen,\* to  
 storm, take by assault  
 stürzen, (1) *intrans.* to be precipitated;  
 to rush (fall) down. (2) *trans.*  
 to precipitate, hurl down; to  
 plunge  
 stützen, to prop, stay; to support,  
 sustain. *refl.* to rest (rely)  
 suchen, to seek, search, look for  
 Süden, *m.* South; Süd, South wind  
 Summe, *f.* sum, amount  
 Sumpf, *m.* (pl. "e) **swamp**, marsh,  
 bog  
 Sumpfgras, *n.* sedge  
 Sünde, *f.* **sin**  
 süß, *adj.* **sweet**. =es Wasser, fresh  
**water**

tadeln, to blame, find fault with,  
 censure

Tag, *m.* (=es; =e) **day**; daylight.  
 bei Tage, in the daytime. des Tages,  
 a day. eines Tages, once, one  
 day. heut zu Tage, now-a-days.  
 heut über acht Tage, this day week

täglich, *adj.* and *adv.* **daily**  
 Tausend, *n.* (pl. =e) a **thousand**.  
*adj.* thousand  
 Teich, *m.* (pl. =e) pond, pool  
 Teil, *m.* and *n.* (pl. =e) part, share,  
 (deal). zu — werben, (with *dat.*  
 of *pers.*) to fall to the lot of  
 Teilnahme, *f.* sympathy. teil-nehmen\*  
 (an), to take share (in); to feel  
 sympathy  
 Teutone, *m.* **Teuton**  
 Thal, *n.* (pl. "er) valley, **dale**  
 that,\* *Pret.* of thun  
 That, *f.* (pl. =en) deed, act, feat  
 Thau, *m.* dew  
 Theater, *n.* **theatre**  
 Thee, *m.* tea  
 Theil, see Teil  
 theuer, *adj.* and *adv.* dear; dearly;  
 expensive; beloved  
 Thier, *n.* (=es; =e) animal; beast  
 Thor, *m.* (=en) fool  
 Thor, *n.* (pl. =e) gate, gateway  
 Thräne, *f.* tear  
 Thron, *m.* (=es; =e) **throne**  
 thun,\* to do, make; to put  
 Thür(e), *f.* (pl. =en) **door**  
 tief, *adj.* deep, low; hollow; pro-  
 found  
 Tiefe, *f.* (pl. =n) **depth**; deep  
 sea  
 Tiger, *m.* **tiger**  
 Tod, *m.* **death**  
 to(b)t, *adj.* **dead**  
 tragen,\* (1) to bear, carry; (2) to  
 yield, produce, bring forth; (3)  
 to wear  
 trüg(e), *adj.* lazy, idle, indolent,  
 slothful; dull, sluggish  
 Trägheit, *f.* laziness, idleness; sloth;  
 sluggishness  
 Trant, *m.* (pl. "e) **drink**, beverage  
 trant,\* *Pret.* of trinten  
 Traube, *f.* bunch of grapes  
 trauen, (with *dat.*) to trust, confide  
 (in), rely upon  
 Trauer, *f.* mourning, sorrow, grief,  
 affliction  
 Traum, *m.* (=es; pl. "e) **dream**;  
 reverie  
 träumen, to **dream**  
 traurig, *adj.* sad, mournful; sorrow-  
 ful; **dreary**  
 treffen,\* to hit, strike; to meet  
 (with), fall in (with); to guess

treiben,\* (1) *trans.* to **drive**, put in motion; to urge; to carry on.

(2) *intrans.* to drift, go adrift

Treppe, *f.* (pl. -n) staircase, stairs

treten,\* to **tread**, step; kick

treu, *adj.* faithful, true, trusty

Treu(e), *f.* faith, fidelity; honesty; loyalty, fealty

trinken,\* to **drink**

troden, *adj.* **dry**, arid, barren

Trotz, *m.* defiance. — bieten, (with *dat.*) to set one at defiance; to brave

trotz, *prep.* (with *gen.*) in spite of, notwithstanding

trozen, (with *dat.*) to defy, bid defiance

trüb(e), *adj.* troubled, thick, muddy, turbid; (fig.) gloomy, dull, melancholy, sad

Trunt, *m.* (-es) **drink**, draught

Trupp, *m.* **troop**, band, gang. (pl. -n) troops, forces

Tuch, *n.* (pl. -er) cloth; linen; kerchief

Tugend, *f.* (pl. -en) virtue

Tyrann, *m.* (-en) **tyrant**  
tyrannisch, *adj.* tyrannical

üben, to exercise, practise

über, *prep.* (with *acc.* or *dat.*) **over**, above; about; during. heute — acht Tage, this day week

überdrüssig, *adj.* (with *gen.*) tired, weary, bored, sick (of)

überein, *adv.* of one accord, in accord

übereinkommen,\* to come to an agreement

übereinstimmen, -treffen,\* to accord, agree, harmonise

Ueberfall, *m.* sudden attack; inroad; onslaught; surprise

überfall'en,\* to attack suddenly; to overtake

Ueberfluß, *m.* overflow; (fig.) plenty, abundance, superfluity

Ueberrnuth, *m.* (1) excessive joy, wantonness, wild spirits; (2) arrogance, foolhardiness

übernäch'ten, to pass the night; to sleep for the night

überneh'men, to undertake, assume

überrausch'en, to surprise

überred'en, to talk over, persuade

überstürmen,\* to overflow, flood, inundate

über-setzen, to put over; ferry over

überset'en, to translate

Uebersetzung, *f.* translation

übersteh'en,\* to endure, surmount, recover from

übersteig'en,\* to step over (cross); to climb, scale; to surpass, exceed

überzeug'en, to convince, persuade

Ueberzeugung, *f.* conviction, persuasion

Uhr, *f.* (pl. -en) clock, timepiece watch; hour, time of day. wie viel — ist es? what is the time?

um, (I.) *prep.* (with *acc.*) (1) about, round, around; (2) for, on account of; (3) for the sake of; (4) by. (II.) *conj.* in order to

umbringen,\* to kill, murder

umgeb'en,\* to surround

umgehen,\* to go round; to associate, have intercourse. umgeh'en, to go round about, walk round; to avoid, elude, evade

umher', *adv.* round, all round, round about

umhin, *adv.* (— können). ich kann nicht —, I cannot help (refrain from)

umring'en, to surround, encompass, beset

unbegrenzt, *adj.* unlimited, boundless

und, *conj.* **and**; — wenn, even if

unerstochen, *adj.* undaunted, dauntless

unfern, *prep.* (with *gen.*) not far off, near

Ungebulß, *f.* impatience

ungefähr, *adv.* about, nearly, almost; by chance, accidentally, casually

ungeheuer, *adj.* enormous, huge, monstrous

ungemischt, *adj.* unmixed, unalloyed

Unglück, *n.* (-es) misfortune; bad (ill) luck; disaster; adversity; distress; unhappiness

unglücklich, *adj.* unhappy, unfortunate (**unlucky**). *adv.* =er Weise, unfortunately, unluckily

unrecht, *adj.* or *adv.* not **right**, wrong; unfair, unjust; improper; amiss

**Unrecht**, *n.* **wrong**; injustice, injury.  
 — **haben**, to be in the wrong. —  
**geben**, (with *dat.*) to declare to be  
 in the wrong  
**uns**, (1) *pers. pron., acc. us, dat. to*  
 us; (2) *refl. ourselves, to our-*  
 selves; (3) each other, to each  
 other  
**unser**, (1) *pers. pron. (gen. of wir) of*  
 us; (2) *unjer (unfere, f., unser, n.)*  
*poss. pron. our, ours*  
**unsterblich**, *adj.* immortal  
**unten**, *adv.* below; beneath, **under-**  
**neath**. **von** — **auf**, from the bot-  
 tom, from below  
**unter**, *prep.* (with *acc. or dat.*) (1)  
 under; beneath; underneath; (2)  
 among, amongst; (3) during  
**untergehen**,\* to go down, perish,  
 sink; to set  
**unterhalten**,\* to maintain, support.  
*refl.* to converse; to amuse one's  
 self, be entertained  
**unterhalten**, *adj.* entertaining, amus-  
 ing  
**unterlassen**,\* to omit, neglect; to  
 leave off, discontinue; to fail to  
 do a thing  
**unternehmen**,\* to undertake, at-  
 tempt  
**Unternehmen**, *n.* or **Unternehmung**, *f.*  
 undertaking, enterprise, attempt  
**unterst**(e), *adj.* lowest, undermost,  
 nethermost  
**unvergesslich**, *adj.* not to be **forgot-**  
**ten**; memorable  
**unverloren**, *adj.* secure, inalienable

**Vater**, *m.* (pl. ") **father**  
**Vaterland**, *n.* **fatherland**  
**Vaterlandsliebe**, *f.* patriotism; love of  
 one's country  
**Veilchen**, *n.* **violet**  
**Venedig**, *n.* **Venice**  
**verbal**, *adj.* verbal  
**Verb**, *n.* **verb**  
**verbergen**,\* to hide, to conceal  
**verbieten**,\* to **forbid**, prohibit  
**verbinden**,\* (1) to **bind** up, tie; to  
 join, unite, combine. (2) to dress  
 (a wound). *refl.* to pledge, en-  
 gage  
**Verbindung**, *f.* connection; alliance;  
 combination

**verblühen**, to fade, wither; (fig.) to  
 perish  
**verbanten**, to owe, be indebted to  
**verberben**,\* (1) *intrans.* to spoil, be  
 spoiled; to go to ruin. (2) *trans.*  
 to spoil, ruin, destroy; to corrupt,  
 pervert, deprave  
**verdoppeln**, to **double**, redouble  
**vereinigen**, to **unite**, join, combine;  
 to associate  
**verfolgen**, to pursue, persecute  
**vergangen**, *adj.* (from P.P. of **vergehen**)  
 by, gone, past  
**Vergangenheit**, *f.* past; time past  
**vergeben**,\* (with *dat.*) to **forgive**,  
 pardon  
**vergehen**,\* to pass away  
**Vergehen**, *n.* error, fault, trespass  
**vergeffen**,\* (*w. gen. or acc.*) to **forget**  
**vergießen**,\* to spill, shed  
**vergleichen**,\* (mit) to compare; to ad-  
 just, reconcile  
**Vergnügen**, *n.* pleasure, enjoyment;  
 content, contentment  
**vergönnen**, to permit, grant, allow  
**vergraben**,\* to bury  
**verhalten**,\* to behave, conduct one's  
 self. *refl.* to be in a certain  
 state. wie verhält sich die Sache?  
 how does the matter stand?  
**Verhältnis**, *n.* relation, connection;  
 proportion, ratio; circumstance,  
 affairs  
**verhehlen**, to hide, conceal  
**verkaufen**, to sell  
**verkürzen**, to shorten, abridge, ab-  
 breviate, diminish, curtail  
**verlassen**,\* to leave, quit; to forsake,  
 abandon. *refl. sich* — *auf*, to rely,  
 depend, reckon (upon)  
**verlegen**, I. (1) to remove, transport,  
 transfer; (2) to mislay; (3) to pub-  
 lish (a book, &c.). II. *adj.* discon-  
 certed; embarrassed, perplexed  
**Verlegenheit**, *f.* embarrassment, per-  
 plexity; predicament. in — *setzen*,  
 to embarrass, disconcert  
**verlieren**,\* to **lose**. **verloren gehen**, to  
 be lost  
**verloren**, *adj.* lost; **forlorn**; done  
 for. — *gehen*, to be lost, miscarry.  
 — *geben*, to give up (a game)  
**vermeiden**,\* to avoid, shun, forbear  
**Vermögen**, *n.* ability, power, means;  
 property; fortune



**Berunft**, *f.* reason, judgment  
**vernünftig**, *adj.* or *adv.* rational;  
 reasonable; sensible, judicious  
**verreisen**, (*nach*) to start, set out on a  
 journey; to travel to  
**verrichten**, to do, perform, execute,  
 transact  
**verschieben**, *adj.* different, various;  
 several, sundry  
**verschlagen**,\* to cast away. *adj.* cun-  
 ning, crafty  
**verschlingen**,\* to swallow up, devour  
**verschwenben**, to spend, squander,  
 lavish  
**versprach**,\* *Pret.* of **versprechen**  
**versprechen**,\* to promise  
**Versprechen**, *n.* promise  
**verstehen**,\* to understand, compre-  
 hend; mean. *refl.* (*auf*) to be a  
 good hand at; to be a good judge  
 (of); to be well up to. *das versteht*  
*sich von selbst!* of course! unques-  
 tionably! (*cela va sans dire*)  
**verstreichen**,\* to pass away, elapse  
**Versuch**, *m.* (=s; -e) experiment,  
 trial; attempt  
**Versucher**, *m.* tempter  
**Bertrauen**, *n.* (*auf*) confidence, **trust**,  
 faith  
**vertraut**, *adj.* intimate; conversant,  
 familiar  
**Bertraute**, *m.* and *f.* confidant, inti-  
 mate friend  
**verurtheilen**, to condemn, sentence,  
 doom  
**verwandeln**, to change, alter, turn; to  
 transform  
**verweisen**,\* to banish, exile; (with  
*dat. of pers*) to rebuke, reprimand  
**verwunden**, to wound, hurt, injure  
**verwundern**, to astonish, surprise,  
 amaze, **wonder**  
**verzagen**, to despond, lose heart  
**verzaubern**, to enchant, bewitch, fas-  
 cinate  
**verzeihen**,\* to pardon, forgive, ex-  
 cuse  
**Berzeihung**, *f.* pardon, forgiveness  
**verzichten**, (*auf*) to renounce, resign,  
 forego, waive  
**Vesuv**, *m.* **Vesuvius**  
**Vieh**, *n.* beast, brute; cattle  
**viel**, *adj.* & *adv.* much, a great deal  
**viele**, many

**vielleicht**, *adv.* perhaps, possibly, may  
 be  
**vier**, **four**  
**Viertel**, *n.* **fourth** part, quarter. *ein*  
 — *auf zehn*, a quarter past nine.  
*drei* — *auf zehn*, a quarter to ten  
*vierzehn*, fourteen. — *Tag*, a fort-  
 night  
**vierzig**, *adj.* forty  
**Vogel**, *m.* (pl. " ") bird, **fowl**  
**Vogelfänger**, *m.* bird-catcher  
**Volk**, *n.* (pl. "er) people, nation,  
**folk**  
**voll**, *adj.* **full**; filled  
**voll**(gut)gepöckelt, well-lined  
**vollzieh'en**,\* to execute, fulfil; to  
 carry into effect, perform  
**vom**, contraction of *von dem*  
**von**, *prep.* (with *dat.*) of, from (see  
 § 64, and Ex. 37)  
**vor**, (1) *adv.* **before**, forward; (2)  
*prep.* (with *acc.* or *dat.*) (see p. 88  
 and Ex. 53) before; in preference  
 to; from; with; ago. — *am*  
*Tagen*, a week ago, this day  
 week  
**vor-bereiten**, to prepare  
**Vorfall**, *m.* (pl. "e) incident, event,  
 occurrence  
**vor-haben**,\* to design, intend, have  
 in view, propose  
**vorhanden**, *adj.* at hand, ready; ex-  
 isting, extant  
**vorher**, *adv.* and *prefix*, before, be-  
 forehand, previously  
**vor-kommen**,\* (1) to come out from,  
 to come forth; (2) to happen,  
 occur, befall; (3) to appear,  
 seem  
**vor-nehmen**,\* (1) to take in hand. (2)  
*refl.* (*sich etwas* —) to intend, pur-  
 pose, resolve  
**Vorschlag**, *m.* (=s; "e) proposal  
**vor-sehen**,\* to foresee, provide  
 for  
**Vorsehung**, *f.* Providence; precau-  
 tion; provision  
**vor-stellen**, to put before; to intro-  
 duce (one to another); to repre-  
 sent, perform, play, act; to make  
 a representation. *refl.* to fancy,  
 imagine  
**Vort**(h)eil, *m.* advantage, interest  
**vormärts**, *adv.* **forward**, forwards;  
 ahead

**Verzeit**, *f.* former times; time of old, antiquity

**Vorzug**, *m.* (pl. *e*) preference; superiority; advantage

**Waare**, *f.* **ware**; commodity; merchandise, goods

**wachen**, to be awake; to watch, guard

**wachsen**,\* to **wax**; to grow, increase

**Waffe**, *f.* **weapon**, arm

**Wage**, *f.* balance; scale

**Wagschale**, *f.* scale

**wagen**, to venture, hazard, risk, dare, attempt. *frisch gewagt ist halb gewonnen*, well begun is half done

**Wagen**, *m.* waggon, (**wain**) cart; carriage, coach

**wägen**, to **weigh** (*trans.*)

**Wahl**, *f.* (pl. *en*) choice; election; selection; alternative

**wählen**, to choose select, elect

**wahr**, *adj.* true; downright; regular. *nicht —?* is it not so? *adv.* truly

**wahrscheinlich**, *adj.* or *adv.* probable, probably

**Wahrscheinlichkeit**, *f.* probability

**währen**, to last, endure, continue

**während**, (1) *prep.* (with *gen.*) during. (2) *conj.* while, whilst

**wahrscheinlich**, *adj.* or *adv.* probable; probably

**Wald**, *m.* (pl. *er*) **wood**, forest

**Waldenser**, **Waldenses**, Vaudois

**Wand**, *f.* (pl. *e*) wall; partition

**Wanderer**, *m.* **wanderer**

**wann**, *adv.* **when**. *dann und —*, now and then

**war**, Pret. Indic. of *sein*

**ward**, Pret. of *werden*

**warm**, *adj.* **warm**, hot

**Wärme**, *f.* **warmth**, heat; ardour

**warnen**, (*vor*) to **warn**, caution

**warten**, (1) (*auf*) to wait (*for*). (2) (with *gen.*) to attend upon, tend; to nurse

**warum**, *adv.* why, wherefore, on what account

**was**, *interrog.* and *rel. pron.* (1) **what**; that. — *flir*, what (sort) of? (2) *indef. pron.* for *etwas*, something

**Wasser**, *n.* **water**

**Weg**, *m.* **way**, road, route; manner. *keines —s*, by no means

**weg**, *adv.* **away**, gone off

**wegen**, *prep.* (with *gen.*) on account of, for the sake of

**weh**, *interj.* alas! woe to! woe betide! — *mir!* woe is me!

**Weh**, *n.* **woe**; pain

**weichen**, (1) to soften; (2)\* to yield; to depart from

**Weihnachten**, *f. pl.* Christmas

**weil**, *subord. conj.* because; **while**

**Wein**, *m.* (*=es*; *=e*) **wine**

**weinen**, to weep; to **whine**

**weise** (*weis*), *adj.* **wise**; *adv.* wisely.

*der Weise*, ein *Weiser*, wise man, sage

**Weise**, *f.* (1) manner, method; (2) tune, melody; (3) *=weise*, *adverbial suffix* (= English *wise* and French *-ment*) added to *adj.* (with *genit. inflect.*) to form adverbs of manner: *gleicherweise*, likewise

**weisen**,\* to point, show

**Weisheit**, *f.* wisdom, knowledge

**weiß**, *adj.* **white**

**weiß**(t), Pres. Indic. Sing. of *wissen*

**weit**, *adj.* **wide**, broad; far, distant

**weither**, *adv.* from afar

**weithin**, far and wide

**welch** (*=er, =e, =es*), (1) *rel. and interrog. pron.* who, **which**, that, what; (2) *partit.* some

**Welle**, *f.* (pl. *n*) wave, billow

**Welt**, *f.* (pl. *en*) **world**

**Weltgericht**, *n.* last judgment

**Weltgeschichte**, *f.* history of the world; universal history

**wem**, *dat., wen, acc.* of *wer*

**Wenbefeis**, *m.* tropic

**wenig**, *adj.* and *adv.* little, few

**wenigstens**, *adv.* at least

**wenn**, *subord. conj.* **when**; if. — *nur*, provided that. — *schon*, though, although

**wer**, (1) *interrog. pron.* **who**? (2) *rel. pron.* who; he (*or she*) who, whoever

**werben**,\* (*um*) to woo, canvass (*for*), enlist

**werden**, *aux. v.\** to become; to be (see p. 53). *los —*, to get rid of. *mir wird... zu Mut*(h), I feel...

**werfen**,\* to throw, cast, pelt

**Wert**, *n.* (*=es*; *=e*) **work**. *alles ins —setzen*, to leave no stone unturned

Wert(h), *m.* value, worth. *adj.* **worth**; **worthy**

Wesen, *n.* existence; being; essence;

Wesens, *fuss*, noise

wesentlich, *adj.* essential; real, actual

wes, *wessen*, (*gen.* of *wer*, *was*)

**whose?** of whom, of what  
weßhalb, *weswegen*, why, wherefore?  
Westen, *m.* **West**; West, *m.* West  
wind

Wetter, *n.* **weather**; storm

Wetterglas, *n.* barometer

wichtig, *adj.* and *adv.* **weighty**; im-  
portant

wider, *prep.* (with *acc.*) **against**;  
contrary

widerfah'en, \* (with *dat.*) to happen,  
occur, befall

widerwärtig, *adj.* contrary

Widerwärtigkeit, *f.* adversity; reverse  
of fortune

wie, *than.* (1) *adv.* how; (2) *conj.*  
as

wieder, *adv.* again; once more

wiederfahren, see *widerfahren*

wiederholen, to repeat, reiterate

wiederholt, repeatedly. zu =en Malen,  
repeatedly

Wiedersehen, *n.* meeting again. auf —,  
till we meet again (au revoir)

Wiege, *f.* cradle

wiegen, \* to **weigh** (*intrans.*)

Wien, *n.* **Vienna**

Wiese, *f.* meadow

wieviele, or wievielte, *adj.* what num-  
ber, what place in number; what  
day of the month?

wild, *adj.* **wild**, savage

Wilhelm, **William**

Wille, (1) *m.* (=ns) **will**. Willens sein,  
to be willing (see p. 16). (2)  
*prep.* and *suffix* in comp., for the  
sake of. meiner Willen, for my sake.  
um... Willen, for the sake of (see  
p. 33)

willigen (in), to consent (to)

Wind, *m.* **wind**

wir, *pers. pron.* **we**

wirklich, *adj.* real, actual. *adv.* really,  
actually

Wirklichkeit, *f.* reality

Wirt(h), *m.* (=es; =e) landlord; host;  
innkeeper

wissen, \* to know (**wit**)

Wissen, *n.* knowledge

Wissenschaft, *f.* science; erudition;  
learning; general knowledge

wo, *adv.* **where**. wo...auch, where-  
ever

wobei, *adv.* **whereby**

Woche, *f.* **week**

woher, *adv.* whence; where...from

wohin, *adv.* whither; where...to

wohl, or wol, *adv.* **well** (see Ex.  
50)

wohlbekannt, *adj.* well-known

wo(h)lgebildet, well-formed

Wohnort, *m.* place of abode, domi-  
cile. Wohnst, *m.* residence

Wolf, *m.* (=es; pl. "e) **wolf**

Wolke, *f.* cloud (**weilkin**)

Wolle, *f.* **wool**

woran, *comp. adv.* **whereon**, where-  
to; whereof, of what

worauf, *comp. adv.* **whereon**, **where-  
upon**; on what (which)

woraus, *comp. adv.* whence, out of  
which

worin, *comp. adv.* **wherein**, in  
what (which)

Wort, *n.* (=es; pl. =e or "er, see p. 96)  
**word**; (pl. Wörter) separate

(single) words; (pl. Worte) say-  
ing, sentence, speech. in's —  
fallen (with *dat.* of *pers.*) to inter-  
rupt

wortbrüchig, *adj.* faithless

wortgetreu, *adj.* and *adv.* literal

Wörterbuch, *n.* (=es; "er) dictionary,  
lexicon

Wunder, *n.* **wonder**; miracle; 'mar-  
vel; astonishment. es nimmt mich

—, I wonder

Wunsch, *m.* (pl. "e) **wish**; desire

wünschen, to **wish**

Würde, *f.* dignity

würdig, *adj.* (with *gen.*) **worthy**

Wurm, *m.* (=es; "er) **worm**; reptile;  
grub

Wurzel, *f.* root

Wüste, *f.* desert; **waste**

zagen, to be afraid; to lose heart;  
to be chickenhearted; to hesi-  
tate

Zahl, *f.* number, cipher

zahlen, to pay

zählen, to count, number, reckon

Zahn, *m.* (=es; pl. "e) **tooth**

**zauber**, *m.* (=s) spell; enchantment; magic; charm

**zauberruthe**, *f.* magician's wand

**zauberſchlaf**, *m.* magic sleep

**zehn**, **ten**

**zehnmal**, ten times

**Zeit**, *f.* (pl. =en) time (**time**); the times. **bei =en**, betimes. **zu =en**, now and then. **eine Zeitlang**, for a while

**zeitig**, *adj.* or *adv.* timely; ripe, mature; early; in good time, betimes

**Zeitung**, *f.* newspaper (**tidings**)

**Zelt**, *n.* (pl. =e) tent (**tilt**)

**zerbrechen**,\* to break to pieces. **ſich den Kopf —**, to rack one's brains  
**ziehen**,\* to draw; to pull, **tug**; to breed; to grow

**Ziel**, *n.* (=es; =e) goal, term; aim

**Zimmer**, *n.* chamber, room

**Zins**, *m.* (pl. =e) interest (**tithe**).  
**auf — auslegen**, to lay out at interest

**zittern**, to tremble, shake, quake

**zögern**, to hesitate; to linger

**Zoll**, *m.* (pl. =e) inch; (pl. =e) **toll**, duty; custom

**Zone**, *f.* zone

**Zorn**, *m.* anger, wrath. **in — geraten**, to get angry

**zu**, (1) *adv.* **too**, over; (2) *prep.* (with *dat.*) **to**, for

**zu=bringen**,\* to spend (pass) time

**zugethan**, attached to, fond of

**Zukunft**, *f.* future, futurity

**zu=nehmen**,\* to increase, augment

**zu=ſchließen**,\* to lock up, close, shut

**Zucker**, *m.* sugar

**zuerſt** (in two syllables, **zu=erſt**), *adv.* first of all, at first, firstly

**zufrieden**, *adj.* content, satisfied

**Zug**, *m.* (pl. =e) draught (of air);

haul (**tug**); trait; procession;

march; train (railway)

**zum**, contraction of **zu dem**

**Zuneigung**, *f.* inclination, attachment, affection

**Zunft**, *f.* (pl. =e) guild; corporation

**Zunge**, *f.* tongue; language

**zur**, contraction of **zu der**

**zurück**, *adv.* back; backwards; back again

**zurück=kehren**, =kommen,\* to return. come back: to go down in the world

**zurück=weichen**,\* to recede

**zusammen**, *adv.* and *prefix*, together

**zu=ſehen**,\* to look on, watch, take care, mind

**zu=wenden**,\* to turn to; to put, apply, devote

**Zuſchauer**, *m.* spectator

**zuwider**, *adv.* contrary to, contradictory to

**zwar**, *adv.* indeed, in sooth

**zwei**, **two**

**zweimal**, *adv.* twice

**Zweifel**, *m.* doubt

**zweifeln**, to doubt (of)

**Zwerg**, *m.* (pl. =e) **dwarf**

**zwingen**,\* to force, constrain, compel

**zwischen**, *prep.* (with *acc.* or *dat.*) be-

**tween**

**zwölf**, twelve

# VOCABULARY.

## ENGLISH-GERMAN.

a (an), *indef. art.* **ein**, *m.*, **eine**, *f.*, **ein**, *n.* (see Exs. 29-30)  
 able, *adj.* fähig. to be —, können \*  
 (see Ex. 17, a); im Stande sein  
 about, (1) *adv.* (round) umher, herum, rings herum; (2) *prep.* (round) um ...her, herum; (on account of) wegen (see Ex. 50); (nearly) ungefähr, etwa. to set — a thing, etwas anfangen.\* to have no money —, kein Geld bei sich haben. to be about (see Ex. 16 (a)). look — you! nimm dich in Acht!  
 above, *prep.* über, § 65. — all, über Alles. — all things, vor allen Dingen  
 abscond, to, sich davon-machen  
 absence, Abwesenheit, *f.*  
 absorb, to, (lit.) ein-saugen \*; (fig) in Anspruch nehmen \*  
 abundance, Ueberfluß, *m.*  
 abundant, *adj.*, abundantly, *adv.* zahlreich, im Ueberfluß  
 abuse, *s.* Mißbrauch, *m.* (pl. "e); (insult) Beschimpfung, *f.*  
 abuse, to, (misapply) mißbrauchen; (deceive) täuschen, betrügen. (insult) beschimpfen, schelten \*  
 academy, **Académie**, *f.*  
 accident, *s.* (misfortune) Unfall, *m.* (pl. "e), Unglück, *n.*, Unglücksfall, *m.*; (chance) Zufall, *m.*  
 accidentally, *adv.* zufällig; von Ungefähr  
 accompany, to, begleiten; das Geleit geben \*  
 accomplish, to, vollenden

account, Rechnung, *f.*; (relation) Bericht, *m.*, Erzählung, *f.* on — of, wegen (with *gen.* § 66). on that —, deswegen. to call to —, zur Rechenenschaft ziehen.\* to give an —, Rechenenschaft ab-legen  
 accuse, to, an-klagen, beschuldigen  
 accustom, to, gewöhnen (an). to be accustomed, gewohnt sein  
 accustomed, *adj.* gewohnt. to get — to, sich gewöhnen an  
 act, to, handeln, sich betragen \*  
 act, *s.* (deed) That, *f.*, Handlung, *f.*; (play) Aufzug, *m.*, **Act**, *m.*; (law) **Act**, *m.*, Gesetz, *n.*  
 action, That, *f.* (pl. =en); (orat.) körperliche Darstellung, *f.*  
 active, *adj.* (busy) thätig, eifrig, geschäftig; (gram.) Activum, *n.*, *adj.* activ  
 actor (dram.) Schauspieler, *m.*  
 A.D., nach Christi Geburt (n. Chr.)  
 Adam, Adam  
 admiral, **Admiral**, *m.* (pl. "e)  
 admiration, Bewunderung, *f.*  
 admire, to, bewundern  
 ado, Wesens, *n.*, Aufhebens, *n.*  
 advancement, (promotion) Beförderung, *f.*; (progress) Fortschritt, *m.*  
 advertisement, Anzeige, *f.*, Annonce, *f.*  
 advice, (counsel) Rat(h), *m.*; (intelligence) Bericht, *m.*  
 advise, to, rat-en,\* an-raten \*  
 Aeneas, **Aeneas**  
 Aetna (Mount), **Aetna**, *Etna*, *m.*

afraid, *adj.* bange, to be — (of), Angst haben, sich fürchten (vor)  
 after, *prep.* nach (§ 34)  
*adv.* nachher; *conj.* nachdem  
 afternoon, Nachmittag, *m.*  
 again, *adv.* wieder; (once —) noch-  
 mals, abermals, noch einmal  
 against, *prep.* gegen; wider (with  
*acc.*)  
 age, Alter, *n.*; (century) Jahrhundert,  
*n.*, Zeitalter, *n.* old —, Alter,  
 hohes Alter, Greisenalter, *n.*  
 agreeable, *adj.* angenehm. — to,  
 gemäß (with *dat.*)  
 ail, to, fehlen, what -s you? was  
 hast du? was fehlt dir?  
 aim, Ziel, *n.* to take —, to —,  
 zielen  
 air, Luft, *f.*; (appearance) Aussehen,  
*n.*, Miene, *f.*  
 all, *s.* Alles, *n.*  
 all, *adj.* all=er, =e; =es (pl. e). — at  
 once, auf einmal, above —, vor  
 allen Dingen, *adv.* ganz, sämtlich,  
 völlig, not at —, gar nicht, nothing  
 at —, gar Nichts. — at once,  
 plötzlich. — the better, desto besser  
 allege, to, vor=geben \*; (assert) be-  
 haupten  
 allied, *adj.* verbündet, alliiert  
 allow, to, erlauben, to be allowed,  
 dürfen \* (see Ex. 17); lassen \* (see  
 Ex. 18)  
 ally, Bundesgenosse, *m.*  
 almost, *adv.* fast, beinahe  
 alma, Almosen, *n.*  
 alone, *adj.* and *adv.* allein  
 along, *prep.* längs (with *gen.* or  
*dat.*), entlang (§ 66)  
 Alps, Alpen, *f.*  
 already, *adv.* schon, bereits  
 altogether, *adv.* gänzlich, ganz und  
 gar  
 always, *adv.* immer, stets; allzeit  
 ambitious, *adj.* ehrgeizig; ehrstüchtig  
 amiss, *adv.* übel; verkehrt, to take  
 —, übel nehmen \*  
 among, *prep.* unter, bei (with *dat.* or  
*acc.*), from —, aus (*dat.*)  
 amply, *adv.* reichlich  
 amuse, to, unterhalten \*; besufligen,  
 it — me, es macht mir Spaß  
 amusement, Unterhaltung, *f.*; (pas-  
 time) Zeitvertreib, *m.*, Spaß, *m.*

an, *indef. art.* ein, eine, ein  
 (see a)  
 ancestor, Ahn, *m.* (pl. =en); Vorfahr,  
*m.* (pl. =en)  
 anchor, Anker, *m.*  
 ancient, *adj.* alt  
 and, *conj.* und. both... —, so wol...  
 als auch, better — better, immer  
 besser  
 anger, Zorn, *m.*, Ärger, *m.*  
 angry, *adj.*, angrily, *adv.* zornig;  
 aufgebracht, to be — (with), er-  
 zürnen (über), zornig (böse) sein (auf)  
 animal, Tier, *n.*  
 Anne, Anna  
 another, *adj.* verschieden; (one more)  
 noch ein, one — (see § 55, Obs.  
 1). — time, ein ander(es) Mal, one  
 after —, nach einander  
 answer, Antwort, *f.* (pl. =en)  
 answer, to, antworten (with *dat.* of  
*pers.*); erwidern; (a letter) beant-  
 worten (with *acc.*), antworten (auf  
 with *acc.*)  
 antechamber, Vorzimmer, *n.*, Vorge-  
 mach, *n.* (pl. =er)  
 anticipate, to, zuvor=kommen \* (with  
*dat.* of *pers.*); (expect) erwarten;  
 (forebode) ahnen  
 antiquity, Altertum, *n.*, Vorzeit, *f.*  
 Antwerp, Antwerpen, *n.*  
 anxious, *adj.* bange, ängstlich, to be  
 — (see Ex. 23)  
 any, *adj.* irgend ein (eine, ein); any-  
 body (one), Jemand, irgend Jemand;  
 anything, etwas, irgend etwas  
 (was)  
 anywhere, *adv.* irgendwo  
 apology, Entschuldigung, *f.* to offer  
 an — for, um Entschuldigung bitten,  
 sich entschuldigen (wegen)  
 appear, to, erscheinen \* it —s, es  
 scheint  
 appease, beruhigen; besänftigen; ver-  
 söhnen  
 appetite, Appetit, *m.*; Gsflust, *f.*  
 applause, Beifall, *m.*  
 apple, Apfel, *m.*  
 apply, to, (to a *pers.*) sich wenden \*  
 (an); (to anything) Bezug haben  
 auf; (devote) sich beschäftigen (mit,  
 with *dat.*); sich ergeben \* (with  
*dat.*); (for) sich bewerben (um)

**appoint**, to, (time, place) festsetzen, bestimmen; (to a post) ernennen,\* machen (zu), &c. (see Ex. 40)  
**approach**, to, (sich) nähern; sich nähern  
**approach**, s. Annäherung, f., Herannähern, n.; (access) Zutritt, m.  
**approve** (of), to, billigen (with acc.)  
**April**, **April'**, m.  
**Arab**, **Araber**, m.  
**arab-ic**, -ian, *adj.* arabisch  
**architect**, s. Baumeister, m.; **Architekt'**, m.  
**architecture**, s. Baukunst, f.; **Architectur'**, f.  
**arm**, **Arm**, m. (pl. =e)  
**arm** (weapon), Waffe, f.  
**army**, Heer, n. (pl. =e) **Armee**, f.  
**around**, *adv.* and *prep.* herum, **rund** herum, um...herum  
**arrival**, s. Ankunft, f.  
**arrive**, to, ankommen\*; — at, *cr* = reichen  
**art**, Kunst, f. (pl. "e). *fine arts*, die schönen Künste  
**as**, (1) *adv.* wie, **als**, so; as...as, so ...als (wie) (see also Ex. 43); — yet, bis jetzt; — for me, was mich betrifft; — though, als ob.  
 (2) *subord. conj.* (cause) da;  
 (time) als  
**ashamed**, *adj.* beschämt. to be —, sich schämen (with gen.)  
**ashes**, pl. **Asche**, f.  
**Asia**, **Asien**, n.  
**ask**, to, (enquire) fragen; — (for) bitten\* (um); (demand) fordern; (demand urgently) verlangen; (invite) einladen.\* to — a question, eine Frage richten (thun) an (with acc.)  
**asleep**, *adj.* schlafend, im Schlaf. to fall —, ein-schlafen\*  
**assist**, to, bei-**stehen**\*; **helfen**\* (with dat.); (be present) bei-**wohnen** (with dat.)  
**assistance**, Beistand, m., Hilfe, f.  
**assure**, to, versichern (with acc. or dat.)  
**astonish**, to, *trans.* überraschen, in Erstaunen setzen. to be —ed (at), *cr* = staunen (über)  
**astonished**, erstaunt, überrascht  
**astronomer**, **Astronom'**, m.

**astronomy**, **Astronomie'**, f., Sternkunde, f.  
**at**, *prep.* (a) *place*: an, auf, bei, in, zu (see Ex. 41) — home, zu Hause. — my house, bei mir. — church (school), in der Kirche (Schule). — the university, auf der Universität. — sea, zur See, auf der See. (b) *time*: um, zu, in, auf. — one o'clock, um ein Uhr. — night, Nachts. — peace (war), im Frieden (Kriege) (see Ex. 4). all — once, auf einmal. not — all, gar nicht. — last, endlich; zuletzt. — least, wenigstens  
**Athens**, **Athen'**, n.  
**athletic sports**, gymnastische Übungen, f.  
**attack**, s. Angriff, m. (pl. =e)  
**attack**, to, an-greifen,\* an-fallen\*  
**attempt**, Versuch, m., Unterne-hmen, n.  
**attempt**, to, versuchen, wagen  
**attention**, (heed) Aufmerksamkeit, f. to pay — (to), Acht geben (auf). pl. —s, Höflichkeit, f., Aufmerksamkeit, f.  
**attentive**, *adj.*, attentively, *adv.* auf-merksam  
**auction**, Versteigerung, f.  
**audacious**, *adj.* frech, verwegen, ver-messen  
**auditor**, Zuhörer, m.  
**August**, **August'**, m.  
**Australia**, **Australien'**, n.  
**author**, Schriftsteller, m.  
**autumn**, Herbst, m., Späthjahr, n.  
**avalanche**, Lawine, f.  
**avenge**, to, (one's self) sich rächen (an)  
**avoid**, to, (shun) meiden,\* vermeiden,\* aus-weichen\* (with dat. of pers.)  
**await**, to, erwarten  
**awake**, *adj.* **wach**  
**awake**, to, erwachen, wach werden  
**aware**, *adv.* gewahr. to be —, wissen,\* bewußt sein. to become —, gewahr werden,\* erfahren\*  
**away**, *adj.* **weg**, fort. *prefix*, ab-, ent-, fort-, weg-, *verb.* (see Ex. 24)  
**axis**, Achse, f.  
**back**, *adv.* zurück. — again, wieder zurück. to give —, zurück-geben\*  
**back**, s. Rücken, m.

- bad, *adj.*, badly, *adv.* *schlecht*; (evil) böse; (severe) schlimm  
 bald, *adj.* *früh*  
 bank, (com.) *Bank*, *f.* (pl. =en); (shore) *Ufer*, *n.*  
 bard, *Barde*, *m.*; *Sänger*, *m.*  
 basin, *Becken*, *n.*, *Schale*, *f.*  
 basket, *Korb*, *m.*  
 bath, *Bad*, *n.* (pl. =er)  
 bathe, to, *baden*; *sich* *baden*  
 battle, *Schlacht*, *f.* (pl. =en). — field, *Schlachtfeld*, *n.*, *Wahlfeld*, *f.*  
 B.C., vor Christi Geburt (v. Chr.)  
 be, to, *aux. v.* *sein* (§ 38)  
 beak,  *Schnabel*, *m.*  
 bear, *Bär*, *m.* (=en)  
 bear, to, (carry) *tragen* \*; (put up with) *ausstehen* \* *leiden* \*; (keep patience under) *bulden*; (give birth to) *gebären* \* *zur Welt bringen* \*; (witness) *bezeugen*; (a name) *führen*  
 beat, to, *schlagen* \*  
 beautiful, *adj.* *prächtig*, *adv.* *schön*  
 beauty, *Schönheit*, *f.*  
 because, *subordinate conj.* *weil*. — of, *wegen* (with *gen.*)  
 become, to, *werden* \* (see §§ 39 and 53); (best) *geziemen*, *anstehen* \*  
 bed, *Bett*, *n.* (pl. =en). to go to —, *zu Bett* (*schlafen*) *gehen* \*  
 Bedouin, *Beduine*, *m.*  
 bee, *Biene*, *f.*; (dim.) *Bienchen*, *n.*  
 beech, *Buche*, *f.*  
 beef, *Rindfleisch*, *n.*  
 beer, *Bier*, *n.*  
 befall, to, *befallen* \* (with *acc.*) *begegnen*, *widerfahren* (with *dat.*)  
 before, (1) *adv.* (already) *schon*, *bereits*, *voraus*. — long, *nächstens*. (2) *prep.* *vor* (with *acc.* or *dat.*, see § 65). (3) *subord. conj.* *bevor*, *ehe*. the day — yesterday, *vorgestern*  
 beg, to, (alms) *betten*; (a favour) *erbitten* \* — for, *bitten* *um*  
 begin, to, *beginnen* \* *anfangen* \* to — to speak, *das Wort nehmen* \*  
 beginning, *Anfang*; (origin) *Ursprung*, *m.*  
 behave, to, *sich* *benehmen* \* *betragen* \* *thun* \* *sich* *auf-führen*, *handeln*  
 behaviour, *Benahmen*, *n.*, *Betragen*, *n.*  
 behind, (1) *adv.* *hinten*. (2) *prep.* *hinter* (with *acc.* or *dat.*, § 65)  
 belief, *Glaube*, *m.* (=ns)  
 believe, to, *glauben* (with *dat.*). — in, — an (with *acc.*)  
 bell, *Glocke*, *f.*  
 belong, to, *gehören* (with *dat.*)  
 below, *adv.* *unten*; *prep.* *unter* (with *acc.* or *dat.*, see § 65)  
 benefactor, *Wohltäter*, *m.*  
 benefit, (profit) *Gewinn*, *m.*; (utility) *Nutzen*, *m.*; (kindness) *Wohltat*, *f.* (pl. =en)  
 benevolence, *Wohlmollen*, *n.*; (charity) *Wohltätigkeit*, *f.*  
 Berne, *Bern*, *n.*  
 beside, *prep.* *bei* (w. *dat.*, § 64); *neben* (with *acc.* or *dat.*) (except) *außer*  
 besides, *adv.* *zudem*, *überdies*  
 besiege, to, *belagern*  
 besieger, *Belagerer*, *m.*  
 best, *adj.* *der* (*die*, *das*) *beste*; *s.* *das Beste*, *n.*; *adv.* *am besten*  
 bestir, to, (one's self), *sich* *anstrengen*, *sich* *spüren*  
 bestrew, to, *bestreuen*  
 betake, to, (one's self) *sich* *wenden*, *sich* *begeben* (*nach*, *auf*)  
 betray, to, *verrath(en)* \*  
 better, *adj.* and *adv.* *besser*. to like —, *lieber* *haben*; *vor-ziehen* \* (with *dat.*). to think — of it, *sich* *eines Bessern* *besinnen* \* so much the —, *desto besser*  
 between, *betwixt*, *prep.* *zwischen* (with *acc.* or *dat.*, § 65); *unter*  
 beyond, *prep.* *jenseit(s)* (with *gen.*)  
 bid, to, (order) *heißen* \* (with *dat.*); (offer) *bieten* \* to — defiance, *Trost bieten* \* *trozen* (with *dat.*)  
 big, *adj.* *groß*; (fat) *bid*  
 billow, *Woge*, *f.*, *Welle*, *f.*  
 bind, to, *binden* \*  
 bird, *Vogel*, *m.*; (dim.) *Vögelein*, *Vögelchen*, *n.*  
 bit, *Bißchen*, *n.*; (morsel) *Bissen*, *m.*, *Stück*, *n.*  
 bite, to, *beißen* \*  
 bitter, *adj.* *bitter*  
 black, *adj.* *schwarz*; (dark, in colour) *dunkel*; (dark) *finster*. — forest, *Schwarzwald*, *m.*



blame, *Tadel*, *m.*; (responsibility) *Schuld*, *f.*

blame, *to*, *tadeln*

blessed, *adj.* *selig*

blind, *adj.* *blind*

block, *Block*, *m.*

blockhead, *Dummkopf*, *m.*

blood, *Blut*, *n.*; (kindred) *Verwandtschaft*, *f.*, *Gebliit*, *n.*

blue, *adj.* *blau*

blunder, *Irrtum*, *m.*, *grober Fehler*, *m.*

bluster, (boast) *Prahlerei*, *f.*; (roar) *Lösen*, *n.*

boar, *Eber*, *m.*, *wildes Schwein*, *n.*

board, (plank) *Brett*, *n.* *to go on — ship*, *sich ein-schiffen*, *an Bord gehen*, *over —*, *über Bord*; *ins Meer*

boat, *Boot*, *n.* (pl. =e)

body, *Körper*, *m.*, *Leib*, *m.* (pl. =er)

boil, *to*, (1) *intrans.* *sieden*, *kochen*; (2) *trans.* *sieden* \*

bone, *Bein*, *n.* (pl. =e), *Knochen*, *m.*

book, *Buch*, *n.* (pl. "er)

boot, *Stiefel*, *m.*

born, *adj.* *geboren*

both, *adj.* *and s.* *beide*, *beides* (see *Ex. 30*); *both...and...*, *sowohl... als auch...*

bottle, *Flasche*, *f.*

box, *Kiste*, *f.*, *Schachtel*, *f.*; (trunk) *Koffer*, *m.*; (theatre) *Loge*, *f.*; (carriage) *Wag*, *m.*; (on the ear) *Ohrfeige*, *f.*, *Maulschelle*, *f.*

box (tree), *Buchs* (=baum), *m.*

boy, *Knabe*, *m.*, *Junge*, *m.*

bravely, *adv.* *tapfer*, *brav*, *müßig*

brawler, *Zäufler*, *m.*, *Lärmer*, *m.*

bread, *Brot*, *n.*

break, *to*, *brechen* \*; (day) *an-brechen* \* *to — out*, *aus-brechen* \* *los-brechen* \*

breakers, *Brandung* (*f. sing.*)

breath, *Atem*, *m.* *to be short of —*, *einen kurzen Atem haben*

brigand, *Räuber*, *m.*, *Straßenräuber*, *Banbit'*, *m.*

bright, *adj.*, *brightly*, *adv.* *hell*, *glänzend*

bring, *to*, *bringen* \* *to — about*, *zu Stande bringen*. *to — back*, *zurück-bringen* \*

brook, *Bach*, *m.*

broom, *Besen*, *m.*

brother, *Bruder*, *m.*

brutal, *adj.* *thierisch*; (fig.) *roß*; (cruel) *unmenschlich*

build, *to*, *bauen*, *erbauen*

bull, *Stier*, *m.* —'s-eye, *das Schwarze*, *n.*, *Centrumschuß*, *m.*

burden, *Last*, *f.* (pl. =en) *Bürde*, *f.*

burn, *to*, *brennen* \*

bury, *to*, *begraben* \*

business, *Geschäft*, *n.* (pl. =e); *concern* *Sache*, *f.* *that is no — of mine*, *das geht mich nichts an*

busy, *adj.*, *busily*, *adv.* *geschäftig*, *be-schäftigt*; (*industrious*) *emsig*

busy, *to*, *refl.* (one's self) *sich be-schäftigen*

but, *conj.* *aber*, *sondern*, *allein*; (*only*) *nur*. *not only ... but also*, *nicht nur...*, *sondern auch...*; *but for*, *prep* *ohne* (§ 63). *nothing but*, *nichts als*

but, *relat. pron.* (Lat. 'quin') *der nicht* (*with Subj.*)

butcher, *Fleischer*, *m.*, *Mezger*, *m.*

butter, *Butter*, *f.*

buy, *to*, *kaufen*, *ein-kaufen*

by, *prep.* (*beside*) *neben* (*with acc.* or *dat.*); (*near*) *nahe bei* (*with dat.*); (*means of*) *durch* (*with acc.*)

bystander, *Umstehende(r)*, *m.*

bystanding, *adj.* *umstehend*

Cæsar, *Cäsar*

caldron, *s.* *Kessel*, *m.*

calendar, *Kalen'der*, *m.*

calf, *Kalb*, *n.* (pl. "er)

California, *Californien*, *n.*

caliph, *Kaliph'* or *Kalif'*, *m.* (=en)

call, *s.* *Ruf*, *m.*; (*visit*) *Besuch*, *m.*

call, *to*, *rufen* \*; (*by name*) *nennen* \*

*heißen* \*; (*names*) *schelten* \*; (*visit*) *besuchen*; (*for*) *ab-holen*, *fragen nach* (*with dat.*); (*to account*) *zur Re-*

*chenschaft ziehen*, \* *zur Rede stellen*

*calm, adj.*, *calmly, adv.* *stille*; (*quiet-ly*) *ruhig*

camel, *Kamel'*, *n.*

can, *aux. v.* *können* \* (see § 17).

*I cannot but...*, *ich kann nicht umhin ...zu*

candle, *s.* (light) *licht*, *n.*, *Kerze*, *f.*

candlestick, *Leuchter*, *m.*  
 cane, *Stoß*, *n.*; (walking) *Stoß*, *m.*  
 cannibal, *Kannibal'*, *m.*, Menschen-  
 fresser, *m.*  
 cape, *Vorgebirge*, *n.*; *Cap*, *n.*  
 capital (1) (money) *s. Kapital'*,  
*n.* (pl. =ien); (2) (city) *Haupt-*  
*stadt*, *f.*  
 capitol, *Capitol'*, *n.*  
 captain, *Hauptmann*, *m.* (pl. =leute);  
 (navy) *Schiffscapitän'*, *m.*; (cav-  
 alry) *Rittmeister*, *m.*  
 care, (heed) *Acht*, *f.*; (anxiety)  
*Sorge*, *f.* free from —, sorgenlos,  
 to take —, sich in *Acht* nehmen,\* I  
 do not — if I do, meinethalben!  
 careful, *adj.*, carefully, *adv.* sorg-  
 fältig, sorgsam  
 carry, to, tragen\*; (convey) führen;  
 (a point) durchsetzen, to — off  
 (victory), davontragen,\* to — on  
 (continue), fort-führen; (negotia-  
 tions) pflegen\*  
 cash, *Kasse*, *f.*; (money); hard —,  
 haares Geld, *n.* to be in —, bei  
 Geld sein  
 cast, to, (throw) werfen\*; (mould)  
 gießen\*  
 castle, *Schloß*, *n.* (pl. =er), Burg, *f.*  
 (pl. =en)  
 cat, *s. Katze*, *f.*  
 catch, to, fangen\*; (overtake) ein-  
 holen, to — fire, Feuer fangen,\* in  
 Brand gerat(h)en\*  
 cathedral, Dom, *m.*, Domkirche, *f.*,  
*Kathedrale*, *f.*, Münster, *n.* or *m.*  
 cattle, Vieh, *n.* horned —, Horn-  
 vieh, *n.*  
 cauldron, Kessel, *m.*  
 cause, Ursache, *f.*, Grund, *m.*; (con-  
 cern) Sache, *f.*, Angelegenheit, *f.*  
 cause, to, verursachen; (order to be  
 done) lassen\* (see Ex. 18)  
 caution, Behutsamkeit, *f.*  
 cautious, *adj.*, cautiously, *adv.* be-  
 hutsam, vorsichtig  
 celebrate, feiern; (praise) preisen  
 celebrated, *adj.* gefeiert; (famous)  
 berühmte  
 centre, *s. Mittelpunkt*, *m.*, Centrum, *n.*  
 century, Jahrhundert, *n.* (pl. =e)  
 certain, *adj.*, certainly, *adv.* gewiß,  
 sicher; (reliable) zuverlässig

chalk, Kreide, *f.*  
 chance, Zufall, *m.*  
 change, to, ändern; (exchange) wech-  
 seln; (with) umtauschen  
 change, *s.* Veränderung, *f.*; (money)  
 Münze, *f.*, Kleingeld, *n.*  
 channel, Kanal', *m.*, Meerenge, *f.*  
 chapter, Kapitel, *n.*  
 character, Charakter, *m.*; (repute)  
 Ruf, *m.*; (play) Rolle, *f.*; (testi-  
 monial) Zeugnis, *n.*  
 charity, Liebe, *f.*, Menschenliebe, *f.*,  
 Mithätigkeit, *f.*; (alms) Almosen,  
*n.*; sister of —, barmherzige Schwe-  
 ster, *f.*, Diaconissin. — begins at  
 home, Jeder ist sich selbst der Nächste  
 Charlemagne, Karl der Große  
 cheap, *adj.*, cheaply, *adv.* wo(h)lfeil,  
 billig  
 cheer, of good —, gutes Mut(h)es  
 cheese, *s. Käse*, *m.*  
 chemistry, Chemie', *f.*  
 cherry, Kirsche, *f.*  
 chess, Schachspiel, *n.* to play at —,  
 Schach spielen  
 chief, *adj.* (principal) vorzüglichst  
 chief, *s.* Anführer, *m.*; (chieftain)  
 Haupt, *n.*, Häuptling, *m.*  
 child, *s.* Kind, *n.* (pl. =er)  
 Christ, Christus, *m.*  
 Christian, *s.* Christ (pl. =en), *m.* *adj.*  
 christlich  
 church, Kirche, *f.*  
 circle, Kreis, *m.*, Birkel, *m.*  
 circumcision, Umficht, *f.*, Bescham-  
 teit, *f.*  
 citizen, *s.* Bürger, *m.*  
 city, Stadt, *f.* (pl. =e)  
 claim, to, fordern  
 clean, *adj.* rein, sauber  
 clear, *adj.*, clearly, *adv.* klar, hell,  
 licht, rein  
 clever, *adj.* geschickt, klug, gewandt  
 climate, clime, Klima, *n.* (pl. =e),  
 Erdstrich, *m.* (pl. =e)  
 climb, to, klettern. — up, hinaufklet-  
 tern (an)  
 clock, *s.* Uhr, *f.* what o'clock is it?  
 wie viel Uhr ist es?  
 cloth, Tuch, *n.* (pl. =er)  
 clothe, to, an-kleiden  
 clothes, *pl.* Kleidung, *f.*

cloud, Wolke, *f.*  
code, **Codex**, *m.*, Gesetzbuch, *n.*  
cold, *adj.* kalt. I am —, mir ist kalt  
cold, *s.* Kälte, *f.*, Frost, *m.*; (catarrh)  
Erfältung, *f.*, Schnupfen, *m.* to catch  
a —, sich erkälten  
collect, sammeln, ein-sammeln  
college, **Collegium**, *n.* (pl. -ien)  
colony, Kolonie', *f.*  
colour, Farbe, *f.*; (flag) Flagge, *f.*,  
Fahne, *f.*  
column, Säule, *f.*; (print) Spalte, *f.*  
come, kommen \*  
comedy, Komödie, *f.*, Schauspiel, *n.*  
comfortable, *adj.* bequem, bequem.  
to feel —, wol zu Mut sein (*impers.*  
with *dat.* of *pers.*)  
commence, to, an-fangen \*  
communicate, to, mit(h)teilen  
companion, Kamerad'(e), *m.*; (travel-  
ling) Gefährte, *m.*, Begleiter, *m.*  
company, Gesellschaft, *f.*  
compare, to, vergleichen \* compared  
with, gegen (with *acc.*)  
compel, to, zwingen \* nöt(h)igen  
compete, to, (for) sich bewerben \*  
(um), ringen \* (nach)  
complain, to, (at) klagen, sich beklagen,  
sich beschweren (über)  
compliment, Compliment', *n.* my — s  
to (See Ex. 45)  
compose, (put together) zusammen-  
setzen, aus-arbeiten, ab-fassen, ver-  
fassen; (type) setzen; (mus.) com-  
poni(ere)n  
compound, *adj.* zusammengesetzt  
comrade, *s.* Kamerad'(e), *m.*, Ge-  
fährte, *m.*, Genosse, *m.*  
conceal, to, verhehlen, verheimlichen,  
verbergen \*  
concern, (affair) Sache, *f.*, Angelegen-  
heit, *f.*; (business) Geschäft, *n.*  
conclusion, Schluß, *m.*  
condemn, to, verurteil(en), ver-  
dammen  
condition, Lage, *f.*; (rank) Stand, *m.*,  
Rang, *m.*; (stipulation) Bedin-  
gung, *f.*  
conduct, (behaviour) Betragen, *n.*,  
Aufführung, *f.*, Verhalten, *n.*  
confidence, Vertrauen, *n.*; (subjec-  
tive) Zuversicht, *f.*  
confirm, to, bestärken, to be —ed,  
fest-stehen \*

congenial, *adj.* gleichgesinnt, geistesver-  
wandt  
conjugation, Conjugation', *f.*, Abwand-  
lung, *f.*  
conquer, erobern; (overcome) besie-  
gen, überwinden \*  
conscience, Gewissen, *n.*  
conscientious, *adj.*, conscientiously,  
*adv.* gewissenhaft  
conscious, *adj.* bewußt (with *gen.* or  
*acc.*)  
consent, *s.* Einwilligung, *f.*  
consent, to, einwilligen  
consequently, folglich  
consider, to, (deem) betrachten, halten  
(für); (ponder) erwägen; (take in-  
to account) Rücksicht nehmen \* (auf)  
consist, to, bestehen \* (in or aus, with  
*dat.*)  
console, to, trösten. *refl.* sich ver-  
trösten  
conspiracy, Verschwörung, *f.*  
consul, **Consul**, *m.* (pl. -en)  
contempt, *s.* Verachtung, *f.*  
contemptuous, *adj.*, contemptuous-  
ly, *adv.* verächtlich  
content, *adj.* zufrieden  
contention, Streit, *m.* (pl. see §  
70, c)  
continual, *adj.*, continually, *adv.*  
ununterbrochen, immer (*adv.*), an-  
haltend, fortwährend  
continue, to, (1) *intrans.* fort-fahren \*;  
(last) dauern, fort-dauern, (2) *trans.*  
fort-setzen  
contrast, **Contrast**', *m.*, Ab-sich, *m.*  
control, to, bemeistern  
cook, to, kochen, zu-richten  
cook, **Koch**, *m.*, Köchin, *f.*  
cookery, Kochkunst, *f.*, Kochen, *n.*  
cool, *adj.* kühl, frisch  
copy, to, ab-schreiben, \* copiren  
corn, **Korn**, *n.*; (wheat, &c.) Ge-  
treide, *n.*  
correct, *adj.*, correctly, *adv.* richtig  
correct, to, verbessern; (exerc.)  
**corrigi(ere)n**; (punish) strafen  
correspondent, Correspondent', *m.*  
cost, to, kosten, zu stehen kommen \*  
(auf)  
could, *see* can  
countenance, Gesicht, *n.* (pl. -en)  
Wiene, *f.* play of —, Wienespiel, *n.*

country, Land, *n.*; native —, Vater-  
land, *n.*; (district) Gegend, *f.* in  
the —, auf dem Land(e)

courage, Mut(ig), *m.*

course, Lauf, *m.* of —, *adv.* natürlich,  
(has) versteht sich (von selbst)

court, Hof, *m.*

courtier, Höflich, Hofmann, *m.*

cousin, *m.* Better; *f.* Base

cover, to, bedecken, verhüllen

cradle, Wiege, *f.*

crater, Krater, *m.*

create, schaffen, \* erschaffen \*

creature, Wesen, *n.*, Geschöpf, *n.*,

**Creator**, *f.*

crime, Verbrechen, *n.*

criminal, *s.* Verbrecher, *m.*

cross, *s.* Kreuz, *n.* (pl. =e)

cross over, to, über-sehen, über-fahren

crowd, Menge, *f.*, Gedränge, *n.*

crown, Krone, *f.*

cruel, *adj.*, cruelly, *adv.* grausam,  
unmenschlich

cruelty, Grausamkeit, *f.*, Gebränge, *n.*

cry, schreien \*; — out, aus-rufen \*;  
(weep) weinen

culpable, *adj.* sträflich; (guilty)  
schuldig

cultivate, to, (land) bauen, bebauen;

(mind) bilden, aus-bilden

cunning, *adj.* listig, schlau

curdle, gerinnen \*; (fig.) erstarren

curious, *adj.* merkwürdig, seltsam; (in-  
quisitive) neugierig

cut, to, schneiden \*; (how) hauen,\*  
to — off, ab-schneiden \* (with *dat.*)

damage, Schaden, *m.*, Verlust, *m.*

dance, to, tanzen

danger, Gefahr, *f.* (pl. =en)

dangerous, *adj.* gefährlich

dare, to, sich erlauben, es wagen; (defy)  
Trotz bieten \* (with *dat.*); daresay  
(see Ex. 41)

dark, *adj.* dunkel, schwarz, düster; (fig.)  
trübe

date, (time) Datum, *n.*; (fruit)  
Dattel, *f.*

date-tree, Dattelpalme, *f.*

dative, Dativ, *m.*

day, Tag, *m.* (pl. =e). — breaks,  
es tagt. to-day, heute, every day,  
alle Tage. the day before yester-

day, vorgestern. this day week,  
heute über acht Tage. one day,  
eines Tages (Ex. 38, c)

dead, *adj.* to(d)t, leblos. he is a  
— man, er ist des Todes. — calm,  
Windstille, *f.*

deaf, *adj.* taub

deal, to, t(h)eilen, austheilen; (act)  
handeln, verfahren, umgehen, behan-  
deln

deal, a great —, *adv.* viel

dear, *adj.*, dearly, *adv.* theuer, lieb

death, Tod, *m.* (pl. see § 70, c)

deceive to, (cheat) betrügen, \* hinter-  
gehen \*; (tell a lie) belügen \*

December, December, *m.*

declamation, Declami(c)ren, *n.*

decline, to, sich neigen, ab-nehmen \*

decrease, to, ab-nehmen, \* sich ver-  
mindern

deed, That, *f.* (pl. =en), Hand-  
lung, *f.*; (law) Urkunde, *f.*, Docu-  
ment, *n.*

deem, to, (er)achten, halten (für)

deep, *adj.*, deeply, *adv.* tief

defeat, to, schlagen

defect, (imperfection) Mangel, *m.*;  
(fault) Fehler, *m.*

defend, to, verteidigen

defence, Verteidigung, *f.*

deficient, *adj.* mangelhaft. to be —  
in, fehlen, *impers.* (with *dat.* of  
*pers.*) (see Ex. 22, c)

delay, Verzug, *m.*, Verzögerung, *f.*, Auf-  
schub, *m.*

delight, Freude, *f.*, Wonne, *f.*, Ent-  
zücken, *n.*

delightful, *adj.* herrlich, köstlich

delve, graben \*

Demosthenes, Demosthenes

dense, *adj.* dicht; (thick) dick

deny, to, läugnen, in Abrede stellen

depth, Tiefe, *f.*; (abyss) Abgrund, *m.*

deride, to, verlachen, verspotten

descend, herab-kommen \*; (geneal.)  
ab-stammen, stammen (aus)

describe, to, beschreiben, \* dar-stellen,  
schildern

description, Beschreibung, *f.*; (kind)  
Art, *f.*, Gattung, *f.*

descrie, (explore) aus-spähen, ge-  
wahren

de'sert, *s.* Wüste, *f.*, Debe, *f.*

deserve, to, verdienen  
 desk, *Bult*, *n.* (pl. =e)  
 despise, to, verachten; gering schätzen  
 destruction, Zerstörung, *f.*  
 destructive, *adj.* zerstörend, verderblich  
 detect, to, entdecken  
 devil, *Teufel*, *m.*  
 devote, to, (one's self) sich ergeben,\*  
 sich widmen (with *dat.*), befeigen,\*  
 befeigen (with *gen.*)  
 diamond, *Diamant'*, *m.*  
 dictionary, *Wörterbuch*, *n.* (pl. "er)  
 die, to, sterben \*; — away, verschallen  
 different, *adj.* verschieden; ander-er,  
 =e, =es  
 differently, *adv.* (otherwise) anders  
 difficult, *adj.* schwer, schwierig  
 difficulty, Schwierigkeit, *f.*  
 dig, to, graben,\* — up, aus-graben \*  
 dine, to, speisen, zu Mittag essen \*  
 dinner, Mittagessen, *n.*  
 dint, by — of, durch (with *infin.*)  
 disappear, verschwinden,\* sich ver-  
 ziehen \*  
 disciple, (scholar) Schüler, *m.*; (relig.)  
 Jünger, *m.*  
 discontented, *adj.* unzufrieden  
 discover, to, entdecken  
 discretion, Umsicht, *f.*, Klugheit, *f.*;  
 (free choice) Gutdünken, *n.*, Be-  
 liehen, *n.*  
 disease, Krankheit, *f.*  
 disobedient, *adj.* ungehorsam  
 disperse, zerstreuen  
 dispose, (of) verfügen (über)  
 disposed (to), geneigt  
 distance, Entfernung, *f.* at a —, fern,  
 from a —, von weitem  
 distant, *adj.* and *adv.* fern, ent-  
 fernt  
 distasteful, *adj.* widrig, zuwider  
 distinctly, *adv.* deutlich  
 distress, (misery) Elend, *n.*, Noth, *f.*  
 disturb, to, stören  
 diver, Taucher, *m.*  
 divide, to, t(h)eilen; (separate) trennen  
 do, *thun*,\* an-thun, zu-fügen; (make)  
 machen; (perform) verrichten, aus-  
 führen, vollbringen \*; (to behave)  
 sich gebärden; (fare) befinden. to  
 — a favour, einen Gefallen thun. it  
 will do, es geht schon. he is —ing  
 well, es geht ihm gut. how do you

do? wie befinden Sie sich? wie geht  
 es Ihnen?  
 docile, *adj.* gefällig  
 dog, Hund, *m.*  
 dollar (German), Thaler, *m.*; (Ameri-  
 can) Dollar  
 door, *Thür(e)*, *f.* with n —s, zu  
 Hause. out of —s, draußen. in—,  
 drinnen  
 double, *doppelt*. — the price, &c.,  
 das doppelte  
 doubt (of), to, zweifeln (an); *trans.*  
 bezweifeln  
 doubt, *s.* Zweifel, *m.*  
 doubtful, *adj.* zweifelhaft  
 down, *adv.* herab, hinab; herunter, hin-  
 unter; nieder. to go —, hinunter geh-  
 en,\* to come —, herunter kommen.\*  
 to sit —, sich setzen (see § 60).  
 downstairs, *adj.* unten  
 dozen, *Duzend*, *n.* (pl. =e)  
 drachma, *s.* Drachme, *f.*  
 drink, to, *trinken* \*  
 drive, (1) *trans.* *treiben* \*; (horses)  
 führen; (carriage) fahren.\* (2) *s.*  
 Fahrt, *f.*, Spazierfahrt, *f.* to go for  
 a —, aus-fahren \*  
 drop, Tropfen, *m.*  
 drop, to, fallen lassen.\*  
 senken; *fig.* auf-geben \*  
 drum, *s.* Trommel, *f.* to beat the —,  
 trommeln  
 dry, *adj.* trocken  
 duration, Dauer, *f.*, Fortdauer, *f.*  
 during, *prep.* während (see § 66)  
 dust, *s.* Staub, *m.*; (earth) Erde, *f.*  
 duty, Pflicht, *f.* (pl. =en); (obedience)  
 Gehorsam, *m.*; (tax) Steuer, *f.*,  
 Abgabe, *f.*  
 dwarf, *Zwerg*, *m.*

eagle, Adler, *m.*, *Har*, *m.*  
 ear, *Öhr*, *n.* (pl. =en)  
 early, *adj.* and *adv.* früh; (preco-  
 cious) frühzeitig  
 earth, *Erde*, *f.*; (world) Welt, *f.*  
 (pl. =en); (land) Land, *n.* ("er)  
 easily, *adv.* leicht; (quietly) ruhig,  
 still  
 easy, *adj.* (not difficult) leicht;  
 (quiet) ruhig; (comfortable) ge-  
 mächlich, bequem

eat, to, **essen** \*; (devour) fressen \*  
(applied to animals)  
edition, Ausgabe, *f.*; (reprint) Auflage, *f.*  
effect, *s.* Wirkung, *f.*; (result) Erfolg, *m.*  
effect, to, (accomplish) ausführen, leisten; (operate) bewirken; verursachen  
egg, *s.* Ei, *n.* (pl. *-er*)  
Egypt, Ägypten (Egypten), *n.*  
eight, acht  
eighteen, achtzehn  
eighteenth, achtzehnte  
either, *pron.* (one) Einer von beiden.  
*conj.* —or, entweder...oder  
elaborate, to, ausarbeiten, verfertigen  
elder, *adj.* älter; *s.* Älterer, *m.*  
elder (tree), Hülse, *m.*  
elect, wählen (zu) (see Ex. 40);  
(select) auswählen  
eleven, *adj.* elf  
elocution, Kunst des Vortrags; (orat.)  
Beredsamkeit, *f.*  
eloquence, Beredsamkeit, *f.*  
else, *pron.* some one —, ein Anderer.  
*adv.* sonst  
emblem, Sinnbild, *n.* (pl. *-er*)  
embrace, to, umarmen, umfassen  
emerge, to, hervor-gehen \*  
emigrate, to, auswandern  
emperor, Kaiser, *m.*  
empire, Reich, *n.*; (realm) Reich, *n.*  
empty, *adj.* leer  
emulate, to, nach-eifern, nachstreben  
(with *dat.*)  
end, *s.* Ende, *n.* (pl. *-en*); (conclusion) Schluß, *m.* to be at an —, zu Ende sein. his hair stands on —, die Haare stehen \* ihm zu Berge  
end, to, enden, endigen  
endeavour, to, sich bestreben, bemühen, trachten  
endurance, Ausdauer, *f.*  
enemy, Feind, *m.*  
energy, Energie, *f.*, Thakraft, *f.*  
Engadine, Engadin', *n.*  
England, England, *n.*  
English, *adj.* englisch  
Englishman, *pl.* English, Engländer, *m.* Englishwoman, Engländerin, *f.*  
enrapture, to, hin-reißen, \* entzücken  
enter, to, eintreten, \* hinein-gehen \*

entertain, unterhalten, \* bewirten  
enthusiasm, Enthusiasmus, *m.*, Begeistung, *f.*  
envy, to, beneiden  
envy, *s.* Neid, *m.*  
equal, *adj.*, equally, *adv.* gleich  
equal, to, erreichen  
err, to, irren, sich irren  
error, Irrtum, *m.*, Fehler, *m.*  
escape, to, (flee) entinnen, \* entweichen; entkommen \*; (from notice) entgehen, \* — the memory, entfallen \* (with *dat.* of *pers.*)  
escort, *s.* Geleit, *n.*  
escort, to, geleiten, das Geleit geben  
establish, to, gründen  
eternal, *adj.*, eternally, *adv.* ewig  
Etna, Etna or Aetna, *m.*  
Europe, Europa, *n.*  
Eve, *prop.* *n.* Eva  
eve, evening, Abend, *m.*; (day before) Vorabend, *m.*; on the — of, nahe daran, auf dem Punkt  
even, (1) *adj.* (level) eben; (smooth) glatt. odd or —, gerade oder ungerade.  
(2) *adv.* eben; (nay) sogar, selbst. not —, nicht einmal. — now, jetzt  
ever, *adv.* je, jemals; (always) immer, stets; (for —), ewig. — since, schon seit  
everlasting, *adj.* and *adv.* ewig  
every, *adj.* jed-er, -e, -es, everybody, everyone, Jedermann, of — kind, allerlei, everything, Alles.  
everywhere, allenthalben, on — side, von allen Seiten  
evidence, Beweis, *m.*, Zeugnis, *n.*  
evident, *adj.*, evidently, *adv.* augenscheinlich, offenbar  
evil, *adj.* and *adv.* übel, böse, schlimm, schlecht  
evil, *s.* Uebel, *n.*, Böses, *n.*  
examine, prüfen; (search) untersuchen, erforschen; (law) verhören  
excel, überrreffen \*  
excellent, *adj.* and *adv.* vortrefflich; ausgezeichnet  
excite, to, erregen  
excuse, entschuldigen; (justify) rechtfertigen

exercise, (practice) *Übung, f.*; (lesson) *Exercitium, n.* (pl. -tium), *Aufgabe, f.*

exertion, *Anstrengung, f.*

exhibition, (show) *Ausstellung, f.*

expect, to, *ermarten*; *warten (auf)*

expedition, *s.* (enterprise) *Expedition, f.*; (campaign) *Feldzug, m.*

explain, *erklären*

explanation, *Erklärung, f.*; (agreement, *Verständigung, f.*

expression, vivid —, *lebenbige Mienen, Ausdruck, m.*

extend, *sich aus-dehnen, sich erstrecken*

eye, *Auge, n.* (-s; -en); (sight) *Blick, m.*, *Geficht, n.* bull's eye (of a target) *das Schwarze*

fable, *Fabel, f.*

Fabius, *Fabius*

face, *Geficht, n.* (pl. -er), *Angeſicht, n.*; (poet.) *Anſitz, n.*

fade, to, (away) *verbleichen, verblassen*; (grow dim) *bleichen, \* verbbleichen \**

fail, to, *fehlen, mangeln, ermangeln*; (miss) *verfehlen*

failure, (com.) *Banterott, m.*, *Falliment, n.*

fair, *adj.* (beautiful) *ſchön, hübsch*; (reasonable) *bislig, gerecht*; (hair) *blond*

faith, *Glaube, m.* (-ns); (truth) *Treue, f.*

faithful, *adj.*, *faithfully, adv.* (relig.) *gläubig*; (constant) *treu, getreu*

fall, to, *fallen, \** — *asleep, ein-schlafen, to — down, nieder-fallen \**

false, *adj.* *faſch, verfaſcht*

family, *Familie, f.*

fancy, to, *sich denken, \* sich ein-bilden, sich vorstellen*

far, *adj.* *fern, weit, by —, bei Weitem, from..., weit entfernt... zu, not — from, unfern (with *gen.* § 66). — be it from me, fern ſei es von mir. — better, viel beſſer*

farthing, *Seller, m.*

fate, *Schickſal, n.*, *Schickung, f.*, *Gefchid, n.*

father, *Vater, m.*

favour, *Gunft, f.* (see § 70); (act of grace) *Gnade, f.*; (kindness) *Gefallen, m.*, *Gefälligkeit, f.*

favourite, *s.* *Liebſting, m.*, *Günſtling, m.*

favourite, *adj.* *geliebt, begünſtigt*; — *dish, Liebſtingsgericht, n.*

fear, *s.* *Furcht, f.*; (anxiety) *Beſorgniß, f.*

feat, *That, f.* (pl. -en)

feather, *Feder, f.*

February, *Februar, m.*

feel, to, *föhlen*; (sensation) *empfinden*

ferry, *üb'er-fahren, \** *üb'er-ſetzen*

ferryman, *Fährmann, m.*

fertility, *Fruchtbarkeit, f.*

fetch, to, *holen*. — up, *herauf-holen*

fetter, to, *feſſeln*

few, *adj.* *wenig(e)*; a few, *einige*

fickle, *adj.* *wandelumt(h)ig, ſtatterhaft*

ſidelity, *Treue, f.*

fifteen, *ſünfzehn*

fight, (1) *intrans.* *ſechten, \** *kämpfen.*

(2) *trans.* *be-kämpfen*

final, *adj.*, *finally, adv.* *enblich, zuletzt*

find, *finden, \** to — out, *aussfindig machen, to — fault with, tadeln, aus-ſetzen*

fine, *adj.* *ſein*; (handsome) *ſchön*

finger, *Finger, m.*

finish, to, *beendigen, vollenden*

fire, *Feuer, n.*; (conflagration)

*Brand, m.*, *Feuersbrunst, f.* to be on —, *brennen, \** to set on —, in *Brand ſetzen, to catch —, in Brand geraten \**

fire, to, *ab-feuern, loß-ſchießen \**

first, (1) *adj.* *erſt'er, -e, -es.* (2) *adv.* *erſtens, eher.* at —, *zuerſt, anfangs, anfänglich*

fish, *Fiſch, m.*

fishing, *Fiſcherei, f.*

fishing-rod, *Angelruthe, f.*

fishing-tackle, *Fiſch(er)geräth, n.*

fit, *adj.* (qualified) *dienlich, tauglich, ſähig.* it is not —, *es ſchickt ſich nicht, to be — for, taugen (zu)*

fit, to, (1) *trans.* *ein-richten, aus-rüſten.* (2) *intrans.* (see Ex. 39)

five, *ſünf*

flat, *adj.* *ſtach*; (level) *eben*; (insipid) *geſchmacklos, ſchal*

flatter, to, *ſchmeicheln (with dat.)*

flatterer, *s.* *Schmeichler, m.*

flavour, Wohlgeschmack, *m.*  
 flee, to, **fliehen** \*  
 fleet, **Flotte**, *f.*  
 flesh, **Fleisch**, *n.*  
 flight, **Flucht**, *f.* to put to —, in  
 die Flucht schlagen  
 flow, fließen, \* rimmen \*  
 flower, Blume, *f.*; (of age) Blüte,  
*f.*; (ornament) Bierde, *f.*  
 fly, **fliegen** \*; (hurry) eilen; (es-  
 cape) entfliehen, \* to — into a  
 passion, in Bohn (Wuth) geraten \*  
 fog, Nebel, *m.*  
 foggy, *adj.* nebelig  
 fond, *adj.* liebend, zärtlich. to be —  
 of, gern haben \* (lesen, &c.)  
 fool, Thor, *m.*, Narr, *m.* (pl. =en)  
 foot, **Fuß**, *m.* on —, zu Fuß(e)  
 footprint, Fußstapfe, *f.*  
 for, (1) *prep.* with *acc.* (§ 63) **für**,  
 um; (during) während. — a long  
 time, lange. — all that, trotzdem.  
 too...for me to..., zu...als daß...  
 (Ex. 7). as — me, was mich be-  
 trifft. but —, ohne.  
 (2) *conj.* (because) denn (§ 67)  
 forbid, to, **verbieten**, \* untersagen  
 (with *dat.*)  
 force, *s.* Kraft, *f.* (pl. "e), Gewalt, *f.*;  
 (power) Macht, *f.*  
 ford, **Furt**, *f.*; ford, to, durchwaten  
 forefathers, Ahnen, *m.*, Vorfahren, *m.*  
 foreign, *adj.* fremd, auswärtig, aus-  
 ländisch  
 forest, *s.* Wald, *m.* (pl. "er), Forst, *m.*  
 (pl. =en)  
 forget, to, vergessen \*  
 fort, **Fort**, *n.*  
 forth, *adv.* vorwärts, hervor. to put  
 —, hervorbringen. and so —, und  
 so weiter (fort)  
 fortnight, *s.* vierzehn Tage. to day  
 —, heute über —  
 fortnightly, *adv.* alle vierzehn Tage  
 fortress, Festung, *f.*  
 fortune, Glück, *n.*; (fate) Schicksal, *n.*,  
 Geschid, *n.*; (property) Vermö-  
 gen, *n.*  
 forty, *adj.* vierzig  
 found, to, gründen, stiften  
 four, vier  
 fourteen, vierzehn

fourth, *adj.* vierte  
 fowl, **Vogel**, *m.* (collect.) Geflügel,  
*n.*; (hen) Huhn, *n.*  
 Fowler, **Vogler**, *m.*, Vogelfeiler, *m.*  
 fox, *s.* Fuchs, *m.* (pl. "e)  
 fraction, Bruch, *m.*  
 fractional number, Bruchzahl, *f.*  
 France, **Franreich**, *n.*  
 fraud, *s.* Betrug, *m.* (pl. see § 70, c)  
 Frederick, **Fried(e)rich**  
 free, *adj.* and *adv.* frei  
 freedom, **Freiheit**, *f.*; (of a city)  
 Bürgerrecht, *n.*  
 freeze, **frieren**, \* gefrieren  
 French, *adj.* französisch; *s.* (language)  
 das Französische  
 Frenchman, *pl.* French, **Franzose**,  
 (=n)  
 frequent, *adj.*, frequently, *adv.*  
 häufig  
 frequent, to, besuchen  
 fresh, *adj.* and *adv.* frisch; (not  
 briny) süß; (weather) kühl  
 friend, **Freund**, *m.*  
 friendly, *adj.* and *adv.* freundlich,  
 freundschaftlich  
 friendship, Freundschaft, *f.*  
 fright, *s.* Schrecken, *m.*; (person)  
 Schenkel, *n.*  
 frighten, to, erschrecken  
 frightened, to be, erschrecken \*  
 frog, **Frosch**, *m.*  
 from, *prep.* (with *dat.*) von (see Exs.  
 39, 40). to take —, nehmen (with  
*dat.*) (see Ex. 39)  
 frugal, *adj.* genügsam, mäßig  
 fruit, **Frucht**, *f.* (pl. "e); (of trees)  
 Obst, *n.* (no plural)  
 fulfil, to, erfüllen  
 full, *adj.* voll (see p. 174, 4)  
 fully, **völlig**, vollständig  
 fun, Scherz, *m.*, Spaß, *m.* in —,  
 zum Spaß  
 future, *s.* Zukunft, *f.*, *adj.* künftige, zu-  
 künftig

galaxy, *lit.* Milchstraße, *f.*; *fig.* glän-  
 zende Versammlung, *f.*  
 gale, frischer Wind, *m.*, Sturm, *m.*  
 galling, *adj.* kränkend  
 gamble, to, spielen



gambler, *Spieler*, *m.*  
 game, *Spiel*, *n.* (pl. =e)  
 garrison, *Garnison*, *f.*  
 gate, *Thor*, *n.* (pl. =e), *Pforte*, *f.*  
 gather, to, *sammeln*, *zusammen-lesen* \*  
 general, *adj.* *allgemein*  
 general, *s.* *General*, *m.* (pl. "e),  
*Feldherr*, *m.*  
 genius, *Genie*, *n.*  
 gentle, *adj.* (well born) *vornehm*;  
 (meek) *mild*, *fromm*, *sant*; (tame)  
*zähm*  
 gentle, to, (Shaksp.) *adeln*  
 gentleman, *Herr*, *m.*; (nobleman)  
*Edelmann*; (position) *Mann von*  
*Stand*, *m.*; (breeding) *gebildeter*  
*Mann*, *m.*; (pl. in address) *meine*  
*Herrn*!  
 German, *adj.* *deutsch*. old —, *alt-*  
*deutsch*, *germanisch*  
 Germany, *Deutschland*, *n.*  
 get, to, (1) *trans.* (procure) *sich ver-*  
*schaffen*; (receive) *bekommen*, \* *er-*  
*halten*, \* to — (with a verb in  
*Past. Part.*), *lassen* (see Ex. 18).  
 (2) *intrans.* to — *up*, *auf-steigen* \*  
 gift, *Gabe*, *f.*, *Geschenk*, *n.* (pl. =e),  
*Talent*, *n.* (pl. =e)  
 give, to, *geben*, \* to — *battle*, *eine*  
*Schlacht liefern*. to — *chase*, *Jagd*  
*machen*. to — *notice*, (an) *kündigen*.  
 to — *thanks*, *Dank* *sagen*. to —  
*up*, *auf-geben*, \* *verzichten* (auf). to  
 — *over*, *aufhören*  
 given to, *ergeben* (with *dat.*)  
 glad, *adj.* *fröh*. I am —, *es freut mich*  
*glance*, *Blick*, *m.*  
 glass, *Glas*, *n.* (pl. "er)  
 glorious, *adj.* *herrlich*, *berühmt*;  
 (crowned with glory) *glorreich*  
 glow, to, *glühen*  
 go, to, *intrans.* *gehen* \*; (depart)  
*fort-gehen*, \* *weg-gehen*, \* to be going  
 to, *im Begriff sein*, *eben wollen*, \* to  
 — *away*, *fort-(weg)gehen*, \* to —  
*back*, *zurück-gehen*, \* to — *out*, (1,  
*walk*), (2, *become extinct*) *er-*  
*löschen*, \* *aus-gehen*, \* to — *up*, *hin-*  
*auf-steigen*, \* *in die Höhe geh(e)n* \*  
 God, *Gott*, *m.* (pl. "er)  
 gold, *s.* *Gold*, *n.*; *adj.* *golden*  
 good, *adj.* *gut*

good-for-nothing, *adj.* *nichtsnützig*.  
 — *idler*,  *Faulenzer*, *m.* — *fellow*,  
*Laugenichts*, *m.* (pl. =e)  
 good nature, *Gutmütigkeit*, *f.*  
 good-natured, *adj.*, *good-naturedly*,  
*adv.* *gutmütig*  
 govern, to, *regi(ere)n*, *lenken*  
 governor, *Landvogt*, *m.*, *Statthalter*,  
*m.*, *Gouverneur*, *m.*  
 grammar, *Gramma'tik*, *f.* (pl. =en)  
 grape, *Traube*, *f.*  
 grass, *Gras*, *n.* (pl. "er)  
 grateful, *adj.* *danfbar*  
 grave, *s.* *Grab*, *n.* (pl. "er)  
 gray, *adj.* *grau*  
 great, *adj.* *groß*  
 greatly, *adj.* *sehr*  
 Greece, *Griechenland*, *n.*  
 Greek, *adj.* *griechisch*  
 green, *adj.* *grün*  
 Gregory, *Gregor*  
 Gregorian, *adj.* *gregorianisch*  
 groan, to, *ächzen*, *stöhnen*, *seufzen*  
 grope, *tappen*. — *one's way in dark-*  
*ness*, *im Dunkeln herum-tappen*  
 ground, *Grund*, *m.*, *Boden*, *m.*, *Erde*,  
*f.* to keep one's —, *Stand*  
*halten* \*  
 grow, to, (1) *intrans.* *wachsen* \*; (*in-*  
*crease*) *zu-nehmen*, \* *sich vermehren*;  
 (become) *werden*. (2) *trans.* *zie-*  
*hen* \*  
 guard, to, *beschützen*, *verteidigen*, *sich*  
*hüten*, *sich schützen*  
 guard, *s.* *Wache*, *f.* to be on one's  
 —, *auf der Hut sein*  
 guardian, *Vormund*, *m.*, *pl.* *Vormün-*  
*der*  
 guest, *Gast*, *m.*  
 gun, (firearm) *Gewehr*, *n.*; (cannon)  
*Kanone*, *f.*  
 gunpowder, *Schießpulver*, *n.*  
 hair, *Haar*, *n.* (pl. =e)  
 half, *s.* *Halbte*, *f.*, *adv.* *halb*. —  
 — *past one*, *halb zwei Uhr*. *half a*  
 (see Ex. 30, d)  
 hand, *Hand*, *f.* (pl. "e); — *writing*,  
*Handschrift*, *f.*; (watch) *Zeiger*, *m.*  
 to shake —s with, *die Hand geben*,  
*drücken* (with *dat.*)

handle, berühren, **handhaben**, um-  
gehen \* (mit)

hang, to, (1) *trans.* **hängen**. (2)  
*intrans.* **hängen**.\*

Hannibal, Hannibal  
happen, to, *intrans.* sich ereignen, vor-  
fallen,\* geschehen.\* to — (to some  
one), widerfahren,\* begegnen (with  
*dat.* of pers.)

happiness, Glück, n.; (bliss) Glückselig-  
keit, f.

happy, *adj.* glücklich

hard, *adj.* **hart**; (difficult) schwer;  
(severe) streng. — cash, bares Geld,  
n. — by, nahe bei, dicht an (*see* toil)

hardly, *adv.* (scarcely) kaum

hare, **Hase**, m.

harm, Leid, n., Schaden, m.

harm, to, schaden, zu Leid thun \* (with  
*dat.*)

harvest, Ernte, f.; (season) **Herbst**,  
m.

haste, Eile, f., **Hast**, f. to be in  
great —, große Eile haben

hasten, to, (1) *intrans.* eilen. (2)  
*trans.* beeilen, beschleunigen

hat, **Hut**, m. (pl. "e")

hate, **hassen**

hatred, hate, **Haß**, m.

have, *aux. v.* **haben** \* (§ 37); (pos-  
sess) besitzen.\* to — to, müssen.\*  
— on (wear), anhaben,\* tragen.\*  
— a care, sich in Acht nehmen. to  
— done, auf=hören. to — (get) a  
thing done (*see* lassen, Ex. 18)

hay, Heu, n.

he, *pers. pron.* er. — who, der (je-  
mige) welcher; (whosoever), wer,  
§ 29 (b)

head, Kopf, m. (poet.) **Haupt**, n.  
(pl. "er"); (game, &c.) **Stück**, n.  
at the — of, an der Spitze. over  
— and ears, über Hals und Kopf.  
go a —! voran!

headache, s. Kopfschmerz, n., Kopfschmer-  
zen, m. pl.

health, Gesundheit, f. good —, Wohl-  
befinden, n.

healthy, *adj.* gesund

heap, **Haufen**, m.

hear, to, **hören**; (listen) an=hören,  
zu=hören

heart, **Herz**, n. (§ 14). to learn by —,  
auswendig lernen. to have at —,  
zu Herzen nehmen. to take —, Mut  
fassen. with all my —, von ganzem  
Herzen, herzlich gerne

hearth, **Herd**, m. — and home,  
Haus und Hof

heat, Hitze, f.

heaven, Himmel, m.

heavy, *adj.* schwer

heel, Ferse, f.

height, **Höhe**, f.

heir, Erbe, m.

hell, **Hölle**, f.

help, to, **helfen**,\* bei=stehen \* (with  
*dat.*). I cannot — it, ich kann nichts  
dafür. I cannot — ..., ich kann  
nicht umhin zu...; *refl.* (at table)  
sich bedienen (mit)

help, s. Hilfe, Hilse, f.

hen, **Henne**, f., **Huhn**, n.

her, (1) *pers. pron., acc. or dat.* of

she, sie, ihr. (2) *poss. pron.* **ihr**,

**ihre**, **ihr**

herald, **Herold**, m., Bote, m.

herd, (flock) **Herde**, f.

herdsman, **Hirt(e)**, m.

here, *adv.* **hier**. — and there, **hie**  
und da

hero, Held, m. (=en)

heroic, *adj.* heroisch, heldenmütig

heroism, Heldennut, m.

hers, *poss. pron.* (see § 27-28)

herself, *refl.* selbst, sich selbst (*see* Ex.  
27)

hesitate, zögern, zaudern

high, *adj.* and *adv.* **hoch** (*see* § 19,  
21)

highly, *adv.* **hoch**, **höchlich**, **höchst**

hill, **Hügel**, m.

him, *pers. pron., acc.* **ihn**; to —,  
ihm, zu ihm. —self, *refl. pron.* sich.  
he —self, er selbst (*see* Ex. 45)

hind, **Hirshuh**, f., **Hindin**; (boor)  
Bauerntnecht, m.

his, (1) *poss. adj.* sein, seine, sein. (2)  
*poss. pron.* der (die, das) seinige, or  
seine (§ 27-28)

hiss, to, (1) *intrans.* zischen. (2)  
*trans.* aus=pfeifen

historian, Geschichtsschreiber, m.

historical, *adj.* historisch, geschichtlich

history, Geschichte, *f.*  
hit, to, treffen \*  
hither, *adv.* **hierher**, *hierhin*. — and  
thither, *hierhin* und *dorthin*, *hin* und  
*her*  
hitherto, *adv.* (time) **bis jetzt**, *bis* *her*  
hobby (horse), **Stadtpferd**, *n.*  
hole, **Loch**, *n.* (pl. "er); (cave)  
**Höhle**, *f.*  
holiday, **Feiertag**, *m.*, (pl.) **Ferien**  
hollow, *adj.* **hohl**  
holy, *adj.* **heilig**  
homage, **Eulbigung**, *f.*  
home, (house) **Hauss**, *n.*; (country)  
**Waterland**, *n.*, **Heimath**, *f.* at —,  
zu **Haufe**, *adj.* and *adv.* **heimisch**.  
to go —, nach **Haufe** **gehen**, **heim-**  
**gehen** \*  
Homer, **Somer**  
honey, **Honig**, *m.*  
honour, **Ehre**, *f.*; (dignity) **Würde**, *f.*,  
**Ruf**, *m.*  
hope, *s.* **hoffnung**, *f.*  
hope, to, **hoffen**; (trust) **vertrauen**  
(see also Ex. 49, p. 179)  
horizon, **Gefichtskreis**, *m.*, **Horiz-**  
**ont**, *m.*  
horse, **Pferd**, *n.*, **Roß**, *n.* (pl. "e);  
(coll.) **Weiterei**, *f.*; on — **back**, zu  
**Pferde**  
host, **Gastfreund**, *m.*  
hostage, **Geisfel**, *m.*  
hot, *adj.* **heiß**; (ardent) **hitig**  
hour, **Stunde**, *f.*  
house, **Hauss**, *n.* (pl. "er)  
how, *adv.* **wie**; (why?) **warum**?  
however, *adv.* **doch**, **dennoch**, **wie** **dem**  
**auch** **sei**, **wie** **auch**, **so** **sehr** **auch**; (at  
least) **inbessen**  
human, *adj.* **menfchlich**  
hundred, *adj.* **hundert** (pl. "e). —  
fold, *adj.* **hundertfältig**  
hunger, **Hunger**, *m.*  
hungry, *adj.* **hungrig**. I am —, es  
**hungert** **miß** (Ex. 22)  
hunt, to, **jagen**; (pursue) **verfolgen**  
hunter, **Jäger**, *m.*  
hurl, to, **fehleudern**  
hurt, to, (1) *intrans.* **fehmerzen**, **weh(e)**  
**thun**. \* (2) *trans.* **fehaden**, **fehädigen**,  
**befeidigen**  
hussar, **Hufar**, *m.* ("en)

hypocrisy, **Heuchelei**, *f.*; (relig.)  
**Eheheiligkeit**, *f.*  
hypocrite, **Heuchler**, *m.*; **Eheheili-**  
**ger**, *m.*  
I, *pers. pron.* **ich**  
idea, **Idee**, *f.*, **Gedante**, *m.*, **Be-**  
**griff**, *m.*  
idle, *adj.* **träge**, **faul**; (useless) **un-**  
**nütz**, **fruchtlos**; (vain) **eitel**  
idleness, **Müßiggang**, *m.*, **Faulheit**, *f.*,  
**Trägheit**, *f.*  
idler, **Faulenzer**, *m.*, **Müßiggänger**, *m.*  
if, *subord. conj.* **wenn**, **falls**; (whether)  
**ob**, **as** —, **als** **wenn** (**ob**). — **not**,  
**wo** **nicht**  
ignorant, *adj.* **unwissend**  
ill, *adj.* and *adv.* (**bad**) **fehlecht**; (**evil**)  
**übel**; (**sick**) **krank**. to ill-treat,  
**mißhandeln**  
illness, **Krankheit**, *f.*  
image, **Bild**, *n.* (pl. "er)  
imagine, **feh** **vor-ftellen**, **feh** **ein-bilden**,  
**feh** **denken**; (**devise**) **erfinden**, \* **er-**  
**denken** \*  
imitate, to, nach-**ahmen** (with *dat.*)  
immediately, *adv.* **foogleich**, **fofort**;  
(after) **gleich** **darauf**; (**instantly**)  
**augenblicklich**  
impetuous, *adj.* **reißend**; **ungeftüm**,  
**heftig**  
impossible, *adj.* **unmöglich**  
impostor, **Betrüger**, *m.*  
in, *prep.* in (with *acc.* or *dat.*,  
§ 53). *adv.* **darin**, **herein**, **hinein**  
inattentive, *adj.* **unaufmerkfam**  
incensed (at), *adj.* **aufgebracht** (**über**)  
incessantly, *adv.* **unaufhörlieh**, **unabläß-**  
**feh**  
inclined, to be, **aufgelegt**, **geneigt**, **fein**  
inconsiderate, *adj.* **unüberlegt**, **unbe-**  
**dahtfam**  
increase, to, (1) *intrans.* zu-**nehmen**, \*  
**wachfen**, **feh** **vermehrten**. (2) *trans.*  
**vermehrten**, **vergrößern**  
indebted, *adj.* **fehuldig**, **verbunden**. to  
be —, es **verbanfen** (with *dat.* of  
*pers.*)  
independence, **Unabhängigkeit**, *f.*, **Frei-**  
**heit**, *f.* wars of —, **Freiheits-**  
**kriege**  
indignant, *adj.* **unwillig**, **ungehalten**  
indoors, *adv.* **brinnen**  
infinitive, (mood) **Infinitiv**, *m.*

informant, *Anfläger*, *m.*  
 inhuman, *adj.* unmenschlich  
 ink, *Tinte*, *f.*  
 ink-bottle, *Tintenfaß*, *n.*  
 inkstand, *Schreibzeug*, *n.*  
 innocence, *Unschuld*, *f.*  
 innocent, *adj.* and *adv.* unschuldig  
 inquire, to, *sich erkundigen* (nach)  
 insect, *Insect'*, *n.* (pl. =en)  
 inside, *prep.* innerhalb (with *gen.*, § 68)  
 insist, to, *bestehen*, \* *beharren* (auf)  
 insolence, *Anmaßung*, *f.*, *Frechheit*, *f.*  
 inspire, (with) *einflößen* (with *dat.* of *pers.*)  
 instead of, *prep.* (an) *statt* zu  
 intend, to, *vor-haben*, \* *sich vor-nehmen*, \* *beabsichtigen*, im Sinne haben  
 intention, *Absicht*, *f.*, *Vorhaben*, *n.*  
 intercourse, *Umgang*, *m.*, *Verkehr*, *m.*  
 interest, to, *interessiren*  
 interesting, *adj.* interessant  
 into, *prep.* in (with *acc.*, see § 65)  
 introduce, *ein-fließen*; (a friend) *vorstellen*  
 invader, *Angreifer*, *m.*, *Eindringling*, *m.*  
 invent, to, *erfinden*, \* *erfinden* \*  
 invention, *Erfindung*, *f.*  
 invest, (money) *an-legen*  
 invite, to, *ein-laden* \*  
 invoke, to, *an-rufen* \*  
 iron, *Eisen*, *n.*  
 Isæus, *Isäus*  
 island, *Insel*, *f.*, *Eiland*, *n.*  
 isle, *Insel*, *f.*, *Inselchen*, *n.*  
 isosceles, *adj.* gleichschenkelig  
 Israelite, *Israelit'*, *m.*  
 it, *pron.* es (Exs. 20, 22). it, governed by a *prep.*, see § 25 (7, b)  
 Italian, *adj.* italienisch; *s.* Italiener  
 Italy, *Italien*, *n.*

jacket, *Jacke*, *f.*  
 January, *Januar*, *m.*  
 jest, *Scherz*, *m.*, *Spaß*, *m.* (pl. =e)  
 jest, to, *scherzen*, *späßen*  
 Jew, *Jude*, *m.*  
 joke, *s.* *Scherz*, *m.*, *Spaß*, *m.*  
 joke, to, *scherzen*, *späßen*  
 joy, *Freude*, *f.* to wish —, *Glück wünschen*

judge, *Richter*, *m.*; (of art, &c.) *Kenner*, *m.*  
 judgment, (law) *Urtheil*, *n.*; (reason) *Bernunft*, *f.*  
 Julian, *adj.* julianisch  
 July, *Juli*, *m.*  
 jump, to, *springen* \*  
 June, *Juni*, *m.*  
 Jura (mountains), *Jura*, *m.*, *Jura Gebirge*, *n.*  
 jurist, *s.* *Jurist'*, *m.*, *Rechtsgelehrter*, *m.*  
 just, *adj.*, justly, *adv.*, gerecht, billig; (correct) richtig. *adv.* eben; (exactly) genau. — as well, eben so gut, but —, just now, so eben, gerade jetzt  
 keep, to, *behalten*, \* *auf-bewahren*; (word) *halten* \*; (festivals) *feiern*, *beobachten*; (tend) *hüten*, to — one's ground, *Stand halten*, \* — waiting, *warten lassen*, \* to — up, *trans.* *erhalten*, \* *unterhalten* \*  
 key, *Schlüssel*, *m.*  
 kill, to, *tö(b)ten*  
 kind, *s.* (race) *Gattung*, *f.*, *Geschlecht*, *n.*; (sort) *Art*, *f.*; what — of? was für? all —s of, allerlei  
 kind, *adj.* and *adv.* gültig, freundlich  
 kindness, *Gültigkeit*, *f.*, *Freundlichkeit*, *f.*; (favour) *Gefallen*, *m.* or *n.*, *Gesälligkeit*, *f.*  
 king, *König*, *m.*  
 kingdom, *Königreich*, *n.*, *Reich*, *n.*  
 kitchen, *Küche*, *f.*  
 knife, *Messer*, *n.*  
 knock, to, *klopfen*  
 know, to, (savoir) *wissen* \*; (connaître) *tennen* \*; (recognise) *erkennen* \*; (a language, &c.) *können* \* (see Ex. 17)  
 knowledge, *Kenntniß*, *f.*, *Wissen*, *n.*; (learning) *Wissenschaft*, *f.* to my —, so viel ich weiß  
 known, *adj.* bekannt  
 Koran, *Koran*, *m.*  
 laboriously, *adv.* mühsam, mühevoll  
 labour, *Arbeit*, *f.* (pl. =en)  
 labourer, *Arbeiter*, *m.*  
 lad, *Junge*, *m.*, *Knabe*, *m.*  
 ladder, *Leiter*, *f.*

lady, Dame, *f.*; (of a house) Herrin,  
*f.* my —! gnädige Frau!  
lake, See, *m.* (pl. =n)  
lamb, Lamm, *n.* (pl. "er)  
lame, *adj.* lah'm  
lament, to, *intrans.* klagen, wehklagen,  
jam'mern  
lamp, Lampe, *f.*  
land, Land, *n.* (pl. "er or =e) (soil)  
Boden; (estates) Ländereien, Land-  
güter, by —, zu Land(e)  
landlord, Gutsbesitzer, *m.*; (innkeeper)  
Gastwirt, *m.*; (of a house) Haus-  
wirt, *m.*  
language, Sprache, *f.*, Zunge, *f.*  
large, *adj.* groß  
last, *adj.* lezt (=er, =e, =es); (past)  
vorig, vergangen, verfloßen, the —  
but one, der vorlezte. — of all,  
zu allerlezt, *adv.* zuletzt; at —, end-  
lich  
late, *adj.* spät; (deceased) verstorben,  
selig  
latitude, (geograph.) Breite, *f.*  
latter, *adj.* lezt, lezter (see § 21)  
laugh, to, lachen. — (at), lachen  
(über), auf-lachen  
laughing-stock, Spott, *m.*, Stich-  
blatt, *n.*  
lava, Lava, *f.*  
lavish, to, (fig.) schenken  
lead, Blei, *n.*  
lead, to, führen, leiten  
leader, Führer, *m.*; (newspaper)  
Zeitartitel, *m.*  
leaf, Blatt, *n.* (pl. "er)  
leaves, (collective), Laub, *n.*  
leap, to, springen,\* hüpfen  
leap-year, Schaltjahr, *n.*  
learn, to, lernen  
least, *adj.* kleinste, geringste, minde-  
ste. — of all, am wenigsten  
leather, Leder, *n.*  
leave, (adieu) Abschied, to take —,  
Abschied nehmen,\* sich empfehlen\*  
(with *dat.*)  
leave, to, lassen; (a place) verlassen.  
— for, abreisen, verreisen (nach)  
lecture, to, Vorlesungen halten \*  
left, *adj.* linf  
leg, Bein, *n.* (pl. =e)

lend, to, leihen.\* to — an ear,  
Gehör geben \*  
less, *adj.* and *adv.* weniger  
lesson, Section, *f.*, Stunde, *f.*;  
(task) Aufgabe, *f.*  
lest, *subord. conj.* daß...nicht, damit...  
nicht  
let, lassen; \* (a house, &c.) ver-  
mieten; (allow) gestatten, zulassen.  
to — down, herab-lassen \*  
letter, (alph.) Buchstabe, *m.*; (typ.)  
Letter, *f.*, Schrift, *f.*; (epistle)  
Brief, *m.*  
liberal, *adj.* freigebig; (minded) frei-  
sinnig; (pol.) liberal'  
liberality, Freigebigkeit, *f.*  
liberty, Freiheit, *f.*  
librarian, Bibliothekar, *m.*  
library, Bibliothek, *f.* (pl. =en)  
lie, s. Lüge, *f.*; lie, to, lügen \*  
lie, to, (down) liegen \*  
life, Leben, *n.* in my whole —, mein  
Lebtag  
light, Licht, *n.*; (enlightenment)  
Aufklärung, *f.*  
light, *adj.*, lightly, *adv.* leicht  
lighten, to, blitzen  
lightning, Blitz, *m.* (pl. =e)  
like, *adj.* gleich; (resemblance)  
ähnlich, to be —, gleichen\* (with  
*dat.*); (resemble) ähnlich sehen,  
ähn:in  
like, to, gern haben, mögen\*; (love)  
lieben; (be pleased with) Gefallen  
finden an (with *dat.*); I should  
like to, ich möchte gern; (a place)  
gefällt mir; how do you like —?  
wie gefällt es dir in —? (see Ex.  
17, e)  
likewise, *adv.* ebenfalls  
lily, Lilie, *f.*  
limb, Glied, *n.* (pl. =er)  
limit, Grenze, *f.*, Schranke, *f.*  
lion, Löwe, *m.*; (sight) Sehenswür-  
digkeit, *f.*  
listen, to, zu-hören, hören; (obey)  
gehören (with *dat.*)  
little, *adj.* (small) klein; (short) kurz;  
(quantity) wenig, *adv.* wenig; a  
—, ein wenig; — by —, nach und nach  
live, to leben; (dwell) wohnen,  
to — with ..., wohnen bei ...;

(frequent) um-gehen \* mit. to — to see, erleben  
 living, *adj.* lebend'ig  
 load, to, **laden**,\* beladen; (overwhelm) überhäufen  
 lodging, *Wohnung*, *f.*, *Logis*, *n.* night's —, Nachtlager, *n.*  
 lonely, *adj.* einsam  
 long, *adj.* lang; (slow) langsam, *adv.* lange. a — way off, weit weg. — ago, vor langer Zeit. ere — bald, nächstens  
 long, to, (for) sich sehnen (nach) (see also Ex. 22)  
 look, to, (1) *trans.* sehen,\* blicken, schauen; — for, suchen, erwarten; — at, an-sehen,\* (2) *intrans.* (seem) aus-sehen; (face) nach...gelegen sein. to — at, an-blicken, an-sehen,\* to — out (of), hinaus-schauen (zu, with *dat.*). to — up to, hinauf-sehen\* (zu), an-sehen\*  
 looking-glass, Spiegel, *m.*  
 lord, Herr, *m.* (*n.*, *pl.* = *n.*)  
 lose, to, **verlieren**,\* — one's way, sich verirren. to be lost, sich verirren, verloren gehen. to — sight of, aus dem Gesicht verlieren  
 loss, Verlust, *m.*  
 lotus, Lotus (baum), *m.*  
 loud, *adv.* and *adj.* laut  
 love, to, **lieben**, gern haben  
 love, *s.* Liebe; (courtship) Liebschaft, *f.* to be in — with, verliebt sein in. for the — of ..., um ...willen. my — to, ich lasse ihn herzlich grüßen  
 low, *adj.* and *adv.* niedrig  
 lurch, to leave in the —, im Stiche lassen \*

mail, (armour) Panzer, *m.*, Rüstung, *f.*; (post) Briefpost, Post, *f.*  
 mail-train, Kurierzug, *m.*  
 maintain, to, behaupten  
 make, to, **machen**, thun, verfertigen  
 malicious, *adj.* böshaft  
 man, (male) Mann, *m.* (*pl.* "er"); *pl.* men, Soldaten, Leute, &c.; (mankind) irrespective of sex, Mensch (en), *m.*  
 mankind, (human race) menschliches Geschlecht, *n.*, die Menschen, *m.*

manner, Art, *f.*, Weise, *f.*; (custom) Sitte, *f.*  
 manufactory, Fabrik, *f.*, Manufaktur, *f.* (*pl.* = *n.*). — of arms, Waffen-fabrik, *f.*  
 many, *adj.* viele. — a one, **mancher**. — a time, vielmal, manchmal  
 mark, Zeichen, *n.*, Kennzeichen, *n.*; (proof) Beweis, *m.*; (object) Ziel, *n.*; (money) = 1 shilling)  
**Mart**, *f.*  
 master, Meister, *m.*, Herr, *m.*; (possessor) Besitzer, *m.*; (school-) Schulmeister, *m.*; (teacher) Lehrer, *m.* to be — of a language, einer Sprache mächtig sein. to make one's self — of, sich bemächtigen, bemätern, (with *gen.*) bewältigen  
 masterpiece, Meisterstück, *n.* (*pl.* = *e.*), Meisterwerk, *n.* (*pl.* = *e.*)  
 matter, Materie, *f.*, Stoff, *m.* what is the —? was giebt's? what is the — with...? was feßt... (with *dat.*)? no —! es thut nichts! to the —, zur Sache. — of fact, That-sache, *f.*  
 may, (month) Mai, *m.*  
 may, *aux. v.* mögen\*; (be able) können\*; (be allowed) dürfen (Ex. 17, e and f). — be, vielleicht. if I — ask, wenn ich bitten (fragen) darf  
 me, *acc.* of I (see § 24)  
 mean, *adj.* gemein. — while, in the — time, mittlerweile, unterdessen. by this —s, dadurch  
 mean, to, **meinen**, sagen, bedeuten; (intend) wollen,\* beabsichtigen  
 measure, Maß, *n.*  
 medal, Denkmünze, *f.*, Medaille, *f.*  
 medical, *adj.* ärztlich. — man, ärztlicher Ratgeber, Arzt  
 medicine, Medicin, *f.*, Arz(e)nei, *f.*  
 meditation, Betrachtung, *f.*, Nachdenken, *n.*  
 meet, to, treffen,\* zusammen-treffen, an-treffen, begegnen (with *dat.*). to go to —, entgegen-gehen\* (with *dat.*)  
 melt (smelt), to, *intrans.* schmelzen,\* einschmelzen; (into tears) zerfließen. *trans.* schmelzen (*p.* 68)

member, *Glief*, *n.* (pl. *-er*)  
 memory, *Gedächtnis*, *n.*; (recollection) *Erinnerung*, *f.*; (memorial) *Audenken*, *n.* to escape the —, dem *Gedächtnis* entfallen.\* within — of man, seit *Menschengebenten*  
 merchant, *Kaufmann*, *m.*, *Handelsmann*, *m.* (pl. see § 12 (b) 2 \*)  
 mercy, (pity) *Barmherzigkeit*, *f.*; (pardon) *Gnade*, *f.*, *Vergebung*, *f.*; (compassion) *Erlösung*, *f.*, *Nach-sicht*; (clemency) *Milde*, *f.* at the —, in der *Gewalt*  
 mere, *adj.*, merely, *adv.*, bloß, allein  
 merit, *s.* *Verdienst*, *n.* (pl. *-e*) (§ 70)  
 merit, to, verdienen  
 messenger, *Bote*, *m.* — of peace, *Friedensbote*, *m.*  
 mid, *adj.* *mitten*  
 middle, *s.* *Mitte*, *f.*, *adj.* *mittlere*  
 middle-ages, *pl.* *Mittelalter*, *n.*, *sing.*  
 might, *s.* *Macht*, *f.*, *Gewalt*, *f.*  
 mighty, *adj.* mächtig, gewaltig  
 milk, *Milch*, *f.*  
 mind, *Gemüt*, *n.*, *Sinn*, *m.*, *Seele*, *f.*; (intention) *Vorhaben*, *n.*; (inclination) *Pust*, *f.*, *Neigung*, *f.*; (opinion) *Meinung*, *f.*, *Gefinnung*, *f.*; (recollection) *Gedächtnis*, *n.*  
 mind, to, merken; (to heed) in *Acht* nehmen,\* *zusprechen*,\* never —, es *thut nichts*  
 mine, *possess. pron.* meine, meinige (§ 27)  
 mine, *s.* *Bergwerk*, *n.*  
 minister, (servant) *Diener*, *m.*; (of state) *Minister*, *m.*; (eccles.) *Geistlicher*, *m.*  
 minster, *Münster*, *m.* or *n.*  
 minute, *Minute*, *f.* this very —, so eben  
 misery, *Elend*, *n.*  
 misfortune, *Unglück*, *n.*  
 mist, *Nebel*, *m.*  
 mistake, *Versehen*, *n.*, *Irrtum*, *m.*, *Fehler*, *m.* to be mistaken, sich *irren*, sich *versehen*\*  
 mock, to, verspotten, verlachen  
 moderate, to, mäßigen  
 money, *Geld*, *n.*  
 monk, *Mönch*, *m.*  
 monkey, *Affe*, *m.*  
 month, *Monat*, *m.* (pl. *-e*)  
 moon, *Mond*, *m.*

more, *adj.* and *adv.* *mehr*. the —, je *mehr*. no —, nicht *mehr*. one —, noch ein. once —, noch einmal. (with *adj.* in compar. see § 21)  
 moreover, *adv.* *überdies*  
 morning, (morn) *Morgen*, *m.*  
 morrow, *s.* *Morgen*, *n.*  
 to-morrow, *adv.* *morgen*. the day after —, *übermorgen*. — morning, *morgen* *früh*  
 mortal, (1) *adj.* *sterblich*; mortally (deadly) *tödtlich*. (2) *s.* *Sterblicher*, *m.*, *Mensch*, *m.*  
 most, *adj.* *meist*  
 mostly, *adv.* *meist*, am *meisten*, *meistens*. at the —, *höchstens*  
 mother, *Mutter*, *f.* (pl. *-n*); — dear (fam.) *Mütterchen*, *n.*  
 motion, *Bewegung*, *f.*; (proposal) *Vorschlag*, *m.*, *Antrag*, *m.* (pl. *-e*). to set in —, in *Bewegung* *setzen*  
 mountain, (mount) *Berg*, *m.*  
 mouse, *Maus*, *f.* (pl. *-e*)  
 move, (1) *trans.* *bewegen*; (affect) *rihren*. (2) *intrans.* sich *bewegen* (*regen*). — one's quarters to, *über-siedeln*  
 much, *adj.* and *adv.* (quantity) *viel*; (degree) *sehr*. as — as, so *viel* *als*. twice as —, noch einmal so *viel*. to make — of, *hoch-schätzen*  
 music, *Musik*, *f.*, *Tonkunst*, *f.*  
 must, *müssen*\* (see Ex. 17)  
 my, *possess. adj.* *mein* (meine, mein)  
 myself, *pron.* *ich* selbst, *miß* (see Ex. 45)  
 naked, *adj.* *nackt*, bloß  
 name, *Name*, *m.* (*-ns*)  
 nasty, *adj.* *unangenehm*, *garstig*  
 nation, *Nation*, *f.*, *Volk*, *n.* (pl. *-en*)  
 native, *adj.* *geboren*, *natürlich*, *ursprünglich*; (innate) *angeboren*. — country, *Waterland*, *n.*, *Heimat*, *f.*, *Heimatsland*, *n.*  
 native, *s.* *Eingeborner*, *m.*  
 natural, *adj.*, naturally, *adv.* *natürlich*. — philosopher, *Naturforscher*, *m.*  
 nature, *Natur*, *f.*; (kind, sort) *Art*, *f.* (pl. *-en*)

**may, adv.** (no) *nein*; (even) *ja*  
**near, adj. and prep.** *nahe* (see § 21),  
 bei (§ 64), *zugegen*  
**nearly, adv.** *beinahe*, *fast*, far and  
 near, *weit und breit*  
**necessity, Not(h), f.**, *Notwendigkeit*,  
*f.*; (poverty) *Armut*, *f.*  
**neck, Hals, m.**; nape of —, *Raden*,  
*m.*  
**need, Not(h), f.**; (want) *Mangel*,  
*m.*; (poverty) *Armut*, *f.*  
**needle, Nadel, f.**  
**negotiation, Unterhandlung, f.**, *Ber-*  
*handlung, f.*  
**neighbour, Nachbar, m.** (pl. =e);  
 (fellow) *Nächste, m.*  
**nephew, Nefte, m.**  
**net, Netz, n.**  
**never, adv.** *nie*, *niemals*, *nimmer*.  
 never so ..., *noch so*; — more, *nie*  
 und *nimmermehr*  
**nevertheless, adv.** *nichtsdestoweniger*  
**new, adj.** *neu*; (fresh) *frisch*  
**news, Neuigkeit, f.**  
**newspaper, Zeitung, f.**, *Blatt, n.*  
**next, adj. and adv.** *nächst*; *adv.* *zu-*  
*nächst*  
**nickname, Spottname, m.**, *Beiname*,  
*Epithame, m.*  
**niece, Nichte, f.**  
**nigh, adj. and adv.** *nahe*, *beinahe*,  
*fast*  
**night, s.** *Nacht, f.* to —, *heute*  
*Abend*, last —, *vergangene Nacht*,  
 at —, in the —, *Nachts*  
**Nile, Nil, m.**  
**nine, neun**  
**no, adv.** *nein*; *adj.* *kein* (*keine*, *kein*,  
 declined like *ein*). — one (man),  
*Niemand*, *Keiner*, =e, =(e)s  
**nobility, Adel, m.**, *Adelstand, m.*;   
 (highmindedness) *Geelenadel, m.*  
**noble, adj.** *edel*, *edelmütig*; (rank)  
*adelig*; (stately) *vornehm*  
**nobleman, Edelmann, m.** noble-  
 woman, *Edelfrau, f.*  
**noise, Lärm, m.**, *Geräusch, n.*; (sensa-  
 tion) *Auffehen, n.*; (rumour) *Ge-*  
*rücht, n.*  
**none, adj.** *kein*=er, =e, =(e)s  
**noon, Mittag, m.**

**nor, conj.** *noch*, *auch nicht*; *neither...*  
*nor*, *weber...noch*  
**north, Norden, m.**; *adj.* *nördlich*, —  
 pole, *Northpol, m.*  
**nose, Nase, f.**  
**not, adj.** *nicht*; — at all, *gar nicht*;  
 — yet, *noch nicht*  
**nothing, adv.** *nichts*. — at all, *doch=*  
*aus nichts*. — but, *nichts anders*  
*als*, for —, *umsonst*, good for —,  
*s. Taugenichts, m.*; *adj.* *nichts=*  
*nutig*  
**novel, Roman, m.**; short — (tale),  
*Novelle, f.*  
**now, adv.** *jetzt, nun*. — and then,  
*dann und wann*. — -adays, *heutzut-*  
*age*, just —, *so eben*, *gerade*, (*eben*)  
*jetzt*  
**nowhere, adv.** *nirgend*s  
**number, Nummer, f.**, *Zahl, f.* (pl.  
 =en); superior —s, *Uebermacht, f.*  
 singular —, *Einzahl, f.*; plural —,  
*Vielerzahl, f.*  
**nurse, to, pflegen**; (cherish) *lieben*  
**nut, Nuss, f.** (pl. "e)  
**oak, Eiche, f.**  
**obedience, Gehorsam, m.**, *Folgiam=*  
*keit, f.*  
**obey, to, gehorchen, folgen (with dat.)**  
**object, Gegenstand, m.**; (*gram.*)  
*Object'*  
**objection, Einwendung, f.**; to have  
 no —, *Nichts dagegen haben*  
**oblige, to, (compel) nüt(h)igen, zwin=**  
**gen\***; (do a favour) *verbinden,\**  
*verpflichten*, to be —d, *müssen\**  
 (see Ex. 16)  
**obstacle, Hindernis, n.**  
**obtain, to, erlangen (see also Ex.**  
 24, b)  
**occasion, (opportunity) Gelegenheit,**  
*f.* on — of, *bei Gelegenheit (Anlass),*  
*m.*, *Beranlassung, f.*  
**occupation, Beschäftigung, f.**  
**occur, to, geschehen,\* erfolgen**; (men-  
 tally) *einfallen\**  
**o'clock, Uhr**; what —? *wie viel Uhr?*  
**of, prep.** *von* (with *dat.*), see Exs. 37,  
 38, and 41  
**off, adv.** *ab*, *davon*, *weg*, *abweg*. a long  
 way —, *weit weg*



offence, Beleidigung, *f.*; (fault) *feh-*  
ler, *m.* to give —, beleidigen. to  
take — at, es übel nehmen  
offend, to, beleidigen  
offer, to, bieten,\* dar-bieten; (pro-  
pose) an-bieten, an-tragen.\* — an  
apology, see apology  
officer, Offizier, *m.* (pl. *se*)  
oil, *Öl*, *n.*  
old, *adj.* alt. — age, Alter, hohes  
Alter, *n.* — man, Greis, *m.*  
on, *prep.* auf (with *acc.* or *dat.*, see  
Ex. 41); (dates) an (with *dat.*).  
— Monday, am Montag. — the  
Maine, am Main. — the way, un-  
terwegs. — the alert, auf der Hut.  
(fig.) — foot, zu Fuß. — horse-  
back, zu Pferd. — the contrary,  
im Gegenteil  
once, *adv.* einmal. — upon a time,  
einst, vormal. at —, sogleich. all  
at —, auf einmal  
one, *adj.* and *adv.* ein, eine, ein.  
any —, irgend Einer. — another,  
einander. all —, einerlei. — eyed,  
*adj.* and *s.* einäugig  
one's self, sich selbst (see Ex. 45)  
only, (1) *adj.* einzig; (2) *adv.* nur, bloß  
opinion, Meinung, *f.*  
opportunity, Gelegenheit, *f.*, Anlaß, *m.*  
orange, Orange, *f.*, Apfelsine, *f.*,  
Pomeran'ze, *f.*  
orator, Redner, *m.*  
oratory, Redekunst, *f.*  
order, Ordnung, *f.*; (command) Be-  
fehl, *m.*; (commission) Auftrag, *m.*,  
Bestellung, *f.*; (rank) Rang, *m.*,  
Stand, *m.* in — to, um zu. in —  
that, um (with *infin.*), damit (with  
*subj.*)  
order, to, befehlen,\* verordnen;  
(goods) bestellen. — to be done,  
lassen\* (Ex. 18)  
origin, Ursprung, *m.*  
other, *adj.* and *pron.* ander-er, *se*,  
(*es*), (pl. *se*). one an —, each —,  
einander, sich. the — day, neulich  
(den andern Tag = the next day)  
otherwise, *adv.* anders  
ought, sollte(n) (see Exs. 15, 16)  
our, *poss. adj.* unser (unser, unser)  
ours, *poss. pron.* der (die, das) unsrige  
(unser)

out, (1) *adv.* aus. — of, hinaus,  
heraus, daraus. (2) *prep.* — of,  
aus (with *dat.*). — of doors, im  
Freien  
outcry, to, überschreren\*  
outside, *prep.* außerhalb (with *gen.*,  
§ 66)  
outer, *adj.* äußere  
over, (1) *prep.* (with *acc.* or *dat.*)  
über. (2) *adv.* vorbei, vorüber.  
— board, über Bord  
overflow, to, überfließen  
overtake, to, einholen  
owe, to, schuldig sein, zu veran-  
kennen (with *dat.* of *pers.*)  
owing, to, *prep.* wegen (with *gen.*)  
owl, Eule, *f.*  
own, *adj.* eigen. my —, das Meinige  
(Meine). his —, das Seine  
owner, Eigentümer, *m.*, Besitzer, *m.*  
ox, Ochs, *m.* (pl. *sen*)  
pack-horse, Packpferd, *n.*  
page, (of a book) Seite, *f.*  
pain, Schmerz, *m.* (see § 14)  
painter, Maler, *m.*  
pair, Paar, *n.* (pl. see Ex. 34\*)  
palace, Palast, *m.* (pl. *se*)  
pale, *adj.* blaß, bleich. to turn —,  
erblassen, erblassen  
palm, Palme, *f.*  
paper, Papier, *n.* news —, Zeitung,  
*f.*, Blatt, *n.*  
paradise, Paradies, *n.*  
pardon, to, (forgive) vergeben,\* ver-  
zeihen\* (with *dat.*); (reprieve)  
begnaden  
pardon, Verzeihung, *f.*; (forgiveness)  
Vergebung, *f.*  
parents, Eltern  
Paris, Paris  
part, *Ant(h)eil*, *m.*; (share) Ant(h)eil,  
*m.* to take — in, teil-nehmen\* (an).  
for my —, was mich betrifft. in —,  
teilweise  
particular, in, *adv.* besonders  
partner, Teilnehmer, *m.*; (business)  
Associé, *m.*  
party, Partei, *f.*  
pass, *intrans.* vorbei-gehen\* (go),  
reisen (travel), fahren (drive),  
reiten (ride). — away, vergehen,\*

- verschwinden.\* — through, durch-  
gehen.\* — over, übergehen.\* —  
by, vorübergehen.\* ziehen.\* — for,  
gelten (für), angesehen werden (als).  
to come to —, vor-fallen,\* ge-  
schen\*
- passage, (crossing) Ueberfahrt, *f.*;  
(book, &c.) Stelle, *f.*; (transition)  
Uebergang, *m.*; (house) Eingang,  
Ausgang, *m.* bird of —, Zug-  
vogel, *m.*
- passion, (affection of mind) Leiden-  
schaft, *f.*; (anger) Zorn, *m.*, Wuth,  
*f.* to be in a —, aufgebracht (böse)  
sein
- past, *adj.* (elapsed) verfloßen, vergan-  
gen. *adv.* (over) vorbei; (gone)  
hin, dahin, half — one, halb zwei,  
a quarter — one, ein Viertel auf  
zwei
- patience, Geduld, *f.*
- patrimony, Erbgut, *n.*, Erbteil, *n.*
- patriotic, *adj.* patriotisch
- pave, to, pflastern
- paw, Pfote, *f.*, Tasse, *f.*
- pay, to, zahlen, bezahlen; (respect, &c.)  
sollen, erweisen,\* erzeigen; (a visit)  
machen, ab-flatten. to — attention  
to, Acht geben auf
- peace, Friede, *m.*
- pear, Birne, *f.*
- pearl, Perle, *f.*
- peasant, Landmann, *m.* (pl. Landleute),  
Bauer, *m.* (pl. -en)
- pebble, Kiesel, *m.*, Kieselstein, *m.*
- peep, to, (at) hinaus-gucken (in, with  
acc.)
- peg, Nagel, *m.*, Pfloß, *m.*
- pen, Feder, *f.*
- penetrate, to, bringen \*
- people, (nation) Volk, *n.*, Nation, *f.*;  
(folk) Leute, *pl.*
- Pepin, *proper n.* Pippin or Pipin  
perfect, *adj.* vollkommen; (skilled)  
geübt, bewandert; (gram.) *adj.* ver-  
gangen, *s.* Perfectum
- perform, to, (execute) verrichten, voll-  
ziehen\*; (dram.) spielen, auf-führen
- perhaps, *adv.* vielleicht, (es) mag sein
- persecute, to, verfolgen
- perseverance, Beharrlichkeit, *f.*
- persevere, to, aus-dauern, beharren
- philosopher, Philosoph', *m.* natu-  
ral —, Naturforscher, *m.*
- Phoenician, Phönizier
- pickle, to, ein-säpfeln, ein-säzen
- picture, Bild, *n.* (pl. -er); (painting)  
Gemälde, *n.*
- picturesque, *adj.*, picturesquely,  
*adv.* malerisch
- piece, Stück, *n.* (pl. -e)
- pilgrim, Pilger, *m.*
- pin, Stecknadel, *f.*
- pistol, Pistole, *f.*
- pity, Mitleid, *n.* it is a —! es ist  
Schade!
- pity, to, bemitleiden, bedauern (see  
§ 54)
- place, Platz, *m.*, Ort, *m.* (pl. see  
p. 96); (room) Raum, *m.*; (po-  
sition) Stelle, *f.* in the — of,  
anstatt (with *gen.* § 66). to take  
—, statt-finden\*
- plain, *adj.* (level) flach, eben; (simple)  
einfach, schlicht; (frank) offenerzig;  
(clear) klar, ungehindert
- plan, Plan, *m.*
- plant, *s.* Pflanze, *f.*, Gewächs, *n.*
- play, to, spielen
- play, *s.* Spiel, *n.*; (dram.) Schau-  
spiel, *n.*
- please, to, gefallen\* (with *dat.* of  
*pers.*), vergnügen. to — better,  
lieber sein (with *dat.*). if you —,  
bitte, wenn es Ihnen gefällt ist, ge-  
fällt (see also Ex. 39, b)
- pleasure, Vergnügen, *n.*, Gefälligkeit, *f.*  
at —, nach Belieben, nach Gefallen
- please, to, gefallen\* (with *dat.*)
- plentiful, *adj.* ergiebig, reichlich
- plenty, Fülle, *f.*, Ueberfluß, *m.*
- plough, Pflug, *m.*
- plunge, (into) sich stürzen (in)  
pocket, Tasche, *f.*
- poem, Gedicht, *n.* (pl. -e)
- poet, Dichter, *m.*, Poet', *m.* (-en)
- point, Punkt, *m.*, Spitze, *f.*
- poison, Gift, *n.*
- pole, (geog.) Pol, *m.*; (stake)  
Stange, *f.*; (carriage) Deichsel
- Pole, *prop. n.* Pole, *m.*
- police, Polizei, *f.*
- polite, *adj.* höflich, artig
- pond, Teich, *m.*, Weiher, *m.*
- poodle, Pudel, *m.*
- poor, *adj.* arm, dürftig

pope, **Papst**, *m.*  
 popular, *adj.* volkshäßig. — man, der Gefeierte  
 position, (station) Lage, *f.*; (attitude) Stellung, *f.*; (rank) Stand, *m.*  
 positive, *adj.*, positively, *adv.* ausdrücklich, durchaus  
 possess, to, besitzen \*  
 possession, Besitz, *m.*; (estates, &c.) Besitztum, *n.* to take — of, in Besitz nehmen \* (with *acc.*), sich bemächtigen (with *gen.*)  
 possible, *adj.* möglich  
 post, (appointment) Stelle, *f.*, Amt, *n.*  
 post-office, Post, *f.*, Postamt, *n.*  
 pot, Topf, *m.*  
 pound, **Pfund**, *n.*  
 poverty, Armut, *f.*  
 power, (might) Macht, *f.* (pl. "e), Kraft, *f.* (pl. "e), Stärke, *f.*; (dominion) Gewalt, *f.* — of endurance, Ausdauer, *f.*  
 practice, (drill) Übung, *f.*; (custom) Gewohnheit, *f.*  
 practice (practise), to, sich üben  
 praise, *s.* Lob, *n.*  
 praise, to, loben, rühmen, preisen  
 pray, to, beten; (ask for) bitten \* (um), ersuchen; *interj.* bitte!  
 prayer, (worship) Gebet, *n.*; (asking) Bitte, *f.*  
 precaution, Vorsicht, *f.*, Behutsamkeit, *f.* (pl. Vorsichtsmaßregeln)  
 precept, Vorschrift, *f.* (pl. "en), Regel, *f.*  
 prefer, to, vorziehen \*  
 preference, Vorzug, *m.*, Vorrang, *m.*  
 prepare, to, bereiten, vor-bereiten, sich vor-bereiten  
 prepared, *adj.* vorbereitet, gefast (auf)  
 present, *adj.* gegenwärtig; (not absent) anwesend, zugegen; (now) jetzt, to be — at, bei-wohnen (with *dat.*). the — time, Gegenwart, *f.* at —, jetzt, gegenwärtig, for the —, ein-stweilen  
 present, *s.* Gegenwart, *f.*, gegenwärtige Zeit, *f.*; (gift) Geschenk, *n.* (pl. "e)  
 presentiment, Vorgefühl, *n.*  
 preserve, to, bewahren, verwahren; (fruit) ein-machen  
 press, to, pressen, drücken; (crowd) drängen; pressing, *adj.*, and *s.* bringend, eilig  
 pretty, *adj.* hübsch, nett

prevent, to, verhindern, vor-beugen (with *dat.*)  
 price, Preis, *m.*  
 pride, Stolz, *m.*, Hochmut, *m.*  
 priest, **Priester**, *m.*, Geistlicher, *m.*  
 primrose, Primel, *f.*, Schlüsselblume, *f.*  
 prince, Prinz, *m.*; (reigning) Fürst, *m.* (=en)  
 princess, **Prinzessin**, *f.*; (reigning) Fürstin, *f.*  
 print, to, drucken  
 printing-office, Buchdruckerei, *f.*  
 prison, Gefängnis, *n.*  
 procession, Procession, *f.*  
 produce, to, hervor-bringen, \* erzeugen  
 professor, Professor, *m.* (pl. "en), Lehrer, *m.*  
 promise, *s.* Versprechen, *n.*  
 promise, to, versprechen, \* zu-sagen  
 pronounce, to, aus-sprechen \*  
 proof, Beweis, *m.*; (trial) **Probe**, *f.*, Versuch, *m.* water—, *adj.* wasser-dicht  
 proper, *adj.*, properly, *adv.* (own) eigen, eigentümlich; (decent) schicklich, anständig; (correctly) richtig, — name, Eigenname, *m.* (=n)  
 prospect, Aussicht, *f.* (pl. "en)  
 protect, to, schützen, beschützen, in Schutz nehmen \*  
 protest, to, (affirm) bet(h)euern; — against, **protestieren** (gegen)  
 Protestant, **Protestant**, *m.*  
 proud, *adj.* (of) stolz (auf, with *acc.*); (vain) eitel  
 prove, to, (1) *trans.* beweisen \*; (examine) prüfen. (2) *intrans.* sich zeigen, sich ausweisen, sich erweisen  
 proverb, Sprichwort, *n.* (pl. "er)  
 providence, Vorsehung, *f.*; (care) Fürsorge, *f.*  
 prow, to, herum-streichen, \* plündern, auf Raub aus-gehen \*  
 prudence, Vorsicht, *f.*, Klugheit, *f.*  
 prudent, *adj.* vorsichtig, klug  
 public, *adj.*, publicly, *adv.* öffentlich, in —, öffentlich  
 publish, to, (books) heraus-geben, \* verlegen  
 pull, to, ziehen \*  
 punish, to, strafen, bestrafen  
 punishment, Strafe, *f.*  
 pupil, (scholar) Zögling, *m.*, Schüler, *m.*, Schülerin, *f.* (2) (of the eye) Augapfel, *m.*

pure, *adj.* rein

purse, *Börse, f.*, Beutel, *m.*

pursue, to, verfolgen, nachsetzen (with *dat.*)

put, to, setzen, thun, \* stellen; (lay) legen, to — back, zurücksetzen, to — off (postpone), aufschieben, \* to — out, ausstrecken, auslösen; (fire) lösen, — over, übersetzen, — to flight, in die Flucht schlagen, \* to — up, aufstellen, to — up with, für lieb nehmen, \* sich beschreiben, sich begnügen

quarrel, Streit, *m.*, Zank, *m.*

quarrel, to, streiten, zanken, habern

quarter, Viertel, *n.*; (lodging) Quartier, *n.* to move one's —, übersiedeln, a — past one, ein — auf zwei, a — to two, drei Viertel auf zwei, — of an hour, Viertelstunde, *f.*

queen, Königin, *f.*; (at cards, chess) Dame, *f.*

quench, to, löschen, stillen

question, *s.* Frage, *f.* to ask (put) a —, eine Frage richten (thun) an (with *acc.*) the — is, whether..., es fragt sich, es handelt sich darum, ob...

quick, *adj.*, quickly, *adv.* (swift) lebhaft, flink, schnell, geschwind, hurtig  
quiet, *adj.*, quietly, *adv.* ruhig, still, gelassen

quill, Federkiel, *m.*, Gänsekiel, *m.*

quite, *adv.* ganz, gänzlich, völlig

quiver, to, zittern, schaukeln

rain, *impers. v.* regnen (see § 53)

rainbow, Regenbogen, *m.*

raise, to, heben \*

rank, (grade) Rang, *m.*, Stand, *m.*; (row) Reihe, *f.*, Linie, *f.*; (mil.) Glied, *n.*

rather, *adv.* lieber, eher, vielmehr, mehr

ray, Strahl, *m.* (pl. -en)

raze, to, (a fortress) schleifen

reach, to, (hand) reichen; (attain) erreichen; (arrive at) ankommen \*; (age) zurücklegen, to — forth, ausstrecken

read, to, lesen \*; (aloud) vorlesen \*

ready, *adj.* bereit, fertig

real, *adj.* wirklich, wahr

really, *adv.* wirklich, in der That

reap, to, ernten, ein-ernten, sammeln

reason, *s.* (faculty) Vernunft, *f.*, Verstand, *m.*; (cause) Ursache, *f.*; (ground) Grund, *m.*

receive, erhalten, \* bekommen, \* aufnehmen, \* empfangen \*; (accept) annehmen \*

recite, to, her-sagen

recommend, empfehlen \* (with *dat. of pers.*)

reconciliation, Versöhnung, *f.*

recover, to, (1) *intrans.* (from sickness, &c.) sich erholen, (2) *trans.* (save) erretten; (get again) wieder-erhalten \*

red, *adj.* rot(h)

redeem, to, (ransom) los-käufen, erlösen

redound, to, gereichen zu (with *dat. of pers.*)

reformer, Reforma'tor, *m.*

regiment, Regiment', *n.* (pl. -er)

regret, to, bedauern, leid thun \* (with *dat. of pers.*)

regular, *adj.*, regularly, *adv.* regelmäßig

reign, to, regieren, herrschen

reign, *s.* Regierung, *f.*

rejoice (at), to, sich freuen (über), erfreuen (see Ex. 41)

relate, to, erzählen; — to (refer), sich beziehen \* (auf)

rely, to, (on) sich verlassen \* (auf), rechnen (auf)

remain, to, (stay) bleiben \*; (be left) übrig bleiben, to — standing, stehen bleiben \*

remark, *s.* Bemerkung, *f.*; (note) Anmerkung, *f.*

remark, to, bemerken

remarkable, *adj.* merkwürdig, bemerkenswert

remedy, *s.* Mittel, *n.*, Hülfsmittel, *n.*, Arznei, *f.*

remedy, to, heilen, ab-helfen (with *dat.*)

remember, to, sich erinnern (with *gen.*), gedenken \* (with *gen.*). — me to her, grüße sie von mir

remind, to, (of) erinnern (an)

remit, to, (let off) erlassen \* (with *dat. of pers.*)

remunerative, *adj.* einträglich  
 render, to, (return) zurück-geben,\* er-  
 staten; (account) ab-legen; (cause)  
 machen; (a service) leisten; (trans-  
 late) über-setzen  
 repair, to, aus-bessern, verbessern  
 repeat, to, wiederholen  
 repent, to, (1) *trans.* bereuen; (2)  
*intrans.* in sich gehen.\* *impers.* I  
 —, es reut mich  
 repentant, *adj.* reuig, bußfertig  
 reply, to, antworten, erwidern  
 reply, *s.* Antwort, *f.* (pl. -en)  
 report, to, berichten; (relate) erzählen.  
 it is —ed, man sagt, es heißt  
 report, *s.* (news) Nachricht, *f.* (pl. -en),  
 Bericht, *m.* (pl. -e); (rumour) Ge-  
 rücht, *n.*; (repute) Ruf, *m.*  
 reputation, Ruf, *m.*  
 request, *s.* Bitte, *f.*, auch, *n.*  
 request, to, (ask) er-si- n  
 require, to, (demand) fordern, ver-  
 langen, bedürfen \* *ith gen.*);  
 (need) erfordern  
 requisite, *adj.* erforderlich, ot(h)wendig  
 requite, to, vergelten \*  
 rescue, to, retten, erretten, befreien  
 resemble, to, gleichen,\* ähnlich sehen \*  
 (with *dat.*)  
 reside, to, wohnen, sich auf-halten,\*  
 seinen Wohn-sitz auf-schlagen \*  
 resign, to, (one's self to) sich ergeben \*  
 (in)  
 resolution, Entschluß, *m.*  
 respectable, *adj.* angesehen, achtbar;  
 (com.) solib'  
 responsible, *adj.* verantwortlich  
 rest, *s.* Raht, *f.*, Ruhe, *f.*; (remain-  
 der) Uebrig, *n.*, Rest, *m.*; the —  
 (others) die Uebrigen, *pl.*  
 rest, to, ruhen, aus-ruhen  
 restrain, to, zurück-halten \*  
 retreat, *s.* Rückzug, *m.*; (retirement)  
 Zurückgezogenheit, *f.*; (refuge) Zu-  
 fluchtsort, *m.*  
 retreat, to, sich zurück-ziehen \*  
 return, to, (1) *intr.* zurück-kehren, wie-  
 der-kehren; (come back) zurück-kom-  
 men \*; (go back) zurück-gehen.\* (2)  
*trans.* (give back) zurück-geben,\*  
 wieder-geben \*; (send back) zurück-  
 schicken, to — thanks, danken (with  
*dat.*), Dank abstellen  
 reward, to, belohnen  
 reward, *s.* Belohnung, *f.*

ribbon, Band, *n.* (pl. -er)  
 rice, Reis, *m.*  
 rich, *adj.* reich  
 riches, Reichtum, *m.*  
 rid, to, (free) befreien  
 rid, *adj.* and *adv.* los, ledig  
 riddle, Rätsel, *n.*  
 ride, to, reiten \*  
 right, *adj.* and *adv.* recht. to be —,  
 Recht haben, Recht, *n.* (pl. -e) on  
 the —, rechts  
 rime, Reim, *m.*  
 ring, Ring, *m.*  
 ripe, *adj.* reif, ätig  
 ripen, to, reifen, reif werden  
 rise, to, (get up) auf-*stehen* \*; (sun,  
 &c.) auf-*gehen*.\* — up, steigen,\*  
 auf-*steigen* \*; (originate) entstehen \*  
 river, Fluß, *m.* (pl. -e)  
 roam, to, umher-*streifen*. — through,  
 durch-*streichen*.\* durch-*wand*-ern  
 roar, to, brüllen; (sea) brausen  
 rob, to, stehlen \*  
 robbery, Raub, *m.* (pl. see § 70, c),  
 Diebstahl, *m.*  
 rock, Fels, *m.* (see p. 16)  
 roll, to, rollen  
 rolling, *s.* Rollen, *n.*  
 Roman, *s.* Römer, *m.*; *adj.* römisch  
 Rome, Rom, *n.*  
 roof, Dach, *n.* (pl. -er)  
 room, (space) Raum, *m.*, Platz, *m.*;  
 (place) Stelle, *f.*; (chamber) Zim-  
 mer, *n.*, Stube, *f.* to take a —,  
 ein Zimmer beziehen \*  
 rope, Seil, *n.*, Strick, *m.*; (mar.)  
 Tau, *n.* (pl. -e)  
 rose, Rose, *f.*  
 round, (1) *adj.* rund; (2) *adv.*  
 herum, rings herum; (3) *prep.* um  
 (with *acc.*, § 51)  
 ruin, Verderben, *n.*; (building) Ruine,  
*f.*, Trümmer, *pl.* in —s, zertrüm-  
 mert  
 ruin, to, zerstören, verderben,\* zu Grunde  
 richten  
 run, to, rennen,\* laufen \*; (flee)  
 entfliehen,\* weg-laufen \*; (river)  
 fließen, strömen; (leak) rinnen,\* trie-  
 fen \*; (text) lauten. to — a risk,  
 Gefahr laufen.\* to — away, weg-

laufen, \*entlaufen\* (with *dat.*). to — over, durchlaufen, \*durch=lesen\*

Russia, Rußland, *n.*  
 Russian, *s.* Russe, *m.*; *adj.* russisch  
 rust, Rost, *m.*

sacrifice, to, opfern, auf=opfern  
 sad, *adj.*, sadly, *adv.* traurig  
 sail, *s.* Segel, *n.*  
 sail, to, segeln  
 sailor, Matrose, *m.*, Seemann, *m.*  
 saint, *adj.* heilig; *s.* Heiliger, *m.*  
     before proper nouns, **Sauft** (abbrev. *St.*)  
 sake, for the — of, wegen, willen (with *gen.*). for my —, meiner wegen, halben, =willen  
 sale, Verkauf, *m.*; for —, zu verkaufen, feil  
 salt, Salz, *n.*  
 same, *adj.* der(bie, das)selbe, gleich, nämlich, it's all the — to me, es ist mir einerlei  
 sand, Sand, *m.*  
 sanguinary, *adj.* blutig; (blood-thirsty) blutdürstig  
 savage, (1) *adj.* wild; (2) *s.* Wüt(h)erich, *m.*, Wilde, *m.*  
 save, to, (rescue from) retten, erretten (aus); (spare) sparen, ersparen  
 Saxony, Sachsen, *n.*; Saxon, sächsisch  
 say, to, sagen; (speak) sprechen, said to be, sollen (see Ex. 16). that is to —, das heißt, you don't — so? was Sie nicht sagen?  
 saying, (saw) Sprichwort, *n.* (pl. "er), Lebensart, *f.* (pl. "en)  
 scene, Scene, *f.*  
 scenery, Landschaft, *f.*, Gegenb., *f.*  
 scholar, (pupil) Schüler, *m.*, Schölerin, *f.*; (savant) Gelehrter, *m.*  
 school, Schule, *f.*  
 schoolfellow, Mitschüler, *m.*  
 science, Wissenschaft, *f.*  
 scientific, *adj.*, scientifically, *adv.* wissenschaftlich  
 Scotch, *adj.* schottisch  
 Scotland, Schottland, *n.*  
 scourge, *s.* Geißel, *f.*, Zuchtrute, *f.*  
 scratch, to, kratzen, scratchen

sea, See, *f.*, Meer, *n.* at —, auf der See. by —, zur See. to go to —, Matrose werden  
 sea-shore, Meeresufer, *n.*  
 season, *s.* Jahreszeit, *f.* (pl. "en)  
 secluded, *adj.* abge sondert, abge= schieden, einsam  
 see, to, sehen, \*schauen; (mentally) einsehen\*; (attend to) zu=sehen; (visit) besuchen, to live to —, er= leben. — again, wieder=sehen\*

seed, Samen, *m.*, Saat, *f.*  
 seize, to, ergreifen, \*greifen\*

seeldom, *adv.* selten, fast nie  
 self, pron. selbst (see Ex. 45).  
 selfish, *adj.* selbstsüchtig  
 self-love, *s.* Eigenliebe, *f.*  
 sell, to, verkaufen, to — by auction, versteigern  
 send, to, schicken, senden\*; — word, sagen lassen\*

sense, Sinn, *m.*; (intellect) Verstand, *m.*, Vernunft, *f.*; (meaning) Bedeutung, *f.*, Meinung, *f.* common —, Menschenverstand, *m.*  
 sensitive, *adj.* empfindlich  
 sentence, (law) Ur(h)teil, *n.*, Rechts= spruch, *m.*; (gram.) Satz, *m.*; (maxim) Grundsatz, *m.*  
 serious, *adj.*, seriously, *adv.* ernst, ernsthaft  
 sermon, Predigt, *f.* (pl. "en)  
 serpent, Schlange, *f.*  
 servant, Diener, *n.*, Dienerin, *f.*, Bediente, *m.*; (collect.) Gefinde, *n.*  
 serve, to, dienen (with *dat. of pers.*); trans. bedienen, auf=warten  
 service, Dienst, *m.*; (attendance) Bedienung, *f.*, Aufwartung, *f.*; (use) Nutzen, *m.*, Vortheil, *m.*; (divine) Gottesdienst, *m.*  
 set, to, (1) trans. setzen; (lay) legen; (place) stellen. (2) intrans. unter= gehen\* to — out, ab=reisen, ver= reisen. to — up for (profess), sich aus=geben\* (für), Ansprüche machen (auf). — off, ab=reisen, sich auf den Weg machen  
 seven, sieben; — years', *adj.* sieben= jährig  
 seventh, *adj.* siebent(e)  
 several, *adj.* mehrere  
 severe, *adj.*, severely, *adv.* streng

severity, *Strenge, f.*  
 shade, shadow, *Schatten, m.*  
 shake, to, *(h)ütteln, to — hands (with), die Hand geben,\* brüden (with dat.)*  
 shall, *sollen (Ex. 16), werden \* (§ 99)*  
 shame, *Schande, f.*  
 share, to, *t(h)eilen*  
 share, *s. t(h)eil, m.; (portion) An- t(h)eil, m., Beitrag, m. to fall to the —, zu Teil werden \* (with dat.)*  
 sharp, *adj. scharf; (mental) scharf- sinnig; (pointed) spitzig*  
 sharpen, to, *(h)eilen,\* scharfen*  
 shave, to, *rasiren; (shear) scheeren \**  
 she, *pers. pron. sie; — who, diejenige, die (welche)*  
 shed, to, *(spill) aus-schütten, ver- gießen \*; — on (bestow) überhäufen mit (with acc. of pers.)*  
 sheep, *Schaf, n. (pl. =e)*  
 shell, *Schale, f.; (bot.) Schale, f.; (conch.) Muschel, f.; (artill.) Bombe, f.*  
 shield, *Schild, m. (pl. =e)*  
 shine, *scheinen,\* leuchten; (to glitter) glänzen*  
 ship, *Schiff, n. (pl. =e)*  
 shirt, *Hemd, n. (pl. =en)*  
 shoe, *Schuh, m. (pl. =e)*  
 shop, *Laden, m.*  
 shore, *Ufer, n., Küste, f.*  
 short, *adj. kurz, klein. in —, kurz. — of sight, kurzfristig*  
 shot, *Schuß, m.; (ball) Kugel, f.*  
 shoulder, *Schulter, f.*  
 show, to, *zeigen, weisen \* (with dat.); (prove) beweisen \*; (exhibit) aus- stellen, zur Schau stellen*  
 show, *s. (exhib.) Schau, f., Aus- stellung, f.; (display) Gepränge, n.*  
 shut, to, *(h)eschließen,\* zu-machen. to — in, ein-schließen \**  
 sick, *adj. (ill) übel, krank, (siedh); (weary) überdrüssig*  
 sickly, *adj. trübselig*  
 side, *Seite, f. on this —, diesseits (with gen., § 66). on the other —, jenseits (with gen., § 66). by his —, neben ihm. to his —, neben ihn*

siege, *Belagerung, f.*  
 sigh, to, *seufzen*  
 sight, (sense) *Gesicht, n.; (view) Ansicht, f.; (spectacle) Anblick, m., Schauspiel, n.*  
 sign, *Zeichen, n.*  
 signboard, *Aushängeschild, n.*  
 signify, to, *bedeuten*  
 silence, *Schweigen, n., Stille, f.*  
 silent, *adj. and adv. schweigend; (quiet) still. to be —, schwei- gen \**  
 silk, *Seide, f.*  
 sill, *Gesimse, n.*  
 silver, *Silber, n.*  
 sin, *Sünde, f.*  
 since, (1) *prep. seit; ever —, schon seit (with dat.) von ... an; (ago) her, vorher, vor. a year — (ago) vor einem Jahre. (2) subord. conj. (cause) da, weil; (time) seit(bem)*  
 sincere, *adj., sincerely, adv. auf- richtig*  
 sincerity, *Aufrichtigkeit, f.*  
 sing, to, *singen \**  
 sink, to, *sinken \**  
 sister, *Schwester, f. — of mercy, barmherzige Schwester, Diaconissin*  
 sit, to, *sitzen \**; (rest) *ruhen. to — down, sich setzen*  
 six, *sechs*  
 sixteen, *adj. sechzehn*  
 sixth, *adj. sechste*  
 sixty, *adj. sechzig*  
 skate, *s. Schlittschuh, m. (pl. =e)*  
 skate, to, *Schlittschuh laufen \**  
 skin, *s. Haut, f.*  
 slave, *Sklave, m.*  
 sleep, to, *(h)schlafen \**  
 sleep, *s. Schlaf, m.*  
 slope, *s. Abhang, m.*  
 slow, *adj., slowly, adv. langsam*  
 small, *adj. klein; (schmal = narrow)*  
 smell, to, (of) *riechen \* (nach)*  
 smoke, *s. Rauch, m., Qualm, m.*  
 snow, *Schnee, m.*  
 snow-clad, *adj. mit Schnee bedeckt*  
 snow, to, *(h)schneien*  
 so, (1) *adv. so, also. — much the worse, um so schlimmer. why so? warum denn? and — forth, und so*

weiter, *pron.*, referring to a preceding *adj.* or *phrase*, *es* (Fr. *le*).  
 — am (do) I, *ich* auch  
 soft, *adj.* weich, sanft, zart  
 soldier, **Soldat**, *m.*  
 solve, to, auf-lösen; (doubts) auf-klären  
 some, *adj.*, *pl. indef.* einige, welche;  
*sing.* etwas, *adv.* (about), etwa, some-  
 times... sometimes, bald... bald  
 somebody, Jemand, *m.*  
 something, Etwas, *n.*  
 sometimes, *adv.* manchmal, zuweilen  
 somewhere, *adv.* irgendwo; — where  
 else, anderswo  
 song, Gesang, *m.* (pl. "e), Lied, *n.*  
 (pl. -er)  
 soon, *adv.* bald; (early) früh, as —  
 as, so bald (als)  
 sooner, lieber (cher), no —, kaum  
 sorrow, Kummer, *m.*, Verdruss, *m.*  
 sorry, *adj.* (grieved) traurig; (piti-  
 ful) armelig. I am — for it, es  
 thut mir leid, ich bedaure  
 sort, Art, *f.*, Sorte, *f.*, Gattung, *f.*  
 all —s of, allerlei  
 soul, Seele, *f.*  
 sound, *adj.* and *adv.* gesund  
 sound, *s.* Schall, *m.*, Laut, *m.*  
 south, Süd, *m.*, Süden, *m.*; *adj.*  
 südlich, *adv.* südwärts  
 sow, to, (seed) säen; (field) besäen  
 (see Ex. 24)  
 spare, to, (save) sparen, ersparen;  
 (treat with pity) schonen (with *gen.*  
 or *acc.*)  
 spark, Funken, *m.*  
 sparrow, Sperling, *m.*  
 Spartan, *s.* Spartaner, *m.* *adj.*  
 spartanisch  
 speak, to, sprechen \*  
 spectacle, Schaupiel, *n.* (pl. -e);  
 (sight) Anblick, *m.*  
 spectacles, Brille, *f.*  
 speech, (language) Sprache, *f.*; (ora-  
 tion) Rede, *f.*  
 speed, *s.* Eile, *f.* at full —, in vollem  
 Galopp, mit verhängtem Zügel  
 spell, to, beschäbi(e)ren  
 spend, to, (money) aus-geben \*;  
 (waste) verschwenden, verbrauchen,  
 vergehren; (time) zu-bringen \*  
 spendthrift, Verschwenker, *m.*

spin, to, spinnen \*  
 spirit, Geist, *m.*, Seele, *f.*  
 spite, Groll, *m.* in — of, trotz (with  
*gen.*)  
 spoon, Löffel, *m.*  
 sport, *s.* (play) Spiel, *n.*, Lust, *f.*;  
 (pastime) Kurzweil, *f.*; (mockery)  
 Spott, *m.*  
 spread, to, verbreiten  
 spring, to, springen \*; — forth, ent-  
 springen \*; (issue) hervor-gehen, \*  
 entstehen \*  
 spring, *s.* (leap) Sprung, *m.*;  
 (mechan.) Feder, *f.*, Springfeder, *f.*;  
 (source) Quelle, *f.*; (season) Früh-  
 ling, *m.*, Frühjahr, *n.*; (poet.)  
 Lenz, *m.*  
 spring-time, Frühling, *m.*, Frühlings-  
 zeit, *f.*  
 spy, Spion, *m.* (pl. -en)  
 spy, to, spüren, aus-spähen  
 squander, to, verschwenden, verschleu-  
 bern  
 stable, Stall, *m.*  
 stage, Stübium, *n.*; (theatre) Bühne,  
*f.*; (of progression) Etape, *f.*  
 stage-coach, Postwagen, *m.*, Kilm-  
 gen, *m.*  
 stair, Treppe, *f.*  
 stake, (post) Pfahl, *m.* to be at —,  
 gelten \* (*impers.*), see Ex. 22 (c)  
 stand, to, stehen \*; (still, to remain  
 standing) stehen, \* bleiben, \* still-  
 stehen \*; (bear) aus-halten, \* my  
 hair —s on end, mir stehen \* die  
 Haare zu Berge  
 star, Stern, *m.*  
 stare, to, starren, staunen. to —  
 in the face, an-starren (with *acc.*  
 of *pers.*)  
 starling, Star, *m.*  
 state, (condition) Zustand, *m.*; (na-  
 tion) Staat, *m.* (pl. -en); (rank)  
 Rang, *m.*, Stand, *m.*; (pomp) Staat,  
*f.*, Pracht, *f.*  
 station, (rank) Stellung, *f.*, Lage, *f.*;  
 (railway) Station, *f.*, Bahnhof, *m.*  
 stay, *intrans.* bleiben, \* sich auf-halten \*;  
 (stand still) stehen bleiben \*; (wait)  
 warten; (delay) zögern  
 stead, in — of, statt, anstatt (with  
*gen.* or *zu* with *infin.*)  
 steal, to, stehlen \*



steam, *s.* Dampf, *m.*; (mist) Dunst, *m.* — boat, Dampfboot, *n.* (pl. *-e*).  
 — engine, Dampfmaschine, *f.*  
 steam, to, dampfen, dunsten. — up, aufsteigen \*  
 steel, **Stahl**, *m.* — pen, **Etahl**-feder, *f.*  
 steep, *adj.* lähe, steil  
 stick, *s.* Stod, *m.*  
 still, *adj.* still; *adv.* noch; (nevertheless) doch, jedoch  
 sting, to, stechen \*  
 sting, *s.* Stachel, *m.*, Stich, *m.*  
 stomach, Magen, *m.*  
 stone, **Stein**, *m.*; (of fruit) Kern, *m.*  
 stop, to, (1) *trans.* verstopfen; (detain) aufhalten \*; (hinder) hindern, hemmen, enden. (2) *intrans.* anhalten, \* stehen bleiben \*; (cease) aufhören  
 stork, **Storch**, *m.* (pl. *-e*)  
 storm, **Sturm**, *m.* (pl. *-e*)  
 stormy, *adj.* stürmisch  
 story, Geschichte, *f.*, Erzählung, *f.*; (lie) Füge, *f.*  
 straight, *adj.* gerade  
 stranger, Fremder, *m.*, Fremdling, *m.*, Unbekannter, *m.*; (visitor) Gast, *m.*  
 straw, **Stroh**, *n.*  
 stream, **Strom**, *m.*  
 street, **Straße**, *f.*  
 strength, Kraft, *f.*, Stärke, *f.*  
 stretch, to, strecken. — out, ausstrecken, reichen  
 strew, to, streuen  
 strict, *adj.*, strictly, *adv.* streng  
 strike, to, (beat) schlagen, \* treffen, \* hauen \*; (flag) streichen \*; (appear to) vor-kommen, \* auf-fallen \* (with *dat.*)  
 striking, *adj.*, strikingly, *adv.* auffallend, überrassend  
 strong, *adj.* stark, fest  
 student, **Student**, *m.*  
 study, Stud-ium, *n.* (pl. *-ien*); (room) Studierzimmer, *n.*  
 study, to, studi(ere)n, sich befeisigen  
 stuff, **Stoff**, *m.*, Materie, *f.*; (cloth, &c.) Zeug, *m.* or *n.*  
 style, (writing) **Stil**, *m.*, Schreib-art, *f.* in that —, auf diesem Fuß

subject, Unterthan, *m.* (pl. *-en*)  
 substantive, **Substantiv**, *n.*, Hauptwort, *n.* (pl. *-er*)  
 subterranean, *adj.* unterirdisch  
 succeed, to, (1) *trans.* folgen, nach-folgen (with *dat.*). (2) *intrans.* gelingen, \* impers. (with *dat.* of *pers.*), aus-fallen \*  
 succumb, to, erliegen, \* unterliegen \* (with *dat.*)  
 such, *adj.* solch, *-er*, *-e*, *-es* (see Ex. 30)  
 suck, to, saugen, \* to — up, ein-saugen \*  
 sudden, *adj.*, suddenly, *adv.* plötz-lich, all of a —, plötzlich, auf ein Mal  
 suffer, to, leiden \*; (bear) dulden; (permit) lassen \* (see Ex. 18), erlauben.  
 — want, Mangel (Not)leiden, darben  
 sufficient, *adj.*, sufficiently, *adv.* genug, hinreichend, hinlänglich  
 suffix, Suffix, *n.*, Nachsilbe, *f.*  
 sugar, **Zucker**, *m.*  
 sulphur, Schwefel, *m.*  
 summer, **Sommer**, *m.*  
 summit, Gipfel, *m.*, Spitze, *f.*  
 sun, **Sonne**, *f.*  
 sunbeam, Sonnenstrahl, *m.*  
 Sunday, **Sonntag**, *m.*  
 sunlight, Sonnenlicht, *n.*  
 sunrise, Sonnenaufgang, *m.*  
 sun-set, Sonnenuntergang, *m.*  
 sunshine, Sonnenschein, *m.*  
 sunny, *adj.* sonnig  
 superior, *adj.* (higher) höher; (bet-ter) überlegen (with *dat.*). — numbers, Uebermacht, *f.*, Ueber-zahl, *f.*  
 supplies, *pl.* Zufuhr, *f.*, Proviant, *m.*  
 suppose, to, voraus-setzen (see Ex. 26), vermuthen  
 supreme, *adj.* allmächtig  
 sure, *adj.* and *adv.* sicher, gewiß (see Ex. 38), wahr  
 surrender, to, sich ergeben, \* über-geben \*  
 suspend, to, (to be suspended) hängen \*  
 suspicion, Verdacht, *m.*, Argwohn, *m.*  
 swallow, (orn.) Schwalbe, *f.*  
 swan, Schwan, *m.*

swear, to, **schwören** \*; (curse)  
fluchen  
sweep, to, kehren, fegen  
sweet, *adj.* süß  
Swiss, s. **Schweizer**, m.; *adj.* schwei-  
zerisch  
Switzerland, Schweiz, f.  
sword, **Schwert**, n., Degen, m.

table, Tisch, m., **Tafel**, f.

tailor, Schneider, m.

take, to, nehmen. \* to — for, halten \*  
für, to — a walk, spazieren gehen. \*  
— some one with, mit-nehmen. \*  
to — a seat, sich setzen, to — care,  
aufpassen, sich in Acht nehmen. \* to —  
heed, sich hüten, to — leave, Ab-  
schied nehmen. \* (medicine) ein-neh-  
men. \* to — an opportunity, die  
Gelegenheit ergreifen. \* to — place,  
stattfinden. \* to — pleasure (in),  
Bergnügen finden (an). to — away,  
wegnehmen. \* to — up (arms),  
ergreifen. \* greifen \* zu (with *dat.*)

tale, (story) Erzählung, f.

talk, to, sprechen. \* reden; (chat) plau-  
dern, schwätzen

task, Aufgabe, f., Arbeit, f. to take to  
—, zur Rede stellen

taste, to, (1) *trans.* schmecken, kosten.  
(2) it — of, es schmeckt nach

tax, Steuer, f., Auflage, f.

tea, **Ther**, m.

teach, to, lehren; (instruct) unter-  
richten

tedious, *adj.* langweilig, lästig

teem, to, wimmeln (von), voll-sein  
(von)

telegram, Telegram, n., telegraphische  
Depeche, f.

tell, to, (say) sagen (with *dat.* of  
*pers.*); (narrate) erzählen

temper, Gemütsart, f., Gemüt, n.;  
ill —, Laune, f.

temperance, Mäßigkeit, f.

temperate, *adj.*, temperately, *adv.*  
mäßig

ten, zehn

tenant, (lit.) Mietmann, m., Pächter,  
m., (fig.) Bewohner, m.

terror, Schrecken, m., Entsetzen, n.

test, to, erproben, auf die Probe  
stellen

thank, to, danken (with *dat.* of  
*pers.*)

thank, s. Dank, m. to return — s,  
dank-sagen

thankful, *adj.*, thankfully, *adv.*  
dankbar, erntentlich

thanksgiving, Dank-sagung, f.

that, (1) *rel. pron.* der, die, das  
(§ 32); (2) *dem. pron.* jener, jene,  
jenes; (3) *conj.* daß

the, *def. art.* der, die, das (pl. die).  
the...the... (with comparatives),  
je...desto, je...je

theatre, **Theater**, n.

Thebes, Theben, n.

their, *poss. adj.* ihr, ihre, ihr

theirs, *poss. pron.* der (die, das)  
ihre, ihre (§ 27)

them, *pers. pron.* sie; to —, ihnen;  
of —, ihrer, (§§ 24, 25)

themselves, *refl. pron.* (sic) selbst,  
sich selbst (see Ex. 44)

then, *adv.* dann; (time past) damals;  
(thereupon) darauf; (consequent-  
ly) folglich, now and —, dann und  
wann

there, *adv.* da (orig. **dar**; thus still  
in composition before a vowel;  
cf. *da*ran, &c.); (yonder) dort;  
(impers.) es. — is (are), es giebt

therefore, daher, deshalb, deswegen

these, see this, and § 29

they, *pers. pron.* sie; (people, in-  
*def.*) man. — say, man sagt

thick, *adj.* dick

thief, **Dieb**, m. (pl. *er*), Diebin, f.

thin, *adj.* dünn; (lean) mager

thine, *poss. pron.* der (die, das)  
**deinige** (or **deine**)

thing, Ding, n. (pl. *er*), Sache, f.  
any—, irgend Etwas

think, to, denken \*; (reflect) nach-  
denken. \* to — of, an (with *acc.*)  
denken; (remember) sich auf (with  
*acc.*) be-sinnen. \* to — light of,  
gering-schätzen

third, *adj.* der (die, das) dritte

thirst, Durst, m.

thirsty, *adj.* durstig, to be — (see  
§ 54)

thirteen, dreizehn

**thirty, adj.** *dreißig*; thirty years', *adj.* *dreißigjährig*

**this, dem. pron.** *dies-er, -e, -es* (*dies*), pl. *diese*. — **way, hie(r)her** thither, *adv.* *dorthin, dahin*. hither and —, *hin und her*

**thorn, Dorn, m.** (pl. -en)  
**those (pl. of that), see § 29)**

**thou, pers. pron.** *du* (§§ 24, 25)

**though, conj.** *obgleich, wenn auch, (ic- doch), as —, als ob*

**thought, Gedanke, m.** (-ns), see § 14 (a)

**thousand, tausend; s. Tausend, n.** (pl. -e)

**thread, Faden, m.**

**threat, Drohung, f.**

**threateningly, adv.** *drohend*

**three, drei**

**thrive, to, gedeihen,\* fort-kommen \***

**throne, Thron, m.**

**throng, s. Gebränge, n.**

**through, prep.** *durch* (with *acc.*)

**throw, to, werfen,\* to — away, weg- (fort-)werfen,\* to — down, herab- (hinab-)werfen,\* zu Boden werfen**

**thunder, s. Donner, m.**

**thunder, to, donnern**

**thunderstorm, Gewitter, n.**

**tide, (of waters) Ebbe und Flut, f.; (time) Zeit, f.** ebb —, Ebbe, f.

flood —, Flut(h), f.

**tie, to, binden,\* to — down, fest-binden\***

**tiger, Tiger, m.**

**till, prep and conj.** *bis; bis daß*

**till, to, bebauen, pflügen**

**time, Zeit, f.** (pl. -en). in —, bei Zeiten, in good —, zur rechten Zeit, in the mean —, während der Zeit, unterdessen, by that —, bis dann (daßin). at the same —, dabei

**times, (with numerals) mal(e); ten —, zehnmal; several —, mehrere male (mehrmaße)**

**tired, adj.** *müde, überdrüssig, satt* (Ex. 38)

**title, Titel, m.**

**to, prep.** (with *dat.*, see § 52) *zu*; (to a place) *nach, zu*

**together, adv.** *zusammen, put —, zusammen genommen, — with, sammt, mit (with dat.)*

**toil, to, arbeiten; (fam.) oöfen. — hard, es sich sauer werden lassen \***

**toll, Zoll, m., Geläut, n.**

**toll-bar, Schlagbaum, m.**

**toll-gate, Zollthor, n.**

**Tom, Thomas, m.**

**too, adv.** *zu, allzu*; (also) *auch*

**tooth, Zahn, m.**

**top, (of a mountain) Gipfel, m.**

**torment, s. Pein, f., Qual, f.** (pl. -en)

**torment, to, peinigen, quälen**

**torrent, Strom, m., Gießbach, m.**

**torrid zone, heißer Erdftrich, m., heiße Zone, f.**

**touch, to, fühlen, an-fühlen; (hit) rühren, an-rühren, berühren; (concern) an-gehen,\* betreffen \***

**touch, s. Berührung, f.; (sense) Gefühl, n.**

**towards, prep.** *gegen (with acc.), nach (with dat.)*

**tower, T(h)urm, m.**

**town, Stadt, f.** (pl. "e)

**tragedy, Trauerspiel, n., Tragödie, f.**

**train, to, ein-üben, erziehen,\* an-halten\* (zu)**

**train, (retinue) Gefolge, n.; (railway) Bahnzug, m., Zug, m.**

**translate, überse'ten (see pp. 80 and 154), übertragen \***

**traveller, Reisender, m. (see Ex. 18, Obs.)**

**travelling-companion, Reisegefährte, m.**

**tread, to, treten.\* to — on, mit Füßen treten**

**treat, to, behandeln; (negotiate) unterhandeln, verhandeln; (entertain) bewirten**

**tree, Baum, m.** (pl. "e)

**tremble, (with) zittern (vor, with acc.), beben**

**triangle, Dreieck, n.**

**trip, s. (journey) Lustreise, f.**

**triumph, Triumph\*, m.**

**troop, Haufen, m.; pl. Truppen**

**trooper, Reifige, m., Reiter, m.**

**Troy, Troja**

**true, adj.** *wahr; (faithful) treu; (honest) ehrlich, redlich; (genuine) echt*

**truly, adv.** *wahrhaft; (really) wirklich*

trust, Vertrauen, *n.* to put — in, Vertrauen schenken (with *dat. of pers.*); trust, to, trauen, vertrauen (with *dat.*); (hope) hoffen. to — to, sich verlassen auf (with *acc.*)

truth, Wahrheit, *f.*; (loyalty) Treue, *f.*; (truthfulness) Wahrhaftigkeit, *f.* try, to, versuchen

turn, to, (1) *trans.* drehen; (lathe) drehen, drehen. (2) *intrans.* (become) wenden.\* — pale, erbleichen, erblassen. to — to (towards), sich wenden\* zu (an); (become) werden.\*

to — out, zur Hilfe hinaus werfen.\* — towards, sich wenden zu

twelfth, zwölft  
twelve, zwölf  
twenty, zwanzig  
twice, zweimal  
twig, Zweig, *m.*  
two, zwei  
tyrant, Tyrann', *m.*

twelfth, zwölft

twelve, zwölf

twenty, zwanzig

twice, zweimal

twig, Zweig, *m.*

two, zwei

tyrant, Tyrann', *m.*

Ulysses, Ulyßes, Odysseus

uncertain, *adj.* ungewiß

under, unter (with *acc.* or *dat.*, see § 65)

understand, to, verstehen,\* ein-sehen\*

undertake, to, unternehmen\*

undertaking, Unternehmen, *n.*, Unternehmung, *f.*

unexpected, *adj.*, unexpectedly, *adv.* unerwartet

unheard of, *adj.* unerhört, beispiellos

uninterrupted, *adj.* ununterbrochen, unverbrossen

university, Universität', *f.*, Hochschule, *f.*

unlearn, to, verlernen

unpleasant, *adj.* unangenehm, lästig

unpremeditated, *adj.* unvor-sätzlich, überlegt

until, (1) *prep.* (time) bis. (2) *conj.* bis (daß)

untruth, Unwahrheit, *f.*, Lüge, *f.*

unworthy, *adj.* unwürdig

up, *prep.* and *prefix.* auf, hinauf. — stairs, herauf, hinauf

upon, *prep.* auf (with *acc.* or *dat.*)

upright, *adj.* and *adv.* aufrecht;

(honest) rechtschaffen, aufrichtig

upset, um-stürzen, um-werfen\*

us, *pers. pron.* uns; of —, unser (§ 24)

use, Gebrauch, *m.* (pl. "e), Nutzen; (custom) Gewohnheit, *f.*, Brauch, *m.*, Gebrauch, *f.* to be of —, nützlich sein. to make —, Gebrauch machen (gebrauchen)

use, to, brauchen, gebrauchen, benutzen; (apply) an-wenden\*; (treat) be-handeln; (to be wont) pflegen, ge-wohnt sein

utter, to, äußern, aus-sprechen\*

vain, *adj.* eitel, eingebildet. in —, vainly, *adv.* umsonst, vergeblich, vergebens

valiant, *adj.*, valiantly, *adv.* tapfer, mutig, brav

valley, Thal, *n.* (pl. "er)

value, Wert, *m.*

vanquish, to, besiegen

vein, Adet, *f.*

velvet, Sammet, *m.*

venture, to, wagen

verb, Zeitwort, *n.*, Verbum, *n.*

verse, Vers, *m.*

very, *adj.* (true) wahr. the —, eben der (die, das). this — minute, so eben, *adv.* the — next day, schon den folgenden Tag

*adv.* sehr, gar. — much, sehr viel

vexation, Ärger, *m.* (pl. see § 70, c), Kergerniß, *n.*

vicar, Vikar', *m.*, Landprediger, *m.*

vice, (sin) Laster, *n.*; (screw) Schrauben-  
schraube, *m.*

vile, *adj.* niederträchtig

villa, Villa, *f.*, Landhaus, *n.*

village, Dorf, *n.* (pl. "er)

vine, Weinstock, *m.*, Rebe, *f.*

violent, *adj.* heftig, ungestüm

violet, Veilchen, *n.*

virtue, Tugend, *f.* by — of, kraft (with *gen.*)

vision, Gesicht, *n.* (pl. "e)

visit, to, besuchen

visit, *s.* Besuch, *m.* (pl. "e). to pay a —, einen Besuch machen

vivid, *adj.*, vividly, *adv.* leben'dig, lebhaft, munter

vizier, Bezier', *m.*

voice, Stimme, *f.* passive —, passive Form, *f.*, Passiv(um), *n.*

vote, Stimme, *f.*  
voyage, Seereise, *f.*  
vulgar, adj. gemein  
vulgarity, Gemeinheit, *f.*, Rohheit, *f.*

wag, to, (the tail) wecheln (mit dem Schwanz)

wait, to, warten; (expect) in Erwartung sein. to — for, warten auf (with acc.). to — on, auf-warten. to — (at table), auf-warten, bedienen

wake, to, (1) *intrans.* wachen, wach sein, erwachen, auf-wachen. (2) *trans.* wecken, auf-wecken, erwecken

walk, to, gehen \*; (to go for a walk) spazieren, spazieren gehen

walk, *s.* Spaziergang, *m.* (pl. "e"); (path) Spazierweg, *m.*, Fußgang, *m.* to take a —, einen Spaziergang machen, spazieren gehen

wall, Mauer, *f.*; (inside) Wand, *f.* (pl. "e")

want, (need) Mangel, *m.*, Bedürfnis, *n.*; (poverty) Not, *f.*, Armut, *f.* to be in — of, brauchen, nötig haben. for — of, aus Mangel an  
want, to, brauchen, bedürfen. to suffer —, Mangel leiden, nötig haben; (wish) wünschen, wollen \* (see Ex. 17, e). ... to be wanting, (*impers.*) mangeln, fehlen an (with *dat.*, Ex. 22, c)

war, Krieg, *m.* (pl. "e"). man of —, Kriesschiff, *n.*

warm, adj. warm

warn, to, warnen; (admonish) ermahnen

wash, to, waschen \*

wasp, Wespe, *f.*

watch, (clock) Uhr, Taschenuhr, *f.* (pl. "en"); (guard) Wache, *f.*; (watchman) Wächter, *m.*, Wache, *f.* to be on the —, Wache halten, \* auf der Lauer stehen \*

watch, to, (1) *intrans.* wachen, Wache halten. to — (over) ..., wachen (über) ... (2) *trans.* bewachen, beobachten

water, Wasser, *n.*

wave, Welle, *f.*, Woge, *f.*

way, Weg, *m.* (pl. "e"); the way to, der Weg nach; (distance) Strecke, *f.*; (direction) Richtung, *f.*; (manner)

Art, *f.*, Weise, *f.*; (means) Mittel, *n.* (own way) Weise, *m.*, Sinn, *m.* this —, hierher. that —, dorthin. by — of ..., um (with *instr.*). a long — off, weit weg

we, pers. pron. wir (§§ 24, 25)

weak, adj. schwach

wear, to, (clothes) tragen, \* an-haben \*; — out, verbrauchen, ab-tragen \*

weary, adj. müde; (sick) überdrüssig; (tiresome) langweilig

weary, to, (1) *trans.* ermühen, belästigen, quälen. (2) *intrans.* müde werden, sich ermühen

weather, Wetter, *n.*, Bitterung, *f.*

week, Woche, *f.*, acht Tage. to-day —, heute über acht Tage. a — ago, vor acht Tagen. a — (weekly), die Woche, wöchentlich

weep, to, weinen

weigh, to, wägen, wiegen \* (see p. 67, 1)

weight, Gewicht, *n.*

welcome, adj. willkommen. to bid —, willkommen heißen, \* — to, zu Diensten, herzlich gerne

well, *s.* (spring) Quelle, *f.*; (fountain) Brunnen, *m.*

well, adv. wo(h)l, gut; (rightly) richtig, recht. it would be —, es wäre zu wünschen. — off, in guten Umständen. to do —, wol daran thun. interj. nun! wo(h)lan!

were, war(en) (§ 38)

wet, adj. naß, feucht

what, (1) *rel. pron.* was; (that which) das was, dasjenige welches; (which) welcher, =e, =es. (2) *relat. and interr. adj.* welcher, =e, =es; (what sort) was für ein (eine, ein); (how much) wie viel; (somewhat) etwas. — time is it? wie viel Uhr ist es (§§ 31, 32)

whatever, whatsoever, pron. was auch immer, was nur

went, see go

wheat, Weizen, *m.*

wheel, Rad, *n.* (pl. "er")

when, adv. and conj. wenn, wann. interrog. wann? (with a verb in an historical past tense) als: — a (boy), als (Knabe), see Ex. 33 (G)

where, *adv.* **wo** (originally **wor**; thus still in composition before a vowel; cf. *woran*); (whither) *wohin*, any—, *irgendwo*, every—, *allenthalben*, no—, *nirgend*  
whereupon, *adv.* *worauf*, *wonach*  
wherever, *adv.* *wo auch immer*  
whether, *conj.* *ob* (Ex. 6)  
which, *relat. and interrog. pron.*

**welch-er**, = **e**, = **es** (see § 31)  
whichever, *pron.* (pers.) *wer es auch sei*; (things) *was auch immer*

while, *s.* **Weile**, *f.*, *Zeit*, *f.* mean—, *unterdessen*, *bis dahin*, *worth* —, *der Mühe wert*, a little — after, *ein wenig später*, *kurz darauf*

while, whilst, *prep.* *während* (with *gen.*); *conj.* *indem*, *indes*

whirlwind, *lit.* **Wirbelwind**, *m.*; *fig.* **Sturm**, *m.*

white, *adj.* **weiß**

who, *rel. and interrog. pron.* **wer**; (which) **welch-er**, = **e**, = **es**; *der* (§ 32)

whole, *adj.* (sound) *gesund*, *heil*; (all) *ganz* (Ex. 30, d). on the —, *im Ganzen*

whom, *rel. pron.*, see *who* (§§ 31, 32)  
whose, *relat. pron.* (*pl.*) *deren*

whose? *interrog. wessen?* — is this? *wem gehört dies?*

why, *adv.* *warum*, *weshalb*; *interj.* *nun!* *ja!* —, to be sure, *ei*, *freilich!*

wicked, *adj.* *schlecht*, *böse*, *gottlos*

wide, *adj. and adv.* **weit**; (broad) *breit*; (distant) *fern*, *entfernt*. far and —, *weit und breit* — awake, *adj.* *munter*

widow, **Wittwe**, *f.*

wife, *Frau*, *f.* (*pl.* = *en*), **Weib**, *n.* (*pl.* = *er*), *Gattin*, *f.*, *Gemahlin*, *f.*

wild, *adj. and adv.* **wild**

will, *s.* **Wille**, *m.*

will, to, *wollen* (see Ex. 16, a), *wünschen*; *aux. v.* (Future) *werden* (see p. 50)

willing, *adj. and adv.* *willig*, *willens*, to be —, *wollen*

willingly, *adv.* *gern(e)*, *bereitwillig*

win, to, *gewinnen*, \**erhalten*, \**erlangen*

wind, *s.* **Wind**, *m.*

window, *Fenster*, *n.*

windy, *adj.* *winbig*

wine, **Wein**, *m.*

wing, *Flügel*, *m.*

winter, **Winter**, *m.*

wise, *adj.*, wisely, *adv.* **weise**, *klug*

wish, to, *wünschen*

wish, *s.* **Wunsch**, *m.*

wit, *s.* **Witz**, *m.* mother—, **Mutterwitz**, *m.*

witch, *Hexe*, *f.*

with, *prep.* *mit*, with *dat.* (see also p. 180)

within, *prep.* *innerhalb* (with *gen.*, § 66)

without, (1) *prep.* *ohne* (with *acc.*), or (2) *conj.* *ohne zu* (with *infinit.*), or *ohne daß* (with *finite verb*); (3) *adv.* *außer*

witness, to, (testify to) *bezeugen*; (see) *sehen*, \**mit an-sehen* \*

witness, *s.* *Beuge*, *m.*; (evidence) *Zeugniß*, *n.*

wolf, **Wolf**, *m.*

woman, *Frau*, *f.* (*pl.* = *en*), **Weib**, *n.* (*pl.* = *er*)

wonder, to, *sich wundern*; (wonder) **Wunder**, *n.*; (astonishment) *Bewunderung*, *f.*, *Staunen*, *n.*

wood, (forest) **Wald**, *m.*, *Waldung*, *f.*; (timber) **Holz**, *n.*

wool, **Wolle**, *f.*

word, **Wort**, *n.* (*pl.* = *er* or \**er*, see p. 96)

work, to, **wirken**, *arbeiten*

work, *s.* (labour) *Arbeit*, *f.*; **Werk**, *n.* (*pl.* = *e*)

world, (universe) **Welt**, *f.* (*pl.* = *en*); (earth) *Erde*, *f.*; (people) *Leute*, *pl.*

worse, *adj. and adv.* *schlimmer*, *schlechter*. so much the —, *desto schlimmer*

worship, *Verehrung*, *f.*, *Anbetung*, *f.*; (service) *Gottesdienst*, *m.*

worship, to, *verehren*, *an-beten*

worst, *adj.* *schlechteste*, *schlimmste*, to get the — of it, *den Kürzern ziehen* \*

worth, *s.* **Wert**, *m.*, *Verdienst*, *n.* *adj.* *wert* (with *acc.* or *gen.*). —

seeing, *sehe*, *wert*. — while, *der Mühe wert*

worthy, *adv.* **würdig** (with *gen.*)

would, *pret. of will* (see Ex. 16)

wound, *Wunde, f.*

wound, to, *verwunden*

wrangle, to, *sich zanken, haben*

write, to, *schreiben \**

writer, *Schreiber, m.*; (author) *Schriftsteller*; (compiler) *Berfasser, m.*

writing, *Schrift, f.* (pl. *-en*); hand —, *Handschrift, f.* in —, *schriftlich*

wrong, (1) *adj.*, wrongly, *adv.* (wrongful) *unrecht*; (not correct)

*unrichtig*, to be —, *unrecht haben*; (mistake) *sich irren*.

(2) *s. Unrecht, n.*

(3) wrong, to, *unrecht thun, schaden* (with *dat.*). to go —, *fehl gehen \**

year, *Jahr, n.* (pl. *-e*). year's, *adj.* ... *=jährig, as, last —, letzt=jährig*

yearly, *adj. and adv. jährlich*

yes, *adv. ja*

yesterday, *adv. gestern. —'s, adj. gestrig*

yet, (1) *adv.* (still) *noch*; not —, *noch nicht*. (2) *conj.* (however)

*doch, jedoch, dennoch*

you, *pers. pron., nom. sing. du, pl. ihr*; (polite) *Sie*; *acc. sing. dich*, *pl. euch*; (polite) *Sie* (§ 25)

young, *adj. jung*

your, *poss. adj. dein, ener*; (polite) *Ihr* (§ 25)

yours, *poss. pron. (sing.) deine, beini=ge*; (*pl.*) *euere, euerige*; *Ihre, Ihre* (§§ 27, 28)

yourself, *pron. selbst, dich (euch, sich), selbst* (see Ex. 45)

youth, *Jugend, f.*; (young man) *Jüngling, m.*

zeal, *Eifer, m.*

zone, *Bone, f., Erdstrich, m.*





# VERBAL INDEX.

N.B.—The Numbers refer to the *Sections* (§), unless the *page* (p.) or the *Exercise* (Ex.) is especially mentioned.

- ab-, sep. pref. 56 (b)  
aber, 67, A (1)  
able, to be, 52  
about, to be, Ex. 16 (a)  
ab-schreiben, 58  
Accusative, Ex. 36,  
place of, p. 99  
Adjectives—  
declined, 17—19, 71,  
Ex. 42  
compared, 20, 21,  
Ex. 43  
adjectival clauses,  
p. 101  
numeral, 22, 23, Ex.  
44  
governing Genitive,  
Ex. 38 (b)  
governing Dative,  
Ex. 39 (d)  
possessive, 26  
Adverbs, formation of,  
59  
classified, 60; com-  
pared, 21 (4), 61,  
62, Ex. 50  
Adverbial Clauses, pp.  
101, 126; Ex. 7  
afraid, to be, 53  
after, Prep., 64; Conj.,  
68, B (3)  
allein, Conj., 68, A (1)  
also, with superl., 62  
allow, to, Ex. 18  
allowed, to be, 52; Ex.  
17—21  
Alphabet, 1  
als, Conj., 68, B; Ex. 40  
am, contracted, an dem,  
66  
an, Prep., 65  
anderthalb, 22 (d)  
Anomalous Verbs, 51  
another, noch ein, 23  
(a); —one another,  
55  
anstatt, Prep., 66  
any one, anybody, any-  
thing, 33  
anxious, to be, Ex. 22 (c)  
Appendix, p. 95  
Apposition, Exs. 36—  
39  
Article, Definite and  
Indef., 8; use of,  
Exs. 29—30; =  
Engl. Possess. Pron.  
27 (2); Exs. 39 (b)  
2, 46  
as...as, so...as, 21  
at, how rendered, Ex.  
41  
auch, Adv., 68, A (2)  
auf, Prep., 65; auf, 66  
auf daß, 68, B  
auf-geben, 53  
auf-setzen, 57  
aus, außer, 64  
aus-führen, 68  
außerhalb, 66  
äußerst, 21 (3)  
Auxiliary Verbs, 37—  
39; 41  
of mood, 52; p. 131;  
Exs. 16, 17  
baden, 47  
bald, compared, 62  
bei, insep. pref. 56;  
Ex. 24  
be, to, 37; p. 84  
befehlen, 45 (c)  
befolgen, 49 (a)  
before, Prep. 65; Conj.,  
68, B (3)  
beginnen, 45 (b)  
behalf, in...of, 25 (2)  
bei, 64  
beide, Ex. 30  
beißen, 49 (a)  
bergen, 45 (c)  
bersten, 45 (c)  
besetzen, 57  
best, 21, 62  
betr., Conj., 68, B (3)  
bewegen, 50 (a)  
biegen, 50 (a)  
bieten, 50 (a)  
binden, 45  
binnen, Prep., 64, Obs.

biß, Prep., 63, *Obs.*

biß, Conj., 68, B (3)

bitten, 46

blasen, 48

bleiben, 49 (b)

bleiben, 49 (a)

braten, 48

brechen, 45 (c)

brennen, 51 (a)

bringen, 51 (a)

can, p. 52; Ex. 17;

cannot, Exs. 17—18

chance (happen) to,

Ex. 22, b

Comparison of Ad-

jectives, 20—21;

Ex. 43

of Adverbs, 61, 62;

Ex. 50

Complex Sentences, p.

101

Compound Nouns, 9(c)

Tenses, 35 B

Verbs, 56—58; Exs.

24—27

Concessive Clauses,

Exs. 5 (b) and 8 (2)

Conditional, how form-

ed, 35, B

Conditional Clauses,

Exs. 5 (b) and 8

Conjunctions, 67; Exs.

6—8; 55—56.

Consecutive Clauses,

Ex. 7

Consonants, classified,

1; 6

Contraction of Prep.

with Def. Art. p. 91

da, Conj. 68, B

dafür, dagegen, 25 (7)

daßer, daßin, 59 (c), 3

damit, Conj., 68

darin, 30 (3)

darauf... daß, p. 126

daß, 68, B

dates, 22 (a), 23 (b)

Dative, Ex. 39

place of, p. 99

haben, dazu, 25 (7);

30 (3)

day of the month,

23 (b)

Declensions, classified,

10; p. 163

Declensions, weak, 14—

15; p. 162; Ex. 33

strong, 11—13; p.

162; Ex. 31

mixed, 14—15; p.

162; Ex. 32

of Proper Nouns, 16;

Ex. 35

of Adjectives, 17—19

Demonstrative Pro-

nouns, 29, 30; Ex.

47

denken, 51 (a)

dennoch, 68, A (2)

Dependent Clauses,

p. 101; Exs. 6—8

der, die, das, Def. Art. 8

Demons. Pr. 29, 30;

Ex. 47

Relat. Pron., 32 (a)

Ex. 48

deren, dessen, for Pers.

Pron. 29, 30

for seiner, 25, 7

derjenige, 28, 30

derselbe, 28, 30

dessen, 25 (7)

deshalb, 61, A (2)

besto, 21 (7)

Determinative Pron.,

29—30

dießer, ee, es, 28, 30

dieß, after Prep., 80 (3)

dießseit(s), 66

diphthongs, 5

doch, 68, A (2)

derßer, derßin, 59 (c)

dre, decl., 23

bringen, 45

du, decl., 24, A

use of, 25 (3)

durß, Prep., 63, A

durß, sep. or insepar.

pref., 58 (a)

dürfen, 52; Ex. 17

each other, 55

easily, 61

ebenso, 21 (5)

ebenderfelbe, 29 (b)

ehe, compared, 21, 68,

B (3)

eher, 62

ein, eine, ein, Indef.

Art., 8, B; numeral,

23

einige, 8, B; 33

empfehlen, 45 (c)

emp-, ent-, insepar.

pref., 56; Ex. 24

entgegen, 64

entlang, 63

entweder...oder, 68, A (2)

er-, insepar. prefix, 56;

Ex. 24

er, declined, 24, A

erlöschten, 50 (2)

es, 24, 25; Ex. 22

essen, 46

etwas, 53

everybody, everyone,

33

exceedingly, 61

expected, to be, Ex. 16

extremely, 21 (3)

fahren, 47

fallen, 44

fain, 52

fangen, 48

fechten, 44, 50

feel, to, 53

fehlen, p. 89

Feminine Gender, 9,

B; 69

Final Clauses, Ex. 7

finden, 44, 45

fließen, 50 (b)

fliegen, fliehen, 50 (a)

fließen, 50 (b)

fond of, 62 (3)

for, how rendered,

Ex. 41

Formation of tenses

and moods, 35

former, 21 (1), 30 (3)

fragen, sich, Ex. 22 (c)

freuen, 46

früher, 50 (a)

from, how rendered,

Ex. 41

für, 63, A

future, how formed,

35, B

Passive, p. 125

use of, Ex. 1

ge-, insepar. prefix, 56;

Ex. 24

gebühren, 45 (c)

geben, 46

geben, 49 (b)

gegen, 63, A

gegenüber, 64  
 gehen, 51 (*b*)  
 gelingen, 45 (*a*); use of,  
     Ex. 22 (*c*)  
 gelten, 45 (*c*)  
 gemäß, 64, *Obs.*  
 Gender of Nouns, 9,  
     70 (*b*), Ex. 28  
 genesen, 46  
 genießen, 50 (*b*)  
 Genitive, use of, 69  
     with Nouns, Ex. 37  
     with Verbs and Adj.,  
         Ex. 38  
 gern, compared, 63  
     use of, 62 (*3*)  
 Gerund, Exs. 12—13  
 geschehen, 46  
 get, to = to order, Exs.  
     18, 21  
 gewinnen, 45 (*b*)  
 gießen, 50 (*b*)  
 gleich, 64, *Obs.*  
 gleichen, 49 (*a*)  
 gleiten, 49 (*a*)  
 glimmen, 50 (*b*)  
 going to, p. 89  
 graben, 47  
 greifen, 49 (*a*)  
 Grimm's Law, p. 108  
 groß, compared, 21  
 grow, to, 53  
 gut, compared, 21, 61  
 haben, 37  
 halb, 23 (*c*)  
 -halb, 66  
     in compos. 25 (*2*)  
 half-past, 23 (*c*)  
 halten, 48  
 hameln, *fich*, Ex. 23  
 hängen, 48  
 hauen, 48  
 have, to, = to order,  
     Ex. 18  
     = to do, Ex. 11 (*c*)  
 he, Pers. Pr. 24; 28, 29  
 heben, 50 (*a*)  
 heißen, 49 (*b*), use of,  
     Ex. 10 (*b*); 15 (*b*)  
 helfen, 45 (*c*)  
 help, to, Ex. 39  
 her-, pref., 56 (*b*)  
 herewith, 30 (*2*)  
 hier-, in compos., 30 (*3*)  
 highly, 21 (*3*)

hinter, 61; 65  
 hinter, pref., 56; 58 (*b*)  
 his, 26; 27  
 hoch, decl., 19; 21  
 höchst, 21 (*3*); 61  
 hours of the day, 23 (*c*)  
 hungry, 53  
 ich, decl., 24, A  
 Ihnen, *Ihrer*, polite  
     form, 25 (*4*)  
 ihr, decl., 24, A  
 Imperfect, 35; Indic.,  
     Ex. 2; Subj. 5  
 Impersonal Verbs, 54;  
     Exs. 18; 20; 22  
 im = in dem, 66  
 Imperative, how form-  
     ed, 35 (*3*)  
     use of, Exs. 5 and 9  
 in, 65, ins, 66  
 in, how rendered, Ex. 41  
 Indefinite Pron., 33;  
     Ex. 49  
 Indicative, p. 103  
 Indirect Quotation,  
     Ex. 6  
 Infinitive, place of, p. 99  
     without, zu, Ex. 10;  
         p. 125  
     with zu, Exs. 11; p. 125  
 -ing, how rendered,  
     Exs. 10—14; p. 125  
 innerhalb, 66  
 in order to, Ex. 11  
 Inseparable Verbs, 56,  
     57; Exs. 24; 27  
 Interrogative Pron., 31  
 Intransitive Verbs, Ex.  
     48  
     conj. with sein, 41  
 is to be, Ex. 16  
 it, Pers. Pron., 24; =  
     er, sic, 25 (*5*)  
 it is I, 25 (*8*); 33  
 it, Dem. Pron., 28 (*2*);  
     after Prepos., 30 (*2*)  
 je... desto, 21 (*7*)  
 Jebermann, 33  
 jeboch, 68, A (*2*)  
 jemand, 33  
 jen-er, -e, -es, 28—30  
 jenseit(s), 66  
 just as, 21 (*5*)  
 keep waiting, to, Ex.  
     18 (*2*)  
 kinds (sort), 22 (*g*);  
     31 (*c*)  
 kennen, 51 (*a*)  
 klommen, 59 (*b*)  
 klungen, 45 (*a*)  
 know how to, Ex. 17  
 kommen, 41 (*b*); 45 (*c*)  
 können, 52; Ex. 17  
 Kraft, Prep., 66  
 kriechen, 50 (*b*)  
 laden, 47  
 längs, 66  
 lassen, 48; Ex. 18  
 last, latter, 21 (*1*);  
     30 (*1*)  
 laufen, 48  
 laut, Prep., 66  
 least, 21  
 lesen, 46  
 less, 21  
 let, to, Ex. 18  
 leßt, comp., 21 (*1*)  
 leiden, 49 (*a*)  
 leiten, 49 (*b*)  
 lieb(st), 62  
 liegen, 41; 46  
 like, to, 52; to like  
     best, 62 (*3*)  
 lügen, 50 (*a*)  
 man, 33  
 mancher, 33  
 many, 31  
 Masculine Gender, 9, A  
     Nouns, decl. 11—15  
 may, 52; Ex. 17  
 Measure, Exs. 34; 36  
     (*c*)  
 mehr, compared, 21 (*1*  
     and 6)  
 meiden, 49 (*b*)  
 mein, *bein*, &c., 25; used  
     predicatively, 26 (*2*)  
 meine, *meine*, used as  
     Nouns, 27 (*b*)  
 meinertwegen, 25  
 meist(ens), 62  
 messen, 50 (*b*)  
 messen, 46  
 might, 52  
 minber, 21; 62  
 mine, 26, 27  
 miß-, insep. pref., 56;  
     58 (*b*)  
 mistaken, to be, Ex. 23  
 mit, 64

- mittelft, 66  
 mixed decl., 14; 15  
 (III)  
 modification of vowels,  
 4; 69  
 mögen, 52; Ex. 17  
 month, day of, 23 (b)  
 moods, formation of, 35  
 mood, aux. v. of, 52  
 more, most, 21; one  
 more, 23  
 most, 20, 21; 61  
 much, 60  
 müssen, 52; Ex. 16  
 must, 52; Ex. 16  
 my, 26  
 nach, 64  
 nachdem, 68, B (3)  
 nächst, 64, *Obs.*  
 naß, compared, 21; 61  
 Names of countries,  
 genders of, 9, C (2)  
 declined, 16 (d)  
 use of, Ex. 29 (3)  
 of sovereigns, 23  
 (b)  
 neben, 65  
 nehmen, 45 (c)  
 nennen, 51 (a)  
 nicht, place of, p. 100  
 nichts, 33  
 Niemand, 33  
 Neuter Gender, 9 (c)  
 Neuter Nouns, 11—15  
 no body, 33  
 Nominative case, Ex. 36  
 Nouns, genders of, 9;  
 70 (b)  
 Declension of, 10—  
 16; p. 162; Exs.  
 31—35  
 Irreg. plurals of, 70  
 (a, c)  
 Nouns of measure,  
 weight, p. 170  
 no one, 33  
 nothing, 33  
 not so, 21 (5)  
 numerals, 22; Ex. 44  
 oberhalb, 66  
 obgleich, obgleich, obwohl,  
 68, B  
 Objective cases, Exs.  
 36—39  
 place of, p. 99  
 obliged, to be, 52  
 oblique oration, Ex. 6  
 o'clock, 23 (c)  
 über, 68 A  
 of, how rendered, Ex. 41  
 of it, 30 (3)  
 ohne, 63, A  
 on, how rendered, Ex.  
 41  
 one, Indef. Pron. 33  
 one more, 23 (3)  
 one (the), one (this),  
 28—30  
 Optative, Ex. 5  
 Oratio obliqua, Ex. 6  
 Order of words, p. 99;  
 Ex. 45  
 order, in...to, Ex. 11;  
 to order, Ex. 18;  
 21; 39 (a)  
 other, each, 55  
 others, 23 (a)  
 ought, 52; Ex. 16  
 our(s), 26, 27  
 own (my, thy), 27 (b)  
 Participle, Perf. (Past),  
 formation of, 35;  
 pp. 107; 129  
 Place of, p. 99  
 use of, Exs. 9; 15  
 Participle Pres., for-  
 mation of, 35  
 use of, Exs. 12, 13  
 Partitive relation, Exs.  
 29 (b), *Obs.*; Ex. 37  
 Passive Voice, 53;  
 Exs. 19—21  
 Germ. active, Exs.  
 11 (c); 13 (d); 18  
 Passive Impersonal,  
 Ex. 20  
 people = man, 33  
 Perfect, formation of,  
 35; use of, Exs. 1; 3  
 permitted, to be, 52  
 Personal Pron. 24, 25;  
 Ex. 45  
 pfeifen, 49 (a)  
 pflegen, 50 (a)  
 please, if you, 61 (1)  
 Pluperfect, Ex. 3  
 Plural of Nouns, 70  
 (a and c)  
 prefixes of Verbs gov.  
 Dat., Ex. 39  
 Prepositions, 63—66;  
 use of, p. 174; Exs.  
 40, 41; gov. acc.,  
 63; Ex. 51; gov.  
 Dat. 64; Ex. 52;  
 gov. Acc. or Dat.,  
 65; Ex. 53; gov.  
 Gen., 66; Ex. 54  
 Possessive Pron., 26,  
 27; Exs. 39 (b) 2;  
 46  
 preisen, 49 (b)  
 Predicate, Exs. 36 (II.)  
 B; 38, B  
 Present Tense, format.  
 of, 35  
 Pres. Indicat., Ex. 1  
 Pres. Subjunct., Exs.  
 5—7  
 Pres. Perf., Exs. 1  
 and 3  
 Preterite, formation  
 of, 35; Indic., Ex. 2,  
 Subj., Exs. 5; 8  
 Price and Measure,  
 Accus. of, Ex. 36  
 (e)  
 Pronouns, 24—33; Ex.  
 45—49  
 Proper Names, decl.  
 16; use of, Exs. 29  
 (3); 35  
 quellen, 50 (b)  
 quarter to (past), 23  
 (c)  
 question, to be the,  
 Ex. 23  
 quotation, indirect,  
 Ex. 6  
 rather, 62 (3)  
 reason, cause, 67  
 reden, conjug. of, 42  
 Reflexive Verbs, 55;  
 Exs. 18 (3); 23;  
 p. 174  
 reiben, 49 (b)  
 reifen, 49 (a)  
 reiten, 49 (a)  
 rejoice, 53  
 Relative Pron., 32  
 rennen, 51 (a)  
 riechen, 50 (b)  
 ringen, 45 (a)  
 rinnen, 45 (b)  
 rufen, 48

said to be, Ex. 16 (b);  
21  
sake, for the... of, 25 (2)  
say, he says he has,  
Ex. 16 (a)  
saufen, 50 (b)  
saugen, 50 (a)  
schaffen, 47  
schaffen, 50 (b)  
scheiben, 49 (b)  
scheinen, 49 (b)  
schelten, 45 (c)  
scheren, 50 (a)  
schieben, 50 (a)  
schiefen, 50 (a)  
schlafen, 48  
schlagen, 47  
schleichen, 49 (a)  
schleifen, 49 (a)  
schleifen, 49 (a)  
schließen, 50 (b)  
schlingen, 45 (a)  
schmeißen, 49 (a)  
schmelzen, 50 (b)  
schneuben, 50 (b)  
schneiden, 49 (a)  
schreden, 45 (c)  
schreiben, 49 (b)  
schreien, 49 (b)  
schreiten, 49 (a)  
schweigen, 49 (b)  
schwellen, 50 (b)  
schwimmen, 45 (b)  
schwimden, 45 (a)  
schwingen, 45  
schwören, 50 (a)  
sehen, 46  
sehr, comp. with viel, 60  
sein, Aux. of, 38; 41  
seit, Prep., 64  
seit, seitdem, Conj., 68, B  
self, 24 (a); 55; Ex. 45  
send for, to, Ex. 18 (2)  
Separable Verbs, 56—  
58; Exs. 25—27  
Sequence of tenses,  
Ex. 6, Obs.  
several, 33  
shall, 52; Ex. 16  
she, Pers. Pr., 24; 28,  
29  
should, 52; should  
(happen), Ex. 16  
sich, Reflex. Pron. 24 (a);  
27 (2); 55

sie, declension of, 24  
Sic, use of, 25 (4)  
sieben, 50 (b)  
since, Prep., 64; Conj.,  
68, B  
singen, finfen, 45 (a)  
sinnen, 45 (b)  
sitzen, 46  
so... als, 21  
so (ebenso), 21 (4)  
so, Pron., = es, 25 (8)  
solch, 29 (6)  
sollen, 52; Ex. 16  
some, 23 (a); some-  
body, some one,  
something, 33  
sonder, 63, Obs.  
sondern, 66, A (1)  
sort (kind), 22 (g);  
what—of, 25 (5);  
31 (c)  
sowohl... als auch, 68, A  
(1)  
speien, 49 (b)  
spinnen, 45 (b)  
sprechen, 45 (c)  
sprießen, 50 (b)  
springen, 45 (a)  
statt, Prep., 66  
stechen, 45 (c)  
stehen, 51 (b)  
stellen, 45 (c)  
steigen, 49 (b)  
sterben, 45 (c)  
stinken, 45 (a)  
stoßen, 48  
streichen, 49 (a)  
streiten, 49 (a)  
Strong Declension, 10  
—13; 15; Ex. 31;  
p. 162.  
Strong Verbs, classi-  
fied, 43, 44; p. 103  
conjugation of, 43—  
51  
Subject, Ex. 36  
Subjunctive 35; p. 110  
Exs. 5—8  
Subordinate Conjun-  
ctions, 67, 68, Exs. 6—8  
succeed, to, Ex. 22 (c)  
such, 29 (6)  
Superlative, of Adj.,  
20, 21; of Adv., 61,  
62; Exs. 43; 50

Substantives, see  
Nouns  
substantival clauses, p.  
101; Ex. 6  
Supine, Ex. 11  
tabeln, conjugat. of, 41  
Tenses, formation of, 35  
comparat. table of, 36  
use of, Exs. 1—8  
that, Demonstr. Pron.,  
28—30  
after Prepos., 30 (2)  
Relat. Pron., 32  
the one, 28—30  
the... the, 21 (7)  
there is no...ing, p. 89  
therewith, 30 (2)  
these, 28—30  
their(s), 26, 27  
they, Pers. Pron., 24, 25  
Determ., 28—30  
Indef., 3, B  
thine, 26, 27  
thirsty, to be, 53  
this, 28—30; after  
Prep., 30 (2)  
thither, 59 (c), 3  
those, 28—30  
thun, 51 (b)  
thy, 26, 27  
time and place, Accus.  
of, Ex. 36  
time, of day, 23 (c)  
to, how rendered, Ex. 41  
tragen, 47  
treffen, 45 (c)  
treiben, 49 (b)  
treten, 46  
trinken, 45 (a)  
troß, Prep., 66  
trägen, 50 (a)  
über, Prep., 65  
über ... separ. or in-  
separ. prefix, 58 (a);  
Ex. 27  
üßr, 23 (c)  
um, pref. 58 (a); Ex.  
27  
um, Conj., 63 (a); with  
Infinit., p. 80; umß, 66  
und, Conj., 68  
understood, to be, Ex.  
23 (b)  
ungedacht, Prep., 66  
Conj., 68, B

- unick, 26 (1)  
 unter-, pref. 58 (a); Ex. 27  
 unter, Prep., 65  
 unterhalb, 66  
 upon, how rendered, Ex. 41  
 ver = insepar. pref. 56; Ex. 24  
 Verbal Nouns, Exs. 10—14  
 Verbs, 34—58; of teaching, &c., Ex. 36; of remembering, accusing, enjoying, pitying, Ex. 38; requiring different Prepos. in Germ. and Engl., Exs. 40, 41  
 verderben, 45 (c)  
 verdrießen, 50 (b)  
 vergessen, 45  
 verlieren, 50 (a)  
 verstehen, 57  
 viel, comp., 21; indef. 33  
 viel and sehr, difference between, 60  
 voll, p. 174, 4 (a and b)  
 volle-, pref., 56; 58 (a)  
 vom, contract. of von dem, 66  
 von, Prep., 64; used for Gen., Ex. 37  
 vor, Prep., 65  
 vowels, 2; modif., 69  
 waschen, 47  
 während, Prep., 66; Conj., 68, B  
 wanting, to be, Ex. 22 (c)  
 want, to, Ex. 17  
 was, was für ein, 31 (b, c)  
 waschen, 47  
 weak declension, 14, 15; 69  
 weak Verbs, 40—42; p. 103  
 weben, 50 (a)  
 weegen, in compos., 25 (2)  
 wegen, Prep., 66  
 weichen, 49 (a)  
 weight, Ex. 34  
 weil, conj., p. 93  
 weisen, 49 (b)  
 weisheit, c, c8, interr. 31, (a); relat. 32  
 wenden, 51 (a)  
 wenig, Adv., 62  
 wenn, Conj., 68, B  
 wenn auch, Conj., 68, B  
 wer, 31 (b)  
 werden, 45 (c)  
 werden, 35 (b); 39; 53  
 were to (it), Ex. 5, 11. (a)  
 werfen, 45 (c)  
 what, after Prep., 30 (2); 31 (a); what kind of, 31 (c)  
 whatever, 32 (c)  
 wherewith, 30 (2)  
 which? 31 (a); which, Relat. Pron., 32  
 whither? 59 (c), 3  
 who? whom? whose? 31 (b); who, Relat. Pron. 32  
 whoever, 32 (c)  
 wider, Prep., 63, A  
 wider=insepar. pref. 56, 58 (a)  
 wie, Adv. 60, Conj., 68, B  
 wi(e)der, separ. or insepar. pref., 56; 58 (a)  
 wiegen, 50 (a)  
 will, will, 52; Ex. 16  
 wissen, in compos., 25 (2); 66  
 winden, 45 (a)  
 wir, decl., 24, A  
 wissen, 51 (c)  
 to, how rendered, Ex. 41  
 without, Ex. 11 (d)  
 wo-für, von, zu, &c., 30 (3)  
 wo-hin, &er, 59 (c), 3  
 wofür, 68, B  
 wo(h)l, compared, 61  
 wofsen, 52; Ex. 16  
 womit, 30 (3)  
 wonder, to, 53  
 woran, 30 (3)  
 would, 52; 81  
 you, 24, 25  
 your(s), 26, 27  
 zeihen, 49 (b)  
 zer-, insepar. pref., 56; Ex. 24  
 ziehen, 50 (a)  
 zwei, decl., 23  
 zwingen, 45 (a)  
 zwischen, Prep., 65  
 zu, Prep., 64; Ex. 11  
 zufolge, Prep., 66  
 zum, zur, contracted, 66  
 zuwider, Prep., 64

# MACMILLAN'S FOREIGN SCHOOL CLASSICS.

EDITED BY G. EUGÈNE FASNACHT.

Sometime Assistant-Master in Westminster School.

18mo.

## GERMAN.

FREYTAG (G.)—DOKTOR LUTHER. Edited by FRANCIS STORR, M.A. *[In preparation.]*

GOETHE—GOTZ VON BERLICHINGEN. Edited by H. A. BULL, M.A., Assistant-Master at Wellington College. 2s.

GOETHE—FAUST. PART I., followed by an Appendix on Part II. Edited by JANE LEE. 4s. 6d.

HEINE—SELECTIONS FROM THE REISE-BILDER AND OTHER PROSE WORKS. Edited by C. COLBECK, M.A. 2s. 6d.

LESSING—MINNA VON BARNHELM. Edited by J. SIME. *[In preparation.]*

SCHILLER—DIE JUNGFAU VON ORLEANS. Edited by JOSEPH GOSTWICK. 2s. 6d.

SCHILLER—WILHELM TELL. Edited, with an Historical Introduction and Notes, by G. E. FASNACHT. 2s. 6d.

SCHILLER—MARIA STUART. Edited by C. SHELDON, M.A., D.Lit., of the Royal Academical Institution, Belfast. 2s. 6d.

SCHILLER—LYRICAL POEMS. Selected and Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by E. J. TURNER, B.A., and E. D. A. MORSHEAD, M.A. 2s. 6d.

SCHILLER—WALLENSTEIN. PART I.—DAS LAGER. Edited by H. B. COTTERILL, M.A. 2s.

UHLAND—SELECT BALLADS. Adapted as a First Easy Reading Book for Beginners. With Vocabulary. Edited by G. E. FASNACHT. 1s.

\*.\* Other Volumes to follow.

## MACMILLAN'S PRIMARY SERIES OF GERMAN READING BOOKS.

EDITED BY G. E. FASNACHT.

With Notes, Vocabularys, and Exercises.

Globe 8vo.

GRIMM—KINDER UND HAUSMÄRCHEN. By G. E. FASNACHT. 2s. 6d.

HAUFF—DIE KARAVANE. By HERMAN HAGER, Ph.D., Lecturer in the Owens College, Manchester. 3s.

SCHMID, CHR. VON—H. VON EICHENFELS. By G. E. FASNACHT. 2s. 6d.

MACMILLAN & CO., LONDON.

# Messrs. MACMILLAN & CO.'S GERMAN CLASS BOOKS.

Ex. fcap. 8vo.

## MACMILLAN'S PROGRESSIVE GERMAN COURSE.

By G. E. FASNACHT.

FIRST YEAR. Easy Lessons and Rules on the Regular Accidence.  
1s. 6d.

SECOND YEAR. Conversational Lessons in Systematic Accidence and Elementary Syntax. With Philological Illustrations and Etymological Vocabulary. 3s. 6d.

THIRD YEAR.

[In the Press.]

Ex. fcp. 8vo.

## TEACHER'S COMPANION TO MACMILLAN'S PROGRESSIVE GERMAN COURSE.

By G. E. FASNACHT.

With copious Notes, Hints for Different Renderings, Synonyms, Philological Remarks, etc.

FIRST YEAR. 4s. 6d.

SECOND YEAR. 4s. 6d.

Ex. fcap. 8vo.

## MACMILLAN'S GERMAN COMPOSITION.

By G. E. FASNACHT.

I. FIRST COURSE. Parallel German-English Extracts and Parallel English-German Syntax. 2s. 6d.

Gl. 8vo.

## TEACHER'S COMPANION TO MACMILLAN'S GERMAN COMPOSITION.

By G. E. FASNACHT.

FIRST COURSE. 4s. 6d.

Ex. fcap. 8vo.

## MACMILLAN'S PROGRESSIVE GERMAN READERS.

By G. E. FASNACHT.

FIRST YEAR, containing an Introduction to the German order of Words, with copious Examples, Extracts from German Authors in Prose and Poetry, Notes, and Vocabularies. 2s. 6d.



